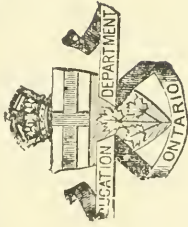




3 1761 07480526 8

THE  
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY  
OF THE SEA

Grandin Model School, Ottawa.



First Division, Junior Section.  
Second Prize for English Group

Awarded to  
Master, W. E. Roberts

June 1882



7

5



# THE PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE SEA.

BY

LIEUTENANT M. F. MAURY, LL.D.



LONDON:

T. NELSON AND SONS, PATERNOSTER ROW;  
EDINBURGH; AND NEW YORK.

---

1873.

GC

11

M45

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010 with funding from  
University of Toronto

## INTRODUCTION TO THE FIRST EDITION—1855.

---

THE primary object of "The Wind and Current Charts," out of which has grown this Treatise on the Physical Geography of the Sea, was to collect the experience of every navigator as to the winds and currents of the ocean, to discuss his observations upon them, and then to present the world with the results on charts for the improvement of commerce and navigation.

By putting down on a chart the tracks of many vessels on the same voyage, but at different times, in different years, and during all seasons, and by projecting along each track the winds and currents daily encountered, it was plain that navigators hereafter, by consulting this chart, would have for their guide the results of the combined experience of all whose tracks were thus pointed out.

Perhaps it might be the first voyage of a young navigator to the given port, when his own personal experience of the winds to be expected, the currents to be encountered by the way, would itself be blank. If so, there would be the Wind and Current Chart. It would spread out before him the tracks of a thousand vessels that had preceded him on the same voyage, wherever it might be, and that, too, at the same season of the year. Such a chart, it was held, would show him not only the tracks of the vessels, but the experience also of each master as to the winds and currents by the way, the temperature of the ocean, and the variation of the needle. All this could be taken in at a glance, and thus the young mariner, instead of groping his way along until the lights of experience should come to him by the slow teachings of the dearest of all schools, would here find at once that he had already the experience of a thousand navigators to guide him on his voyage. He might, therefore, set out upon his first voyage with as much confidence in his knowledge as to the winds and currents he might expect to meet with, as though he himself had already been that way a thousand times before.

Such a chart could not fail to commend itself to intelligent ship-masters, and such a chart was constructed for them. They took it to sea, they tried it, and to their surprise and delight they found that, with the knowledge it afforded, the remote corners of the earth were brought closer together, in some instances by many days' sail. The passage hence to the equator alone was shortened ten days. Before the commencement of this undertaking, the average passage to California was 183 days; but with these charts for their guide, navigators have reduced that average, and brought it down to 135 days.

Between England and Australia, the average time going, without these charts, is ascertained to be 124 days, and coming, about the same; making the round voyage one of about 250 days on the average. These charts, and the system of research to which they have given rise, bid fair to bring that colony and the mother country nearer by many days,—reducing in no small measure the average duration of the round voyage.\*

At the meeting of the British Association of 1853, it was stated by a distinguished member,—and the statement was again repeated at its meeting in 1854,—that in Bombay, whence he came, it was estimated that this system of research, if extended to the Indian Ocean, and embodied in a set of charts for that sea, such as I have been describing, would produce an annual saving to British commerce, in those waters alone, of one or two millions of dollars; † and in all seas, of ten millions. ‡

\* The outward passage, it has since been ascertained, has been reduced to 97 days on the average, and the homeward passage has been made in 63.

† See Inaugural Address of the Earl of Harrowby, President of the British Association, at its twenty-fourth meeting. Liverpool, 1854.

‡ . . . “Now let us make a calculation of the annual saving to the commerce of the United States effected by those charts and sailing directions. According to Mr. Maury, the average freight from the United States to Rio Janeiro is 17.7 cts. per ton per day; to Australia, 20 cts.; to California, also, about 20 cts. The mean of this is a little over 19 cents per ton per day; but to be within the mark, we will take it at 15, and include all the ports of South America, China, and the East Indies.

“The sailing directions have shortened the passages to California 30 days, to Australia 20, to Rio Janeiro 10. The mean of this is 20, but we will take it at 15, and also include the above-named ports of South America, China, and the East Indies.

“We estimate the tonnage of the United States engaged in trade with these places at 1,000,000 tons per annum.

“With these data, we see that there has been effected a saving for each one of these tons

A system of philosophical research which is so rich with fruits and abundant with promise, could not fail to attract the attention and commend itself to the consideration of the seafaring community of the whole civilized world. It was founded on observation; it was the result of the experience of many observant men, now brought together for the first time, and patiently discussed. The results tended to increase human knowledge with regard to the sea and its wonders, and therefore the system of research could not be wanting in attractions to right-minded men.

The results of the first chart, however, though meagre and unsatisfactory, were brought to the notice of navigators; their attention was called to the blank spaces, and the importance of more and better observations than the old sea-logs generally contained was urged upon them.

They were told that if each one would agree to co-operate in a general plan of observations at sea, and would send regularly, at the end of every cruise, an abstract log of their voyage to the National Observatory at Washington, he should, for so doing, be furnished, free of cost, with a copy of the charts and sailing directions that might be founded upon those observations.

The quick, practical mind of the American shipmaster took hold of the proposition at once. To him the field was inviting, for he saw in it the promise of a rich harvest, and of many useful results.

So, in a little while, there were more than a thousand navigators engaged day and night, and in all parts of the ocean, in making and recording observations according to a uniform plan, and in furthering this attempt to increase our knowledge as to the winds and currents of the sea, and other phenomena that relate to its safe navigation and physical geography.

To enlist the service of such a large corps of observers, and to have the attention of so many clever and observant men directed to

---

of 15 cents per day for a period of 15 days, which will give an aggregate of 2,250,000 dollars saved per annum. This is on the outward voyage alone, and the tonnage trading with all other parts of the world is also left out of the calculation. Take these into consideration, and also the fact that there is a vast amount of foreign tonnage trading between these places and the United States, and it will be seen that the annual sum saved will swell to an enormous amount."—*Extract from Hunt's Merchant's Magazine, May, 1854.*

the same subject, was a great point gained : it was a giant stride in the advancement of knowledge, and a great step toward its spread upon the waters.

Important results soon followed, and great discoveries were made. These attracted the attention of the commercial world, and did not escape the notice of philosophers everywhere.

The field was immense, the harvest was plenteous, and there were both need and room for more labourers. Whatever the reapers should gather, or the merest gleaner collect, was to go to the benefit of commerce and navigation—the increase of knowledge—the good of all.

Therefore, all who use the sea were equally interested in the undertaking. The Government of the United States, so considering the matter, proposed a uniform system of observations at sea, and invited all the maritime states of Christendom to a conference upon the subject.

This conference, consisting of representatives from France, England, and Russia, from Sweden and Norway, Holland, Denmark, Belgium, Portugal, and the United States, met in Brussels, August 23, 1853, and recommended a plan of observations which should be followed on board the vessels of all friendly nations, and especially of those there present in the persons of their representatives.

Prussia, Spain, Sardinia, the Holy See, the free city of Hamburg, the republics of Bremen and Chili, and the empires of Austria and Brazil, have since offered their co-operation also in the same plan.

Thus the sea has been brought regularly within the domains of philosophical research, and crowded with observers.

In peace and in war these observations are to be carried on ; and, in case any of the vessels on board of which they are conducted may be captured, the abstract log—as the journal which contains these observations is called—is to be held sacred.

Baron Humboldt is of opinion that the results already obtained from this system of research are sufficient to give rise to a new department of science, which he has called the **PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE SEA**. If so much has already been accomplished by one nation, what may we not expect, in the course of a few years, from the joint co-operation of so many ?

Rarely before has there been such a sublime spectacle presented to the scientific world: all nations agreeing to unite and co-operate in carrying out one system of philosophical research with regard to the sea. Though they may be enemies in all else, here they are to be friends. Every ship that navigates the high seas, with these charts and blank abstract logs on board, may henceforth be regarded as a floating observatory, a temple of science. The instruments used by every co-operating vessel are to be compared with standards that are common to all; so that an observation that is made anywhere, and in any ship, may be referred to and compared with all similar observations by all other ships in all parts of the world.

But these meteorological observations which this extensive and admirable system includes will relate only to the sea. This is not enough. The plan should include the land also, and be universal. Other great interests of society are to be benefited by such extension no less than commerce and navigation have been. A series of systematic observations, directed over large districts of country, nay, over continents, to the improvement of agricultural and sanitary meteorology, would, I have no doubt, tend to a development of many interesting, important, and valuable results.

The agricultural societies of many states of the Union have addressed memorials to the American Congress, asking for such extension; and it is hoped that that enlightened body will not fail favourably to respond.

This plan contemplates the co-operation of all the states of Christendom, at least so far as the form, method, subjects of observations, time of making them, and the interchange of results are concerned. I hope that my fellow-citizens will not fail to second and co-operate in such a humane, wise, and noble scheme. The Secretary of the Navy, taking the enlarged and enlightened views which do honour to great statesmen, has officially recommended the adoption of such a system, and the President has asked the favourable consideration thereof by Congress. These researches for the land look not only to the advancement of the great interests of sanitary and agricultural meteorology, but they involve also a study of the laws which regulate the atmosphere, and a careful investigation of all its phenomena.

Another beautiful feature in this system is, that it costs nothing



additional. The instruments that these observations at sea call for are such as are already in use on board of every well-conditioned ship, and the observations that are required are precisely those which are necessary for her safe and proper navigation.

Great as is the value attached to what has been accomplished by these researches, in the way of shortening passages and lessening the dangers of the sea, a good of higher value is, in the opinion of many seamen, yet to come, out of the moral, the educational influence which they are calculated to exert upon the seafaring community of the world. A very clever English shipmaster, speaking recently of the advantages of educational influences among those who intend to follow the sea, remarks :—

“To the cultivated lad there is a new world spread out when he enters on his first voyage. As his education has fitted, so will he perceive, year by year, that his profession makes him acquainted with things new and instructive. His intelligence will enable him to appreciate the contrasts of each country, in its general aspect, manners, and productions, and in modes of navigation adapted to the character of coast, climate, and rivers. He will dwell with interest on the phases of the ocean,—the storm, the calm, and the breeze, and will look for traces of the laws which regulate them. All this will induce a serious earnestness in his work, and teach him to view lightly those irksome and often offensive duties incident to the beginner.”\*

And that these researches have such an effect, many noble-hearted mariners have testified. Captain Phinney, of the American ship *Gertrude*, writing from Callao, January 1855, thus expresses himself :—

“Having to proceed from this to the Chincha Islands, and remain three months, I avail myself of the present opportunity to forward to you abstracts of my two passages over your southern routes, although not required to do so until my own return to the United States next

---

\* “The Log of a Merchant Officer, viewed with reference to the Education of Young Officers and the Youth of the Merchant Service. By Robert Methren, commander in the Peninsular and Oriental Company, and author of the ‘Narrative of the Blenheim Hurricane of 1851.’” London: John Weale, 59 High Holborn; Smith, Elder, and Co., Cornhill; Ackerman and Co., Strand. 1854.



summer, knowing that you are less amply supplied with abstracts of voyages over these regions than of many other parts of the ocean; and, such as it is, I am happy to contribute my mite toward furnishing you with material to work out still farther toward perfection your great and glorious task, not only of pointing out the most speedy routes for ships to follow over the ocean, but also of teaching us sailors to look about us, and see by what wonderful manifestations of the wisdom and goodness of the great God we are continually surrounded.

“For myself, I am free to confess that for many years I commanded a ship, and, although never insensible to the beauties of nature upon the sea or land, I yet feel that, until I took up your work, I had been traversing the ocean blindfolded. I did not think; I did not know the amazing and beautiful combination of all the works of Him whom you so beautifully term ‘The Great First Thought.’

“I feel that, aside from any pecuniary profit to myself from your labours, you have done me good as a man. You have taught me to look above, around, and beneath me, and recognise God’s hand in every element by which I am surrounded. I am grateful for this personal benefit. Your remarks on this subject, so frequently made in your work, cause in me feelings of the greatest admiration, although my capacity to comprehend your beautiful theory is very limited.

“The man of such sentiments as you express will not be displeased with, or, at least, will know how to excuse, so much of what (in a letter of this kind) might be termed irrelevant matter. I have therefore spoken as I feel, and with sentiments of the greatest respect.”

Sentiments like these cannot fail to meet with a hearty response from all good men, whether ashore or afloat.

Never before has such a corps of observers been enlisted in the cause of any department of physical science as is that which is now about to be engaged in advancing our knowledge of the Physical Geography of the Sea, and never before have men felt such an interest with regard to this knowledge.

Under this term will be included a philosophical account of the winds and currents of the sea; of the circulation of the atmosphere

and ocean ; of the temperature and depth of the sea ; of the wonders that lie hidden in its depths ; and of the phenomena that display themselves at its surface. In short, I shall treat of the economy of the sea and its adaptations—of its salts, its waters, its climates, and its inhabitants, and of whatever there may be of general interest in its commercial uses or industrial pursuits, for all such things pertain to its **PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY**.

The object of this little book, moreover, is to show the present state, and from time to time the progress, of this new and beautiful system of research, as well as of this interesting department of science ; and the aim of the author is to present the gleanings from this new field in a manner that may be interesting and instructive to all, whether old or young, ashore or afloat, who desire a closer look into “the wonders of the great deep,” or a better knowledge as to its winds, its adaptations, or its Physical Geography.\*

\* There is an old and very rare book which treats upon some of the subjects to which this little work relates : it is by Count L. F. Marsigli, a Frenchman, and is called “Natural Description of the Seas.” The copy to which I refer was translated into Dutch by Boerhaave, in 1786.

The French count made his observations along the coast of Provence and Languedoc. The description only relates to that part of the Mediterranean. The book is divided into four chapters;—the first, on the bottom and shape of the sea ; the second, of sea water ; the third, on the movements of sea water ; and the fourth, of sea plants.

He divides sea water into surface and deep-sea water ; because, when he makes salt from surface water (not more than half a foot below the upper strata), this salt will give a red colour to blue paper, whereas the salt from deep-sea water will not alter the colour at all. The blue paper can only change its colour by the action of an acid. The reason why this acid (iodine?) is found in surface and not in deep-sea water is, it is derived from the air ; but he supposes that the saltpetre that is found in sea water, by the action of the sun's rays and the motion of the waves, is deprived of its coarse parts, and, by evaporation, embodied in the air, to be conveyed to beasts or plants for their existence, or deposited upon the earth's crust, as it occurs on the plains of Hungary, where the earth absorbs so much of this saltpetre vapour.

Donati, also, was a valuable labourer in this field. His inquiries enabled Mr. Trembley<sup>1</sup> to conclude that there are, “at the bottom of the water, mountains, plains, valleys, and caverns, just as upon the land.”

But by far the most interesting and valuable book touching the physical geography of the Mediterranean is Admiral Smyth's last work, entitled “The Mediterranean ; a Memoir, Physical, Historical, and Nautical. By Rear-Admiral William Henry Smyth, K.S.F., D.C.L.,” &c. London : John W. Parker and Son. 1854.

<sup>1</sup> Philosophical Transactions.

## INTRODUCTION TO THE SIXTH EDITION.

---

THE department of the Physical Geography of the Sea is a new field of research : there is great activity in it ; and it is the aim of the author of this work to keep its readers posted up with the improvements, the developments, and the contributions that are made in this interesting field from time to time.

The present edition contains much that is new ; for the fifth edition has been most carefully revised,—much of it has been recast and some parts omitted.

The desire is, that this work shall keep pace with the progress of research. As it may be supposed, facts are sometimes misinterpreted or not understood when first developed. Whenever subsequent research shows such to have been the case, I have not hesitated to tear down whatever of conjecture or theory may have been built on unstable foundations, and to reconstruct according to the best lights.

It is proper to say, that, in accounting for the various phenomena that present themselves, I am wedded to no theories, and do not advocate the doctrines of any particular school. Truth is my object. Therefore, when the explanation which I may have at any time offered touching any facts fails to satisfy further developments, it is given up the moment one is suggested which will account for the new, and equally as well for the old, system of facts. In every instance that theory is preferred which is reconcilable with the greatest number of known facts. The chapter of the Gulf Stream has been enriched with the results of recent investigation, and the theory of it further developed ; so, also, that on the Salts of the Sea, the Open Sea in the Arctic Ocean, the Basin of the Atlantic, and several others ; but these especially have been greatly improved.

A separate chapter is now devoted to the Land and Sea Breezes, and extensive contributions have been made to that on Monsoons, Trade Winds, and Cyclones. Lieutenant Jansen, of the Dutch Navy, has helped me to enrich these with his fine thoughts. The reader will, I am sure, feel as I do, deeply indebted to him for so much instructive matter, set forth in his very delightful and pleasing manner.

NATIONAL OBSERVATORY, WASHINGTON,

*April, 1856.*

---

Since the above date, explorations have been made in this interesting department of science, and new veins of precious ore have been hit upon. We have not yet gone deep enough into them to justify a final report.<sup>1</sup>

In 1849 Congress passed an Act requiring the Secretary of the Navy to employ three small vessels in assisting me to perfect my discoveries. A few weeks ago, Lieutenant Berryman put to sea in the "Arctic" on this duty. His attention was especially directed to deep-sea soundings along the great telegraphic plateau stretching from Newfoundland to Ireland. The results, so far, are of the highest interest. Among them is the discovery of a line of volcanic cinders along a line a thousand miles in length, and reaching entirely across the Gulf Stream where the submarine telegraph is to cross it.

There is also Lieutenant Jansen's experiments upon Ozone, which cast unexpected light upon the circulation of the atmosphere.

Matter of more general or higher scientific importance than that contained in this new Edition is seldom gathered from any fields of research.

*December, 1856.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* subsequent additions in the present Edition, Chapters *xxi.* *xxii.*

## EXPLANATION OF THE PLATES.

---

PLATE I. is a diagram to illustrate the circulation of the atmosphere (Chap. III.). The arrows and bands within the circumference of the circle are intended to show the calm belts, and prevailing direction of the wind on each section of those belts. The arrows exterior to the periphery of the circle—which is a section of the earth supposed to be made in the plane of the meridian—are intended to show the direction of the upper and lower strata of winds in the general system of atmospherical circulation; and also to illustrate how the air brought by each stratum to the calm belts there ascends or descends, as the case may be; and then, continuing to flow on, how it crosses over in the direction in which it was travelling when it arrived at the calm zone.

PLATES II. and III. are drawings of Brooke's Deep-sea Sounding Apparatus, for bringing up specimens of the bottom (§ 701).

PLATE IV. is intended to illustrate the extreme movements of the isotherms  $50^{\circ}$ ,  $60^{\circ}$ ,  $70^{\circ}$ , &c., in the Atlantic Ocean during the year. The connection between the law of this motion and the climates of the sea is exceedingly interesting.

PLATE V. is a section taken from one of the manuscript charts at the Observatory. It illustrates the method adopted there for co-ordinating for the Pilot Charts the winds as reported in the abstract logs. For this purpose the ocean is divided into convenient sections,—usually five degrees of latitude by five degrees of longitude. These parallelograms are then subdivided into a system of engraved squares, the months of the year being the ordinates, and the points of the compass being the abscissæ. As the wind is reported by a vessel that passes through any part of the parallelogram, so it is assumed to have been at that time all over the parallelogram. From such investigations as this the Pilot Charts (§ 929) are constructed.

PLATE VI. illustrates the position of the channel of the Gulf Stream (Chap. I.) for summer and winter. The diagram A shows a thermometrical profile presented by cross-sections of the Gulf Stream, according to observations made by the hydrographical parties of the United States' Coast Survey. The elements for this diagram were kindly furnished me by the superintendent of that work. They are from a paper on the Gulf Stream, read by him before the American Association for the Advancement of Science, at its meeting in Washington, 1854. Imagine a vessel to sail from the Capes of Virginia straight out to sea, crossing the Gulf Stream at right angles, and taking the temperature of its waters at the surface and at various depths. The diagram shows the elevation and depression of the thermometer across this section as they were actually observed by such a vessel.

The black lines  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ , in the Gulf Stream, show the course which those threads of warm waters take (§ 57). The lines  $a$ ,  $b$ , show the computed drift route that the unfortunate steamer San Francisco would take after her terrible disaster in December 1853.

PLATE VII. is intended to show how the winds may become geological agents. It shows where the winds that, in the general system of atmospherical circulation, blow over the deserts and thirsty lands in Asia and Africa (where the annual amount of precipitation is small) are supposed to get their vapour; where, as surface winds, they are supposed to condense portions of it; and whither they are supposed to transport the residue thereof through the upper regions, retaining it until they again become surface winds.

PLATE VIII. shows the prevailing direction of the wind during the year in all

parts of the ocean, as derived from the series of investigations illustrated on Plate VII. It also shows the principal routes across the seas to various places. Where the cross-lines representing the yards are oblique to the keel of the vessel, they indicate that the winds are, for the most part, ahead; when perpendicular or square, that the winds are, for the most part, fair. The figures on or near the diagrams representing the vessels, show the average length of the passage in days.

The arrows denote the prevailing direction of the wind; they are supposed to fly *with* it; so that the wind is going as the arrows point. The half-bearded and half-feathered arrows represent monsoons (§ 763), and the stippled or shaded belts the calm zones.

In the regions on the polar side of the calms of Capricorn and of Cancer, where the arrows are flying both from the north-west and the south-west, the idea intended to be conveyed is, that the prevailing direction of the winds is between the north-west and the south-west, and that their frequency is from these two quarters in proportion to the number of arrows.

PLATE IX. is intended to show the present state of our knowledge with regard to the drift of the ocean, or, more properly, with regard to the great flow of polar and equatorial waters, and their channels of circulation as indicated by the thermometer (§ 889). Further researches will enable us to improve this chart. The most favourite places of resort for the whale—*right* in cold, and *sperm* in warm water—are also exhibited on this chart.

PLATE X. exhibits the actual path of a storm, which is a type (§ 85) of the West Indian hurricanes. Mr. Redfield, Colonel Reid, and others, have traced out the paths of a number of such storms. All of this class appear to make for the Gulf Stream: after reaching it, they turn about and follow it in their course (§ 95).

Mr. Piddington of Calcutta has made the East Indian hurricanes, which are similar to these, the object of special, patient, and laborious investigation. He calls them *cyclones*, and has elicited much valuable information concerning them, which may be found embraced in his "Sailor's Horn-book," "Conversations about Hurricanes," and numerous papers published from time to time in the Journal of the Asiatic Society.

PLATES XI. and XII. speak for themselves. They are orographic for the North Atlantic Ocean, and exhibit completely the present state of our knowledge with regard to the elevations and depressions in the bed of the sea; Plate XII. exhibiting a vertical section of the Atlantic, and showing the contrasts of its bottom with the sea-level in a line from Mexico across Yncatan, Cuba, San Domingo, and the Cape de Verds, to the coast of Africa, marked A on Plate XI.

PLATE XIII.—The data for this Plate are furnished by Maury's Storm and Rain Charts, including observations for 107,277 days in the North Atlantic, and 158,025 in the South; collated by Lieutenant J. J. Guthrie, at the Washington Observatory, in 1855.

The heavy vertical lines, 5°, 10°, 15°, &c., represent parallels of latitude; the other vertical lines, months; and the horizontal lines, per cents., or the number of days in a hundred.

The continuous curve line stands for phenomena in the North, and the broken curve line for phenomena in the South Atlantic. Thus the Gales' Curve shows that in every hundred days, and on the average, in the month of January of different years, there have been observed, in the northern hemisphere, 36 gales (36 per cent.) between the parallels of 50° and 55°; whereas during the same time and between the same parallels in the southern hemisphere, only 10 gales on the average (10 per cent.) have been reported.

The fact is here developed that the atmosphere is in a more unstable condition in the North than in the South Atlantic; that we have more calms, more rains, more fogs, more gales, and more thunder in the northern than in the southern hemisphere, particularly between the equator and the 55th parallel. Beyond that the influence of Cape Horn becomes manifest.



# CONTENTS.

Chapter	Page
I. THE GULF STREAM ... ..	1
II. INFLUENCE OF THE GULF STREAM UPON CLIMATES ... ..	35
III. THE ATMOSPHERE ... ..	62
IV. LAND AND SEA BREEZES ... ..	107
V. RED FOGS AND SEA DUST ... ..	123
VI. ON THE PROBABLE RELATION BETWEEN MAGNETISM AND THE CIRCULATION OF THE ATMOSPHERE ... ..	135
VII. CURRENTS OF THE SEA ... ..	166
VIII. THE OPEN SEA IN THE ARCTIC OCEAN ... ..	199
IX. THE SALTS OF THE SEA ... ..	203
X. THE EQUATORIAL CLOUD-RING ... ..	249
XI. ON THE GEOLOGICAL AGENCY OF THE WINDS ... ..	264
XII. THE DEPTHS OF THE OCEAN ... ..	292
XIII. THE BASIN OF THE ATLANTIC ... ..	306
XIV. THE WINDS ... ..	326
XV. CLIMATES OF THE OCEAN ... ..	362
XVI. THE DRIFT OF THE SEA ... ..	331
XVII. STORMS ... ..	405
XVIII. ROUTES ... ..	418
XIX. BRUSSELS CONFERENCE, ETC. ... ..	430
XX. FORCE OF THE TRADE WINDS OF THE SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE— PECULIARITIES IN ITS ATMOSPHERIC CIRCULATION ... ..	435
XXI. THE SUBMARINE TELEGRAPH OF THE ATLANTIC ... ..	459





THE  
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE SEA.

---

CHAPTER I.

THE GULF STREAM.

Its Colour, § 2.—Theories, 5.—Captain Livingston's, 6.—Dr. Franklin's, 7.—Admiral Snyth and Mediterranean Currents, 8.—Trade Winds not the Cause of the Gulf Stream, 9.—Drift of Bottles, 12.—Sargasso Sea, 13.—Hypothetical System of Currents, 19.—Galvanic Properties of the Gulf Stream, 26.—Salt-ness of ditto, 29.—Effects produced upon Currents by Evaporation, 32.—Gulf Stream Roof-shaped, 39.—Effects of Diurnal Rotation upon Running Water, 42.—Course of the Gulf Stream not altered by Nantucket Shoals, 52.—The Trough in the Sea through which the Gulf Stream flows has a Vibratory Motion, 54.—Streaks of Warm and Cold Water in the Gulf Stream, 57.—Runs up Hill, 59.—A Cushion of Cold Water, 60.

THERE is a river in the ocean. In the severest droughts it never fails, and in the mightiest floods it never overflows. Its banks and its bottoms are of cold water, while its current is of warm. The Gulf of Mexico is its fountain, and its mouth is in the Arctic Seas. It is the Gulf Stream. There is in the world no other such majestic flow of waters. Its current is more rapid than the Mississippi or the Amazon, and its volume more than a thousand times greater.

Its waters, as far out from the Gulf as the Carolina § 2  
coasts, are of an indigo blue. They are so distinctly  
marked, that their line of junction with the common sea

CHAPTER  
I.  
§ 1  
Gulf  
Stream.

Colour of  
its waters

CHAPTER I  
 — water may be traced by the eye. Often one half of the vessel may be perceived floating in Gulf Stream water, while the other half is in common water of the sea; so sharp is the line, and such the want of affinity between those waters, and such, too, the reluctance, so to speak, on the part of those of the Gulf Stream to mingle with the common water of the sea.

§ 3 At the salt-works in France, and along the shores of the Adriatic, where the "*salines*" are carried on by the process of solar evaporation, there is a series of vats or pools through which the water is passed as it comes from the sea, and is reduced to the briny state. The longer it is exposed to evaporation the salter it grows, and the deeper is the hue of its blue, until crystallization is about to commence, when the now deep blue water puts on a reddish tint. Now the waters of the Gulf Stream are salter<sup>1</sup> than the waters of the sea through which they flow, and hence we can account for the deep indigo blue which all navigators observe off the Carolina coasts.

§ 4 These salt-makers are in the habit of judging of the richness of the sea water in salt by its colour—the greener the hue, the fresher the water. We have in this, perhaps, an explanation of the contrasts which the waters of the Gulf Stream present with those of the Atlantic, as well as of the light green of the North Sea and other Polar waters; also of the dark blue of the trade-wind regions, and especially of the Indian Ocean, which poets have described as the "black waters."

§ 5 What is the cause of the Gulf Stream has always puzzled philosophers. Many are the theories and numer-

ous the speculations that have been advanced with regard to it. Modern investigations and examinations are beginning to throw some light upon the subject, though all is not yet clear.

CHAPTER

I.

Early writers maintained that the Mississippi River was the father of the Gulf Stream. Its floods, they said, produce it; for its velocity, it was held, could be computed by the rate of the current of the river.

Theories  
as to its  
cause.

Captain Livingston overturned this hypothesis by showing that the volume of water which the Mississippi River empties into the Gulf of Mexico is not equal to the three-thousandth part of that which escapes from it through the Gulf Stream.

§ 6

Captain  
Livingston

Moreover, the water of the Gulf Stream is salt—that of the Mississippi fresh; and those philosophers<sup>1</sup> forgot that just as much salt as escapes from the Gulf of Mexico through this stream, must enter the Gulf through some other channel from the main ocean; for, if it did not, the Gulf of Mexico, in process of time, unless it had a salt bed at the bottom, or was fed with salt springs from below—neither of which is probable—would become a fresh water basin.

The above quoted argument of Captain Livingston, however, was held to be conclusive; and upon the remains of the hypothesis which he had so completely overturned he set up another, which, in turn, has been upset. In it he ascribed the velocity of the Gulf Stream as depending “on the motion of the sun in the ecliptic, and the influence he has on the waters of the Atlantic.”

But the opinion that came to be the most generally § 7  
received and deep rooted in the mind of seafaring people

---

<sup>1</sup> § 5.

CHAPTER I. was the one repeated by Dr. Franklin, and which held that the Gulf Stream is the escaping of the waters that have been *forced* into the Caribbean Sea by the trade-winds, and that it is the pressure of those winds upon the water which forces up into that sea a head, as it were, for this stream.

Dr. Franklin's opinion about the trade-winds.

We know of instances in which waters have been accumulated on one side of a lake, or in one end of a canal, at the expense of the other. The pressure of the trade-winds may *assist* to give the Gulf Stream its initial velocity, but are they of themselves adequate to such an effect? To my mind, the laws of Hydrostatics, as at present expounded, appear by no means to warrant the conclusion that it is, unless the aid of other agents also be brought to bear.

Not conclusive.

§ 8 Admiral Smyth, in his valuable memoir on the Mediterranean (p. 162), mentions that a continuance in the Sea of Tuscany of "*gusty gales*" from the south-west has been known to raise its surface no less than twelve feet above its ordinary level. This, he says, occasions a strong surface drift through the Strait of Bonifaccio. But in this we have nothing like the Gulf Stream; no deep and narrow channel-way to conduct these waters off like a miniature river even in that sea, but a mere surface flow, such as usually follows the piling up of water in any pond or gulf above the ordinary level. The Bonifaccio current does not flow like a "river in the sea" across the Mediterranean, but it spreads itself out as soon as it passes the Straits, and, like a circle on the water, loses itself by broad spreading as soon as it finds sea-room.

Strait of Bonifaccio

Its difference from the Gulf Stream.

Supposing the pressure of the waters that are *forced* into the Caribbean Sea by the trade-winds to be the *sole* cause of the Gulf Stream, that Sea and the Mexican Gulf should have a much higher level than the Atlantic. Accordingly, the advocates of this theory require for its support "a great degree of elevation." Major Rennell likens the stream to "an immense river descending from a higher level into a plain." Now, we know very nearly the average breadth and velocity of the Gulf Stream in the Florida Pass. We also know, with a like degree of approximation, the velocity and breadth of the same waters off Cape Hatteras. Their breadth here is about seventy-five miles against thirty-two in the "Narrows" of the Straits, and their mean velocity is three knots off Hatteras against four in the "Narrows." This being the case, it is easy to show that the depth of the Gulf Stream off Hatteras is not so great as it is in the "Narrows" of Bemini by nearly 50 per cent., and that, consequently, instead of *descending*, its bed represents the surface of an inclined plane, with its descent inclined from the north toward the south, *up* which plane the lower depths of the stream *must* ascend. If we assume its depth off Bemini\* to be two hundred fathoms, which are thought to be within limits, the above rates of breadth and velocity will give one hundred and fourteen fathoms for its depth off Hatteras. The waters, therefore, which in the Straits are below the level of the Hatteras depth, so far from *descending*, are actually forced up an inclined plane,

CHAPTER  
I.  
§ 9

Breadth  
and ve-  
locity in the  
Florida  
Pass.

Off Cape  
Hatteras

Its depth  
off Bemini

Its waters  
ascend.

\* Professor Bache reports that the officers of the Coast Survey have sounded with the deep sea lead, and ascertained its depth here to be 370 fathoms (January, 1856).

CHAPTER I. whose submarine ascent is not less than ten inches to the  
 — mile.

§ 10 The Niagara is an “immense river descending into a plain.” But instead of preserving its character in Lake Ontario as a distinct and well-defined stream for several hundred miles, it spreads itself out, and its waters are immediately lost in those of the lake. Why should not the Gulf Stream do the same? It gradually enlarges itself, it is true; but, instead of mingling with the ocean by broad spreading, as the “immense rivers” descending into the northern lakes do, its waters, like a stream of oil in the ocean, preserve a distinctive character for more than three thousand miles.

§ 11 Moreover, while the Gulf Stream is running to the north from its supposed elevated level at the south, there is a cold current coming down from the north; meeting the warm waters of the Gulf midway the ocean, it divides itself, and runs by the side of them right back into those very reservoirs at the south, to which theory gives an elevation sufficient to send out entirely across the Atlantic a jet of warm water said to be more than three thousand times greater in volume than the Mississippi River. This current from Baffin’s Bay has not only no trade-winds to give it a head, but the prevailing winds are unfavourable to it, and for a great part of the way it is below the surface, and far beyond the propelling reach of any wind. And there is every reason to believe that this, with other polar currents, is quite equal in volume to the Gulf Stream. Are they not the effects of like causes? If so, what have the trade winds to do with the one more than the other?

It is a custom often practised by seafaring people to throw a bottle overboard, with a paper, stating the time and place at which it is done. In the absence of other information as to currents, that afforded by these mute little navigators is of great value. They leave no tracks behind them, it is true, and their routes can not be ascertained. But knowing where they were cast, and seeing where they are found, some idea may be formed as to their course. Straight lines may at least be drawn, showing the shortest distance from the beginning to the end of their voyage, with the time elapsed. Admiral Beechey, R.N., has prepared a chart, representing, in this way, the tracks of more than one hundred bottles. From it, it appears that the waters from every quarter of the Atlantic tend toward the Gulf of Mexico and its stream. Bottles cast into the sea midway between the Old and the New Worlds, near the coasts of Europe, Africa, and America, at the extreme north or farthest south, have been found either in the West Indies, or the British Isles, or within the well-known range of Gulf Stream waters.

Of two cast out together in south latitude on the coast of Africa, one was found on the island of Trinidad; the other on Guernsey, in the English Channel. In the absence of positive information on the subject, the circumstantial evidence that the latter performed the tour of the Gulf is all but conclusive. And there is reason to suppose that some of the bottles of the admiral's chart have also performed the tour of the Gulf Stream; then, without being cast ashore, have returned with the drift along the coast of Africa into the inter-tropical region;

CHAPTER

I.

§ 12

Information derived from bottles.

Admiral Beechey's chart.



CHAPTER I.  
 ———  
 tience through the Caribbean Sea, and so on with the Gulf Stream again. (Plate VI.)

Another bottle, thrown over off Cape Horn by an American master, in 1837, has been recently picked up on the coast of Ireland. An inspection of the chart, and of the drift of the other bottles, seems to *force* the conclusion, that this bottle too went even from that remote region to the so-called *higher* level of the Gulf Stream reservoir.

§ 13 Midway the Atlantic, in the triangular space between the Azores, Canaries, and the Cape de Verd Islands, is the Sargasso Sea. (Plate VI.) Covering an area equal in extent to the Mississippi Valley, it is so thickly matted over with Gulf Weeds (*fucus natans*), that the speed of vessels passing through it is often much retarded. When the companions of Columbus saw it, they thought it marked the limits of navigation, and became alarmed. To the eye, at a little distance, it seems substantial enough to walk upon. Patches of the weed are always to be seen floating along the outer edge of the Gulf Stream. Now, if bits of cork or chaff, or any floating substance, be put into a basin, and a circular motion be given to the water, all the light substances will be found crowding together near the centre of the pool, where there is the least motion. Just such a basin is the Atlantic Ocean to the Gulf Stream; and the Sargasso Sea is the centre of the whirl. Columbus first found this weedy sea in his voyage of discovery; there it has remained to this day, moving up and down, and changing its position like the calms of Cancer, according to the seasons, the storms, and the winds. Exact observations

Sargasso  
 Sea

Discovered by  
 Columbus.



as to its limits and their range, extending back for fifty years, assure us that its mean position has not been altered since that time. This indication of a circular motion by the Gulf Stream is corroborated by the bottle chart, by Plate VI., and other sources of information. If, therefore, this be so, why give the endless current a higher level in one part of its course than another?

CHAPTER  
I.  
Its limits  
and posi-  
tion.

Nay, more ; at the very season of the year when the Gulf Stream is rushing in greatest volume through the Straits of Florida, and hastening to the north with the greatest rapidity, there is a cold stream from Baffin's Bay, Labrador, and the coasts of the north, running to the south with equal velocity. Where is the trade-wind that gives the higher level to Baffin's Bay, or that even presses upon, or assists to put this current in motion? The agency of winds in producing currents in the deep sea must be very partial. These two currents meet off the Grand Banks, where the latter is divided. One part of it underruns the Gulf Stream, as is shown by the icebergs, which are carried in a direction tending across its course. The probability is, that this "fork" flows on toward the south, and runs into the Caribbean Sea, for the temperature of the water at a little depth there has been found far below the mean temperature of the earth's crust, and quite as cold as at a corresponding depth off the Arctic shores of Spitzbergen.

Cold  
stream  
from  
Baffin's  
Bay.

Its direc-  
tion.

More water can not run from the equator or the pole than to it. If we make the trade-winds to cause the Gulf Stream, we ought to have some other wind to produce the Polar flow ; but these currents, for the most part, and for great distances, are *submarine*, and there-

§ 14  
§ 15  
Currents  
not influ-  
enced by  
winds.

CHAPTER  
I.

fore beyond the influence of winds. Hence it should appear that *winds* have little to do with the general system of aqueous circulation in the ocean.

The other "fork" runs between us and the Gulf Stream to the south, as already described. As far as it has been traced, it warrants the belief that it, too, runs *up* to seek the so-called *higher* level of the Mexican Gulf.

§ 16 The power necessary to overcome the resistance opposed to such a body of water as that of the Gulf Stream, running several thousand miles without any renewal of impulse from the forces of gravitation or any other known cause, is truly surprising. It so happens that we have an argument for determining, with considerable accuracy, the resistance which the waters of this stream meet with in their motion toward the east. Owing to the diurnal rotation, they are carried around with the earth on its axis *toward the east* with an hourly velocity of one hundred and fifty-seven\* miles greater when they enter the Atlantic than when they arrive off the Banks of Newfoundland; for, in consequence of the difference of latitude between the parallels of these two places, their rate of motion around the axis of the earth is reduced from nine hundred and fifteen† to seven hundred and fifty-eight miles the hour.

Resistance  
to the Gulf  
Stream.

§ 17 Therefore this immense volume of water would, if we suppose it to pass from the Bahamas to the Grand Banks in an hour, meet with an opposing force in the

\* In this calculation the earth is treated as a perfect sphere, with a diameter of 7925.56 miles.

† Or 915.26 to 758.60. On the latter parallel, the current has an east set of about one and a half miles the hour, making the true velocity to the east; and on the axis of the earth, about seven hundred and sixty miles an hour at the Grand Banks.

shape of resistance sufficient, in the aggregate, to retard it two miles and a half the minute in its eastwardly rate. If the actual resistance be calculated according to received laws, it will be found equal to several atmospheres. And by analogy, how inadequate must the pressure of the gentle trade-winds be to such resistance, and to the effect assigned them? If, therefore, in the proposed inquiry, we search for a propelling power nowhere but in the higher level of the Gulf, we must admit, in the head of water there, the existence of a force capable of putting in motion, and of driving over a plain at the rate of four miles the hour, all the waters, as fast as they can be brought down by three thousand<sup>1</sup> such streams as the Mississippi River,—a power at least sufficient to overcome the resistance required to reduce from two miles and a half to a few feet per minute the velocity of a stream that keeps in perpetual motion one fourth of all the waters in the Atlantic Ocean.

The facts, from observation on this interesting subject, afford us at best but a mere glimmer of light, by no means sufficient to make any mind clear as to a *higher level* of the Gulf, or as to the sufficiency of any other of the causes generally assigned for this wonderful stream. If it be necessary to resort to a higher level in the Gulf to account for the velocity off Hatteras, I cannot perceive why we should not, with like reasoning, resort to a higher level off Hatteras also to account for the velocity off the Grand Banks, and thus make the Gulf Stream, throughout its circuit, a *descending* current, and, by the *reductio ad absurdum*, show that the trade-winds are not adequate to the effect ascribed. Moreover, the top

CHAPTER  
I.  
—

§ 18  
No certainty as to the cause of the Gulf Stream.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 6.

CHAPTER I. of the Gulf Stream runs on a level with the ocean, therefore *we know* it is not a descending current.

§ 19 When facts are wanting, it often happens that hypothesis will serve, in their stead, the purposes of illustration. Let us, therefore, suppose a globe of the earth's size, having a solid nucleus, and covered all over with water two hundred fathoms deep, and that every source of heat and cause of radiation be removed, so that its fluid temperature becomes constant and uniform throughout. On such a globe, the equilibrium remaining undisturbed, there would be neither wind nor current.

§ 20 Let us now suppose that all the water within the tropics, to the depth of one hundred fathoms, suddenly becomes oil. The aqueous equilibrium of the planet would thereby be disturbed, and a general system of currents and counter currents would be immediately commenced—the oil, in an unbroken sheet on the surface, running toward the poles, and the water, in an under current, toward the equator. The oil is supposed, as it reaches the polar basin, to be reconverted into water, and the water to become oil as it crosses Cancer and Capricorn, rising to the surface in the intertropical regions, and returning as before.

§ 21 Thus, *without wind*, we should have a perpetual and uniform system of tropical and polar currents. In consequence of diurnal rotation of the planet on its axis, each particle of oil, were resistance small, would approach the poles on a spiral turning to the east, with a relative velocity greater and greater, until finally it would reach the pole, and whirl about it at the rate of nearly a thou-

and miles the hour. Becoming water and losing its velocity, it would approach the tropics by a similar but inverted spiral, turning toward the west. Owing to the principle here alluded to, all currents from the equator to the poles should have an eastward tendency, and all from the poles toward the equator a westward.

Let us now suppose the solid nucleus of this hypothetical globe to assume the exact form and shape of the bottom of our seas, and in all respects, as to figure and size, to represent the shoals and islands of the sea, as well as the coast lines and continents of the earth. The uniform system of currents just described would now be interrupted by obstructions and local causes of various kinds, such as unequal depth of water, contour of shore-lines, &c. ; and we should have at certain places currents greater in volume and velocity than at others. But still there would be a system of currents and counter currents to and from either pole and the equator. Now, do not the cold waters of the north, and the warm waters of the Gulf, made specifically lighter by tropical heat, and which we see actually preserving such a system of counter currents, hold, at least in some degree, the relation of the supposed water and oil?

In obedience to the laws here hinted at, there is a constant tendency<sup>1</sup> of polar waters toward the tropics, and of tropical waters toward the poles. Captain Wilkes, of the United States Exploring Expedition, crossed one of these hyperborean under-currents two hundred miles in breadth at the equator.

Assuming the maximum velocity of the Gulf Stream at five knots, and its depth and breadth in the Narrows

CHAPTER

I.

Results of hypothesis

§ 23

Tendency of polar and tropical waters

§ 24

Assumed velocity

<sup>1</sup> Plate IX.

CHAPTER

I.

Difference  
of specific  
gravity.

of Bemini as before,<sup>1</sup> the vertical section across would present an area of two hundred millions of square feet moving at the rate of seven feet three inches per second. The difference of specific gravity between the volume of Gulf water that crosses this sectional line in one second, and an equal volume of water at the ocean temperature of the latitude, supposing the two volumes to be equally salt, is fifteen millions of pounds. If these estimated dimensions (assumed merely for the purposes of illustration) be within limits, then the force per second operating here to propel the waters of the Gulf toward the pole is the equilibrating tendency due to fifteen millions of pounds of water in the latitude of Bemini. This is in one scale of the balance. In the other, the polar scale, there is the difference of specific gravity due an equal volume of water in the polar basin, on account of its degree of temperature as well as of salt-ness.

§ 25

Author's  
opinion.

In investigating the currents of the seas, such agencies should be taken into account. As a cause, I doubt whether this one is sufficient of itself to produce a stream of such velocity and compactness as that of the Gulf; for, assuming its estimated discharge to be correct, the proposition is almost susceptible of mathematical demonstration, that to overcome the resistance opposed in consequence of its velocity would require a force at least sufficient to drive, at the rate of three miles the hour, ninety thousand millions of tons up an inclined plane having an ascent of three inches to the mile.\* Yet heat, the very principle from which one of these agents is de-

---

\* Supposing there be no resistance from friction.

<sup>1</sup> § 9.

rived, is admitted to be one of the chief causes of those winds which are said to be the sole cause of this current. CHAPTER  
I.

The chemical properties, or, if the expression be admissible, the *galvanic* properties of the Gulf Stream waters, as they come from their fountains, are different, or rather more intense, than they are in sea water generally. If so, they may have a peculiar molecular arrangement or viscosity that resists the admixture of other sea waters differing in temperature and saltness. It is a well known fact, that waters of different temperatures, when put in the same vessel, do not readily mix of themselves, but require the process of agitation. Nor do large volumes of water in motion readily admit of the admixture of water at rest. § 26  
Chemical  
properties  
of its  
waters.

In 1843 the Secretary of the Navy took measures for procuring a series of observations and experiments with regard to the corrosive effects of sea water upon the copper sheathing of ships. With patience, care, and labour, these researches were carried on for a period of ten years; and it is said the fact has been established, that the copper on the bottom of ships cruising in the Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico suffers more from the action of sea water upon it, than does the copper of ships cruising in any other part of the ocean. In other words, the salts of these waters create the most powerful galvanic battery that is found in the ocean. Experi-  
ments on  
sea water.  
  
Galvanic  
propertiea

Now, it may be supposed—other things being equal—§ 27  
—that the strength of this galvanic battery in the sea depends in some measure upon the proportion of salts that the sea waters hold in solution, and also upon temperature.



CHAPTER

I.

§ 28

Chemical  
affinities.

If, therefore, in the absence of better information, this suggestion be taken as a probability as to the origin of these galvanic properties, we may go a step farther, and draw the inference that the waters of the Gulf Stream, as they rush out in such volume and with such velocity into the Atlantic, have not only chemical affinities peculiar to themselves, but, having more salts, higher temperature, and a high velocity, they are not so permeable to water differing from them in all these respects, and, consequently, the line of meeting between them and the other water of the ocean becomes marked. This is the case with almost all waters in rapid motion. Where the Mississippi and Missouri rivers come together, there is a similar reluctance on the part of their waters to mingle, for the line of meeting between them can be traced for miles below the junction of the two rivers.

§ 29

Dr. Thom-  
massy's  
experi-  
ments.

The story told by the copper<sup>1</sup> and the blue colour<sup>2</sup> indicates a higher point of saturation with salts than sea water generally, and the salometer confirms it. Dr. Thomassy, a French *savant*, who has been extensively engaged in the manufacture of salt by solar evaporation, informs me that on his passage to the United States he tried the saltiness of the water with a most delicate instrument: he found it in the Bay of Biscay to contain  $3\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of salt; in the trade-wind region,  $4\frac{1}{4}$  per cent.; and in the Gulf Stream, off Charleston, 4 per cent., notwithstanding the Amazon and the Mississippi, with all the intermediate rivers, and the clouds of the West Indies, had lent their fresh water to dilute the saltiness of this basin.

§ 30

Now, the question may be asked, What should make

<sup>1</sup> § 26.<sup>2</sup> § 8.



the waters of the Mexican Gulf and Caribbean Sea salter than the waters of like temperature in those parts of the ocean through which the Gulf Stream flows? CHAPTER  
I.  
—

There are physical agents that are known to be at work in different parts of the ocean, the tendency of which is to make the waters in one part of the ocean salter and heavier, and in another part lighter and less salt than the average of sea water. These agents are those employed by sea-shells in secreting solid matter for their structures; they are also heat\* and radiation, evaporation and precipitation. § 31  
Physical  
agencies.

In the trade-wind regions at sea,<sup>1</sup> evaporation is generally in excess of precipitation, while in the extra-tropical regions the reverse is the case; that is, the clouds let down more water there than the winds take up again; and these are the regions in which the Gulf Stream enters the Atlantic. § 32  
Evapora-  
tion.

Along the shores of India, where experiments have been carefully made, the evaporation from the sea amounts to three-fourths of an inch daily. Suppose it in the trade-wind region of the Atlantic to amount to only half an inch, that would give an annual evaporation of fifteen feet. In the process of evaporation from the sea, fresh water only is taken up, the salts are left behind. § 33

Now, a layer of sea water fifteen feet deep, and as broad as the trade-wind belts of the Atlantic, and reaching across the ocean, contains an immense amount of salts.

The great equatorial current (Plate VI.) which sweeps from the shores of Africa across the Atlantic into the Caribbean Sea is a surface current; and may it not bear § 34

---

\* According to Dr. Marcet, sea water contracts down to 28°.

<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

CHAPTER

I.

—

Reason for  
saltness of  
Caribbean  
Sea.

into that sea a large portion of those waters that have satisfied the thirsty trade-winds with saltless vapour?

If so—and it probably does—have we not detected here the foot-prints of an agent that does tend to make the waters of the Caribbean Sea salter, and therefore heavier than the average of sea water at a given temperature?

It is immaterial, so far as the correctness of the principle upon which this reasoning depends is concerned, whether the annual evaporation from the trade-wind regions of the Atlantic be fifteen, ten, or five feet. The layer of water, whatever be its thickness, that is evaporated from this part of the ocean, is not all poured back by the clouds in the same place whence it came. But they take it and pour it down in showers upon the extra-tropical regions of the earth—on the land as well as in the sea—and on the land more water is let down than is taken up into the clouds again. The rest sinks down through the soil to feed the springs, and return through the rivers to the sea. Suppose the excess of precipitation in these extra-tropical regions of the sea to amount to but twelve inches, or even to but two—it is twelve inches or two inches, as the case may be, of fresh water added to the sea in those parts, and which therefore tends to lessen the specific gravity of sea water there to that extent, and to produce a double effect, for the simple reason that what is taken from one scale, by being put into the other, doubles the difference.

Effects of  
evapora-  
tion.

§ 35 Now that we may form some idea as to the influence which the salts left by the vapour that the trade-winds, north-east and south-east, take up from sea water, is calculated to exert in creating currents, let us make a

partial calculation to show how much salt this vapour held in solution before it was taken up, and, of course, while it was yet in the state of sea water. The north-east trade-wind regions of the Atlantic embrace an area of at least three million square miles; and the yearly evaporation from it is,<sup>1</sup> we will suppose, fifteen feet. The salt that is contained in a mass of sea water covering to the depth of fifteen feet an area of three million square miles in superficial extent, would be sufficient to cover the British islands to the depth of fourteen feet. As this water supplies the trade-winds with vapour, it therefore becomes salter, and as it becomes salter the forces of aggregation among its particles are increased, as we may infer from the fact,<sup>2</sup> that the waters of the Gulf Stream are reluctant to mix with those of the ocean.

CHAPTER  
I.  
—

Supposed  
evaporation in the  
trade-wind  
regions.

Whatever be the cause that enables these trade-wind waters to remain on the surface, whether it be from the fact just stated, and in consequence of which the waters of the Gulf Stream are held together in their channel; or whether it be from the fact that the expansion from the heat of the torrid zone is sufficient to compensate for this increased saltiness; or whether it be from the low temperature and high saturation of the submarine waters of the inter-tropical ocean; or whether it be owing to all of these influences together that these waters are kept on the surface, suffice it to say, we do know that they go into the Caribbean Sea<sup>3</sup> as a surface current. On their passage to and through it, they intermingle with the fresh waters that are emptied into the sea from the Amazon, the Oronoco, and the Mississippi, and from the clouds, and the rivers of the

§ 36

Trade-wind waters form a surface current.

<sup>1</sup> § 33.

<sup>2</sup> § 27.

<sup>3</sup> § 34.

CHAPTER  
I.  
Mixture of  
fresh wa-  
ter.

coasts round about. An immense volume of fresh water is supplied from these sources. It tends to make the sea water, that the trade-winds have been playing upon and driving along, less briny, warmer, and lighter; for the waters of these large inter-tropical streams are warmer than sea water. This admixture of fresh water still leaves the Gulf Stream a brine stronger than that of the extra-tropical sea generally, but not quite so strong as that of the trade-wind regions.<sup>1</sup>

Effect of  
the trade-  
winds.

It is safe to assume that the trade-winds, by their constant force, do assist to skim the Atlantic of the water that has supplied them with vapour, driving it into the Caribbean Sea, whence, for causes unknown, it escapes by the channel of the Gulf Stream in preference to any other.\*

§ 37 In the present state of our knowledge concerning this wonderful phenomenon—for the Gulf Stream is one of the most marvellous things in the ocean—we can do little more than conjecture. But we have two causes in operation which we may safely assume are among those concerned in producing the Gulf Stream. One of these is in the increased saltness of its water after the trade-winds have been supplied with vapour from it, be it much or little; and the other is in the diminished quantum of salt which the Baltic and the Northern Seas contain. The waters of the Baltic are nearly fresh; they are said to contain only about half as much salt as sea water does generally.

Saltness of  
Baltic and  
North  
Seas.

§ 38 Now here we have, on one side, the Caribbean Sea

\* The fact is familiar to all concerned in the manufacture of salt by solar evaporation, as at the first show of crystallization commences at the surface.

<sup>1</sup> § 29.

and Gulf of Mexico, with their waters of brine; on the other, the great Polar basin, the Baltic and the North Sea, the two latter with waters that are but little more than brackish.† In one set of these sea-basins the water is heavy; in the other it is light. Between them the ocean intervenes; but water is bound to seek and to maintain its level; and here, therefore, we unmask one of the agents concerned in causing the Gulf Stream. What is the influence of this agent—that is, how great is it, and to what extent does it go—we can not say; only it is at least one of the agents concerned. Moreover, speculate as we may as to all the agencies concerned in collecting these waters, that have supplied the trade-winds with vapour, into the Caribbean Sea, and then in driving them across the Atlantic—of this we may be sure, that the salt which the trade-wind vapour leaves behind in the tropics has to be conveyed away from the trade-wind region, to be mixed up again in due proportion with the other water of the sea—the Baltic Sea and the Arctic Ocean included—and that these are some of the waters at least which we see running off through the Gulf Stream. To convey them away is doubtless one of the offices which, in the economy of the ocean, has been assigned to it.

As to the temperature of the Gulf Stream, there is, in a winter's day, off Hatteras, and even as high up as the Grand Banks of Newfoundland in mid ocean, a difference

† The Polar basin has a known water area of 3,000,000 square miles, and an unexplored area, including land and water, of 1,500,000 square miles. Whether the water in this basin be more or less salt than that of the inter-tropical seas, we know it is quite different in temperature, and difference of temperature will beget currents quite as readily as difference in saltness, for change in specific gravity follows either.

CHAPTER  
I.

One agent  
concerned  
in causing  
the Gulf  
Stream.

Tempera-  
ture.

CHAPTER  
I.

between its waters and those of the ocean near by of  $20^{\circ}$ , and even  $30^{\circ}$ . Water, we know, expands by heat, and here the difference of temperature may more than compensate for the difference in saltness, and leave, therefore, the waters of the Gulf Stream lighter by reason of their warmth.

§ 39 If they be lighter, they should therefore occupy a higher level than those through which they flow. As-

Expansion

suming the depth off Hatteras to be one hundred and fourteen fathoms, and allowing the usual rates of expansion for sea water, figures show that the middle or axis of the Gulf Stream there should be nearly two feet higher than the contiguous waters of the Atlantic. Hence the

Form.

surface of the stream should present a double inclined plane, from which the water would be running down on either side as from the roof of a house. As this runs off at the top, the same weight of colder water runs in at the bottom, and so raises up the cold water bed of the Gulf Stream, and causes it to become shallower and shallower as it goes north. That the Gulf Stream is therefore roof-shaped, causing the waters on its surface to flow off to either side from the middle, we have not only circumstantial evidence to show, but observations to prove.

§ 40 Navigators, while drifting along with the Gulf Stream,

Surface  
current.

have lowered a boat to try the surface current. In such cases, the boat would drift either to the east or to the west, as it happened to be on one side or the other of the axis of the stream, while the vessel herself would drift along with the stream in the direction of its course; thus showing the existence of a shallow roof-current from the middle toward either edge, which would carry the



boat along, but which, being superficial, does not extend deep enough to affect the drift of the vessel.

CHAPTER  
1.

That such is the case<sup>1</sup> is also indicated by the circumstance that the sea-weed and drift-wood which are found in such large quantities along the outer edge<sup>2</sup> of the Gulf Stream, are never, even with the prevalence of easterly winds, found along its inner edge—and for the simple reason that to cross the Gulf Stream, and to pass over from that side to this, they would have to drift up an inclined plane, as it were; that is, they would have to stem this roof-current until they reached the middle of the stream. We rarely hear of planks, or wrecks, or of any floating substance which is cast into the sea on the other side of the Gulf Stream being found along the coast of the United States. Drift-wood, trees, and seeds from the West India islands, are said to have been cast up on the shores of Europe, but never, that I ever heard, on the Atlantic shores of this country.

Direction  
of drift-  
wood, &c.

We are treating now of the effects of physical causes. The question to which I ask attention is, Why does the Gulf Stream slough off and cast upon its outer edge, sea-weed, drift-wood, and all other solid bodies that are found floating upon it?

Causes of  
the direc-  
tion of  
drift-wood

One cause has been shown to be in its roof-shaped current; but there is another which tends to produce the same effect; and because it is a physical agent, it should not, in a treatise of this kind, be overlooked, be its action never so slight. I allude now to the effects produced upon the drift matter of the stream by the diurnal rotation of the earth.

§ 42

Take, for illustration, a railroad that runs north and

§ 43

<sup>1</sup> § 39.

<sup>2</sup> § 13.



CHAPTER I.  
 — south. It is well known to engineers that when the cars are going north on such a road, their tendency is to run off on the east side; but when the train is going south, their tendency is to run off on the west side of the track—*i. e.*, always on the right-hand side in our hemisphere. Whether the road be one mile or one hundred miles in length, the effect of diurnal rotation is the same, and the tendency to run off, as you cross a given parallel at a stated rate of speed, is the same; whether the road be long or short, the tendency to fly off the track being in proportion to the speed of the trains, and not at all in proportion to the length of the road.

Illustration.

§ 44 Now, *vis inertiae* and velocity being taken into the account, the tendency to obey the force of this diurnal rotation, and to trend to the right, is proportionably as great in the case of a patch of sea-weed as it drifts along the Gulf Stream, as it is in the case of the train of cars as they speed to the north along the iron track of the Hudson River railway, or any other railway that lies north and south. The rails restrain the cars and prevent them from flying off; but there are no rails to restrain the sea-weed, and nothing to prevent the drift-matter of the Gulf Stream from going off in obedience to this force. The slightest impulse tending to turn aside bodies moving freely in water is immediately felt and implicitly obeyed.

Diurnal rotation.

§ 45 It is in consequence of this diurnal rotation that drift-wood coming down the Mississippi is so very apt to be cast upon the west or right bank. This is the reverse of what obtains upon the Gulf Stream, for it flows to the north; it therefore sloughs off<sup>1</sup> to the east.

<sup>1</sup> § 43.

The effect of diurnal rotation upon the winds and upon the currents of the sea is admitted by all—the trade-winds derive their *easting* from it—it must, therefore, extend to all the matter which these currents bear with them, to the largest iceberg as well as to the merest spire of grass that floats upon the waters, or the minutest organism that the most powerful microscope can detect among the impalpable particles of sea-dust. This effect of diurnal rotation upon drift will be frequently alluded to in the pages of this work.

CHAPTER  
I.  
Its effects  
on the  
winds and  
currents.

In its course to the north, the Gulf Stream gradually trends more and more to the eastward, until it arrives off the Banks of Newfoundland, where its course becomes nearly due east. These banks, it has been thought, deflect it from its proper course, and cause it to take this turn. Examination will prove, I think, that they are an effect, certainly not the cause. It is here that the frigid current already spoken of,<sup>1</sup> with its icebergs from the north, are met and melted by the warm waters of the Gulf. Of course the loads of earth, stones, and gravel brought down upon them are here deposited. Captain Scoresby, far away in the north, counted five hundred icebergs setting out from the same vicinity upon this cold current for the south. Many of them, loaded with earth, have been seen aground on the Banks. This process of transferring deposits from the north for these shoals, and of snowing down upon them the infusoria and the corpses of "living creatures" that are spawned so abundantly in the warm waters of the Gulf Stream, and sloughed off in myriads for burial where the conflict between it and the great Polar current<sup>2</sup> takes place,

§ 46  
Banks of  
Newfound-  
land.

<sup>1</sup> § 11.

<sup>2</sup> § 14.

CHAPTER  
I.

is everlastingly going on. These agencies, with time, seem altogether adequate to the formation of extensive bars or banks.

Their  
formation.

The deep sea soundings that have been made by vessels of the navy<sup>1</sup> tend to confirm this view as to the formation of these Banks. The greatest contrast in the bottom of the Atlantic is just to the south of these Banks. Nowhere in the open sea has the water been found to deepen so suddenly as here. Coming from the north, the bottom of the sea is shelving; but suddenly, after passing these Banks, its depth increases by almost a precipitous descent for many thousand feet, thus indicating that the debris which forms the Grand Banks comes from the north.

§ 47 From the Straits of Bemini the course of the Gulf Stream (Plate VI.) describes (as far as it can be traced over toward the British Islands which are in the midst of its waters) the arc of a great circle as nearly as may be. Such a course as the Gulf Stream takes is very nearly the course that a cannon ball, could it be shot from these straits to those islands, would describe.

Course of  
the Gulf  
Stream.

If it were possible to see Ireland from Bemini, and to get a cannon that would reach that far, the person standing on Bemini and taking aim, intending to shoot at Ireland as a target, would, if the earth were at rest, sight direct, and make no allowance for difference of motion between marksman and target.

§ 48 But there *is* diurnal rotation; the earth *does* revolve on its axis; and since Bemini is nearer to the equator than Ireland is, the gun would be moving in diurnal rotation<sup>2</sup> faster than the target, and therefore

Diurnal  
rotation  
affects its  
course.

<sup>1</sup> Plate XI.

<sup>2</sup> § 16.

the marksman, taking aim point blank at his target, would miss. He would find, on examination, that he had shot south—that is, to the *right*<sup>1</sup> of his mark. In other words, that the path actually described by the ball would be the resultant of this difference in the rate of rotation and the trajectile force; the former, impelling to the east, would cause the ball to describe a great circle, but one with too much obliquity to pass through the target. Like a ray of light from the stars, the ball would be affected by aberration.

CHAPTER  
I.  
—

It is the case of the passenger in the railroad car § 49 throwing an apple, as the train sweeps by, to a boy standing by the wayside. If he throw straight at the boy, he will miss, for the apple, partaking of the motion of the cars, will go ahead of the boy, and for the very reason that the shot will pass in advance of the target, for both the marksman and the passenger are going faster than the object at which they aim.

Illustration.

Hence we may assume it as a law, that the natural § 50 tendency of all currents in the sea, like the natural tendency of all projectiles through the air, is to describe their curves of flight in the planes of great circles. The natural tendency of all matter, when put in motion, is to go from point to point by the shortest distance, and it requires force to overcome this tendency. Light, heat, and electricity, running water, and all substances, whether ponderable or imponderable, seek, when in motion, to obey this law. Electricity may be turned aside from its course, and so may the cannon ball or running water; but remove every obstruction, and leave the current or the shot free to continue on in the direction of the first

Natural tendency of currents to describe curves.

<sup>1</sup> § 43.

CHAPTER I.  
 — impulse, or to turn aside of its own volition, so to speak, and straight it will go, and continue to go—if on a plane, in a straight line; if on a sphere, in the arc of a great circle—thus showing that it has no volition except to obey impulse, and the physical requirements to take the shortest way to its point of destination.

§ 51 The waters of the Gulf Stream, as they escape from the Gulf,<sup>1</sup> are bound for the British Islands, to the North Sea, and Frozen Ocean.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, they take,<sup>3</sup> in obedience to this physical law, the most direct course by which nature will permit them to reach their destination. And this course, as already remarked, is nearly that of the great circle, and exactly that of the supposed cannon ball.

Course of the Gulf Stream the same as a cannon ball.

§ 52 Many philosophers have expressed the opinion—indeed, the belief<sup>4</sup> is common among mariners—that the coasts of the United States and the Shoals of Nantucket turn the Gulf Stream toward the east; but if the view I have been endeavouring to make clear be correct—and I think it is—it appears that the course of the Gulf Stream is fixed and prescribed by exactly the same laws that require the planets to revolve in orbits, the planes of which shall pass through the centre of the sun; and that, were the Nantucket Shoals not in existence, the course of the Gulf Stream, in the main, would be exactly as it is and where it is. The Gulf Stream is bound over to the North Sea and Bay of Biscay partly for the reason, perhaps, that the waters there are lighter than those of the Mexican Gulf;<sup>5</sup> and if the Shoals of Nantucket were not in existence, it could not pursue a more direct route. The Grand Banks,

Common belief that Shoals of Nantucket turn it eastward.

<sup>1</sup> § 37.

<sup>2</sup> Plate IX.

<sup>3</sup> § 47.

<sup>4</sup> § 46.

<sup>5</sup> § 37.

however, are encroaching,<sup>1</sup> and cold currents from the north come down upon it: they may, and probably do, assist now and then to turn it aside.

Now if this explanation as to the *course* of the Gulf Stream and its eastward tendency hold good, a current setting from the north toward the south should have a westward tendency. It should also move in a circle of trajection, or such as would be described by a projectile moving through the air without resistance and for a great distance. Accordingly, and in obedience to the propelling powers, derived from the rate at which different parallels are whirled around in diurnal motion,<sup>3</sup> we find the current from the north, which meets the Gulf Stream, on the Grand Banks,<sup>4</sup> taking a south-*westwardly* direction, as already described.<sup>5</sup> It runs down to the tropics by the side of the Gulf Stream, and stretches as far to the west as our own shores will allow. Yet, in the face of these facts, and in spite of this force, both Major Rennel and M. Arago make the coasts of the United States and the Shoals of Nantucket to turn the Gulf Stream toward the east.

But there are other forces operating upon the Gulf Stream. They are derived from the effect of changes in the waters of the whole ocean, as produced by changes in their temperature from time to time. As the Gulf Stream leaves the coasts of the United States, it begins to vary its position according to the seasons; the limit of its northern edge, as it passes the meridian of Cape Race (Plate VI.), being in winter about latitude 40-41°, and in September, when the sea is hottest, about latitude 45-46°. The trough of the Gulf Stream, therefore, may

CHAPTER

I.

Facts  
against  
this beliefOpinion of  
Major Rennel  
and M. Arago.Operation  
of other  
forces.<sup>1</sup> § 43.<sup>2</sup> § 21.<sup>3</sup> § 16.<sup>4</sup> Plate IX.<sup>5</sup> § 45.



CHAPTER  
I

be supposed to waver about in the ocean not unlike a pennon in the breeze. Its head is confined between the shoals of the Bahamahs and the Carolinas; but that part of it which stretches over toward the Grand Banks of Newfoundland is, as the temperature of the waters of the ocean changes, first pressed down toward the south, and then again up toward the north, according to the season of the year.

§ 55 To appreciate the extent of the force by which it is so pressed, let us imagine the waters of the Gulf Stream to extend all the way to the bottom of the sea, so as completely to separate, by an impenetrable liquid wall, if you please, the waters of the ocean on the right from the waters in the ocean on the left of the stream.

Changes  
in the tem-  
perature  
of the  
ocean.

It is the height of summer: the waters of the sea on either hand are for the most part in a liquid state, and the Gulf Stream, let it be supposed, has assumed a normal condition between the two divisions, adjusting itself to the pressure on either side, so as to balance them exactly and be in equilibrium. Now, again, it is the dead of winter, and the temperature of the waters over an area of millions of square miles in the North Atlantic has been changed many degrees, and this change of temperature has been followed by a change in the specific gravity of those waters, amounting, no doubt, in the aggregate, to many hundred millions of tons, over the whole ocean; for sea water, unlike fresh,<sup>1</sup> contracts to freezing. Now, is it probable that, in passing from their summer to their winter temperature, the sea waters to the right of the Gulf Stream should change their specific gravity exactly as much in the aggregate as do the

---

<sup>1</sup> § 31.



waters in the whole ocean to the left of it? If not, the difference must be compensated by some means. Sparks are not more prone to fly upward, nor water to seek its level, than Nature is sure with her efforts to restore equilibrium in both sea and air whenever, wherever, and by whatever it be disturbed. Therefore, though the waters of the Gulf Stream do not extend to the bottom, and though they be not impenetrable to the waters on either hand, yet, seeing that they have a waste of waters on the right, and a waste of waters on the left, to which<sup>1</sup> they offer a sort of resisting permeability, we are enabled to comprehend how the waters on either hand, as their specific gravity is increased or diminished, will impart to the trough of this stream a vibratory motion, pressing it now to the right, now to the left, according to the seasons and the consequent changes of temperature in the sea.

CHAPTER  
I.  
—

Vibratory  
motion.

Plate VI. shows the limits of the Gulf Stream for March and September. The reason for this change of position is obvious. The banks of the Gulf Stream are cold water. In winter, the volume of cold water on the American, or left side of the stream, is greatly increased. It must have room, and gains it by pressing the warmer waters of the stream farther to the south, or right. In September, the temperature of these cold waters is modified; there is not such an extent of them, and then the warmer waters, in turn, press them back, and so the pendulum-like motion is preserved.

§ 56

Its limits  
in March  
and Sep-  
tember.

The observations made by the United States Coast Survey indicate that there are in the Gulf Stream threads of warmer, separated by streaks of cooler water. See Plate VI., in which these are shown; they are marked

§ 57

Streaks of  
warm and  
cold water

CHAPTER I. *x, y, z.* Figure A may be taken to represent a thermometrical cross section of the stream opposite the Capes of Virginia, for instance; the top of the curve representing the thermometer in the threads of the warmer water, and the depressions the height of the same instrument in the streaks of cooler water between; thus exhibiting, as one sails from America across the Gulf Stream, a remarkable series of thermometrical elevations and depressions in the surface temperature of this mighty river in the sea.

§ 58 These streaks, *x, y, z*, are not found in the Gulf Stream as it issues from its fountain, and I have thought them to be an incident of the process by which the waters of the Stream gradually grow cool. Suppose a perfect calm over this stream, and that all the water on the top of it to the depth of ten feet were suddenly, as it runs along in a winter's day, to be stricken by the wand of some magician, and reduced from the temperature of  $75^{\circ}$  to that of  $32^{\circ}$ , the water below the depth of ten feet remaining at  $75^{\circ}$  as before. How would this cold and heavy water sink? Like a great water-tight floor or field of ice as broad as the Gulf Stream, and loaded to sinking? And how would the warm water rise to the top? By running out under this floor or field, rising up over the edges, and flowing back to the middle? I think not; on the contrary, I suppose the warm water would rise up here and there in streaks, and that the cold would go down in streaks or seams. The process would be not unlike what we see going on in a fountain which is fed by one or more bubbling springs from below. We can see the warm water rising up in a column from the orifice below, and in winter the water

Supposed  
cause.

on the top first grows cool and then sinks. Now, imagine the fountain to be a long and narrow stream, and this orifice to be a fissure running along at the bottom in the middle of it, and feeding it with warm water. We can well imagine that there would be a seam of water rising up all the way in the middle of the stream, and that a delicate thermometer would, in cold weather, show a marked difference of temperature between the water as it rises up in this seam, and that going down on either side after it has been cooled. Now, if we make our imaginary stream broader, and place at a little distance another fissure parallel with the first, and also supplying warm water, there would be between the two a streak of cooler water descending after having parted with a certain degree of heat at the surface, and thus we would have repeated the ribbons of cold and warm water which the Coast Survey has found in the Gulf Stream.

The hottest water in the Gulf Stream is also the lightest; as it rises to the top, it is cooled both by evaporation and exposure, when the surface is replenished by fresh supplies of hot water from below. Thus, in a winter's day, the waters at the surface of the Gulf Stream off Cape Hatteras may be at 80°, and at the depth of five hundred fathoms—three thousand feet—as actual observations show, the thermometer will stand at 57°. Following the stream thence off the Capes of Virginia, one hundred and twenty miles, it will be found—the water-thermometer having been carefully noted all the way—that it now stands a degree or two less at the surface, while all below is cooler. In other words, the stratum of water at 57°, which was three thousand feet

Tempera-  
ture of Gulf  
Stream.

CHAPTER

I.

—

below the surface off Hatteras, has, in a course of one hundred and twenty or one hundred and thirty miles in a horizontal direction, ascended, vertically, six hundred feet; that is, this stratum has run up hill with an ascent of five or six feet to the mile.

§ 60 As a rule, the hottest water of the Gulf Stream is at or near the surface; and as the deep-sea thermometer is sent down, it shows that these waters, though still far warmer than the water on either side at corresponding depths, gradually become less and less warm until the bottom of the current is reached. There is reason to believe that the warm waters of the Gulf Stream are nowhere permitted, in the oceanic economy, to touch the bottom of the sea. There is everywhere a cushion of cool water between them and the solid parts of the earth's crust. This arrangement is suggestive, and strikingly beautiful. One of the benign offices of the Gulf Stream is to convey heat from the Gulf of Mexico, where otherwise it would become excessive, and to dispense it in regions beyond the Atlantic, for the amelioration of the climates of the British Islands and of all Western Europe. Now, cold water is one of the best non-conductors of heat, and if the warm water of the Gulf Stream was sent across the Atlantic in contact with the solid crust of the earth—comparatively a good conductor of heat—instead of being sent across, as it is, in contact with a cool, non-conducting cushion of cool water to fend it from the bottom, all its heat would be lost in the first part of the way, and the soft climates of both France and England would be as that of Labrador, severe in the extreme, and ice-bound.

Its effect  
on the  
climate of  
Western  
Europe.

## CHAPTER II.

## INFLUENCE OF THE GULF STREAM UPON CLIMATES.

How the Climate of England is regulated by it, § 61.—Isothermal Lines of the Atlantic, 65.—Deep-sea Temperatures under the Gulf Stream, 68.—Currents indicated by the Fish, 70.—Sea-nettles, 73.—Climates of the Sea, 75.—Offices of the Sea, 76.—Influence of the Gulf Stream upon the Meteorology of the Ocean, 78.—Furious Storms, 80.—Dampness of the English Climate due to the Gulf Stream, 83.—Its Influence upon Storms, 85.—Wreck of the Steamer San Francisco, 88.—Influence of the Gulf Stream upon Commerce and Navigation, 96.—Used for finding Longitude, 103.—Commerce in 1769, 106.

MODERN ingenuity has suggested a beautiful mode of warming houses in winter. It is done by means of hot water. The furnace and the caldron are sometimes placed at a distance from the apartments to be warmed. It is so at the Observatory. In this case, pipes are used to conduct the heated water from the caldron under the superintendent's dwelling over into one of the basement rooms of the Observatory, a distance of one hundred feet. These pipes are then flared out so as to present a large cooling surface; after which they are united into one again, through which the water, being now cooled, returns of its own accord to the caldron. Thus cool water is returning all the time and flowing in at the bottom of the caldron, while hot water is continually flowing out at the top.

CHAPTER  
II.  
§ 61  
Principle of heating apparatus.

The ventilation of the Observatory is so arranged that the circulation of the atmosphere through it is led from this basement room, where the pipes are, to all other parts of the building; and in the process of this circulation,

CHAPTER  
II.

the warmth conveyed by the water to the basement is taken thence by the air and distributed over all the rooms. Now, to compare small things with great, we have, in the warm waters which are confined in the Gulf of Mexico, just such a heating apparatus for Great Britain, the North Atlantic, and Western Europe.

§ 62

Similarity  
to the Gulf  
Stream.

The furnace is the torrid zone; the Mexican Gulf and Caribbean Sea are the caldrons; the Gulf Stream is the conducting pipe. From the Grand Banks of Newfoundland to the shores of Europe is the basement—the hot-air chamber—in which this pipe is flared out so as to present a large cooling surface. Here the circulation of the atmosphere is arranged by nature; and it is such, that the warmth thus conveyed into this warm-air chamber of mid-ocean is taken up by the genial west winds, and dispensed, in the most benign manner, throughout Great Britain and the west of Europe.

§ 63

Effect on  
European  
climate.

The maximum temperature of the water-heated air-chamber of the Observatory is about  $90^{\circ}$ . The maximum temperature of the Gulf Stream is  $86^{\circ}$ , or about  $9^{\circ}$  above the ocean temperature due the latitude. Increasing its latitude  $10^{\circ}$ , it loses but  $2^{\circ}$  of temperature; and, after having run three thousand miles toward the north, it still preserves, even in winter, the heat of summer. With this temperature, it crosses the 40th degree of north latitude, and there, overflowing its liquid banks, it spreads itself out for thousands of square leagues over the cold waters around, and covers the ocean with a mantle of warmth that serves so much to mitigate in Europe the rigours of winter. Moving now more slowly, but dispensing its genial influences more freely, it finally meets



the British Islands. By these it is divided,<sup>1</sup> one part going into the polar basin of Spitzbergen, the other entering the Bay of Biscay, but each with a warmth considerably above the ocean temperature. Such an immense volume of heated water cannot fail to carry with it beyond the seas a mild and moist atmosphere. And this it is which so much softens climate there.

CHAPTER  
II.  
Its effect  
on the  
climate of  
the British  
Islands.

We know not, except approximately in one or two places, § 64 what the depth or the under temperature of the Gulf Stream may be; but *assuming* the temperature and velocity at the depth of two hundred fathoms to be those of the surface, and taking the well-known difference between the capacity of air and of water for specific heat as the argument, a simple calculation will show that the quantity of heat discharged over the Atlantic from the waters of the Gulf Stream in a winter's day, would be sufficient to raise the whole column of atmosphere that rests upon France and the British Islands from the freezing point to summer heat.

Calcula-  
tion.

Every west wind that blows crosses the stream on its way to Europe, and carries with it a portion of this heat to temper there the northern winds of winter. It is the influence of this stream upon climate that makes Erin the "Emerald Isle of the Sea," and that clothes the shores of Albion in evergreen robes; while in the same latitude, on this side, the coasts of Labrador are fast bound in fetters of ice. In a valuable paper on currents,\* Mr. Redfield states that in 1831 the harbour of St. John's, Newfoundland, was closed with ice as late as the month of June; yet who ever heard of the port of Liverpool, on the other

West  
winds  
affected  
by it.

Mr. Red-  
field's  
paper on  
currents.

\* American Journal of Science, vol. xiv., p. 293.

<sup>1</sup> Plate IX.



CHAPTER II. side, though 2° farther north, being closed with ice even  
 — in the dead of winter?

§ 65 The Thermal Chart (Plate IV.) shows this. The isothermal lines of 60°, 50°, &c., starting off from the parallel of 40° near the coasts of the United States, run off in a north-eastwardly direction, showing the same oceanic temperature on the European side of the Atlantic in latitude 55° or 60°, that we have on the western side in latitude 40°. Scott, in one of his beautiful novels, tells us that the ponds in the Orkneys (latitude near 60°) are not frozen in winter. The people there owe their soft climate to this grand heating apparatus, for driftwood from the West Indies is occasionally cast ashore there by the Gulf Stream.

§ 66 Nor do the beneficial influences of this stream upon climate end here. The West Indian Archipelago is encompassed on one side by its chain of islands, and on the other by the Cordilleras of the Andes, contracting with the Isthmus of Darien, and stretching themselves out over the plains of Central America and Mexico. Beginning on the summit of this range, we leave the regions of perpetual snow, and descend first into the *tierra templada*, and then into the *tierra caliente*, or burning land. Descending still lower, we reach both the level and the surface of the Mexican seas, where, were it not for this beautiful and benign system of aqueous circulation, the peculiar features of the surrounding country assure us we should have the hottest, if not the most pestilential climate in the world. As the waters in these two caldrons become heated, they are borne off by the Gulf Stream, and are replaced by cooler currents through the

Isothermal  
lines of the  
Atlantic.

Beneficial  
influence  
of the  
Stream  
on South  
American  
climate.

Caribbean Sea ; the surface water, as it enters here, being 3° or 4°, and that in depth 40°\* cooler than when it escapes from the Gulf. Taking only this difference in surface temperature as an index of the heat accumulated there, a simple calculation will show that the quantity of heat daily carried off by the Gulf Stream from those regions, and discharged over the Atlantic, is sufficient to raise mountains of iron from zero to the melting point, and to keep in flow from them a molten stream of metal greater in volume than the waters daily discharged from the Mississippi River. Who, therefore can calculate the benign influence of this wonderful current upon the climate of the South? In the pursuit of this subject, the mind is led from nature up to the great Architect of nature ; and what mind will the study of this subject not fill with profitable emotions? Unchanged and unchanging alone, of all created things, the ocean is the great emblem of its everlasting Creator. "He treadeth upon the waves of the sea," and is seen in the wonders of the deep. Yea, "He calleth for its waters, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth."

In obedience to this call, the aqueous portion of our planet preserves its beautiful system of circulation. By it heat and warmth are dispensed to the extra-tropical regions ; clouds and rain are sent to refresh the dry land ; and by it cooling streams are brought from Polar Seas to temper the heat of the torrid zone. At the depth of two hundred and forty fathoms, the temperature

---

\* Temperature of the Caribbean Sea (from the journals of Mr. Dunsterville) : Surface temperature : 83°, September ; 84°, July ; 83°-86½°, Mosquito Coast. Temperature in depth : 48°, 240 fathoms ; 43°, 386 fathoms ; 42°, 450 fathoms ; 43°, 500 fathoms.

CHAPTER  
II.

Temperature of currents in the Caribbean Sea.

of the currents setting into the Caribbean Sea has been found as low as  $48^{\circ}$ , while that of the surface was  $85^{\circ}$ . Another cast with three hundred and eighty-six fathoms gave  $43^{\circ}$  below against  $83^{\circ}$  at the surface. The hurricanes of those regions agitate the sea to great depths; that of 1780 tore rocks up from the bottom seven fathoms deep, and cast them ashore. They therefore cannot fail to bring to the surface portions of the cooler water below.

§ 68 At the very bottom of the Gulf Stream, when its surface temperature was  $80^{\circ}$ , the deep-sea thermometer of the Coast Survey has recorded a temperature as low as  $35^{\circ}$  Fahrenheit.

§ 69 These cold waters doubtless come down from the north to replace the warm water sent through the Gulf Stream to moderate the cold of Spitzbergen; for within the Arctic Circle the temperature at corresponding depths off the shores of that island is said to be only one degree colder than in the Caribbean Sea, while on the coasts of Labrador and in the Polar Seas, the temperature of the water beneath the ice was invariably found by Lieutenant De Haven at  $28^{\circ}$ , or  $4^{\circ}$  below the melting point of fresh-water ice. Captain Scoresby relates, that on the coast of Greenland, in latitude  $72^{\circ}$ , the temperature of the air was  $42^{\circ}$ ; of the water,  $34^{\circ}$ ; and  $29^{\circ}$  at the depth of one hundred and eighteen fathoms. He there found a surface current setting to the south, and bearing with it this extremely cold water, with vast numbers of icebergs, whose centres, perhaps, were far below zero. It would be curious to ascertain the routes of these under currents on their way to the tropical regions, which they are intended to cool. One has been found at the equator<sup>1</sup> two

hundred miles broad, and  $23^{\circ}$  colder than the surface water. Unless the land or shoals intervene, it no doubt comes down in a spiral curve, approaching in its course the great circle route. CHAPTER  
II.  
—

Perhaps the best indication as to these cold currents may be derived from the fish of the sea. The whales first pointed out the existence of the Gulf Stream by avoiding its warm waters. Along our own coasts, all those delicate animals and marine productions which delight in warmer waters are wanting; thus indicating, by their absence, the cold current from the north now known to exist there. In the genial warmth of the sea about the Bermudas on one hand, and Africa on the other, we find in great abundance those delicate shell-fish and coral formations which are altogether wanting in the same latitudes along the shores of South Carolina. The same obtains in the west coast of South America; for there the cold current almost reaches the line before the first sprig of coral is found to grow. § 70  
Currents  
indicated  
by fish.

A few years ago, great numbers of bonita and albacore—tropical fish—following the Gulf Stream, entered the English Channel, and alarmed the fishermen of Cornwall and Devonshire by the havoc which they created among the pilchards there. § 71

It may well be questioned if our Atlantic cities and towns do not owe their excellent fish-markets, as well as our watering-places their refreshing sea-bathing in summer, to this stream of cold water. The temperature of the Mediterranean is  $4^{\circ}$  or  $5^{\circ}$  above the ocean temperature of the same latitude, and the fish there are, for the most part, very indifferent. On the other hand, the tem- § 72

CHAPTER  
II.

perature along our coast is several degrees below that of the ocean, and from Maine to Florida our tables are supplied with the most excellent of fish. The sheep's-head, so much esteemed in Virginia and the Carolinas, when taken on the warm coral banks of the Bahamas, loses its flavour, and is held in no esteem. The same is the case with other fish: when taken in the cold water of that coast, they have a delicious flavour, and are highly esteemed; but when taken in the warm water on the other edge of the Gulf Stream, though but a few miles distant, their flesh is soft, and unfit for the table. The temperature of the water at the Balize reaches 90°. The fish taken there are not to be compared with those of the same latitude in this cold stream. New Orleans, therefore, resorts to the cool waters on the Florida coasts for her choicest fish. The same is the case in the Pacific. A current of cold water<sup>1</sup> from the south sweeps the shores of Chili, Peru, and Columbia, and reaches the Gallipagos Islands under the line. Throughout this whole distance, the world does not afford a more abundant or excellent supply of fish. Yet out in the Pacific, at the Society Islands, where coral abounds, and the water preserves a higher temperature, the fish, though they vie in gorgeousness of colouring with the birds, and plants, and insects of the tropics, are held in no esteem as an article of food. I have known sailors, even after long voyages, still to prefer their salt beef and pork to a mess of fish taken there. The few facts which we have bearing upon this subject seem to suggest it as a point of the inquiry to be made, whether the habitat of certain fish does not indicate the temperature of the water, and whether these

Effects of  
tempera-  
ture on  
fish.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 455.

cold and warm currents of the ocean do not constitute the great highways through which migratory fishes travel from one region to another. Why should not fish be as much the creatures of climate as plants, or as birds, and other animals of land, sea, and air? Indeed, we know that some kinds of fish are found only in certain climates. In other words, they live where the temperature of the water ranges between certain degrees.

Navigators have often met with vast numbers of young sea-nettles (*medusa*) drifting along with the Gulf Stream. They are known to constitute the principal food for the whale; but whither bound by this route has caused much speculation, for it is well known that the habits of the right whale are averse to the warm waters of this stream. An intelligent sea-captain informs me that, several years ago, in the Gulf Stream on the coast of Florida, he fell in with such a "school of young sea-nettles as had never before been heard of." The sea was covered with them for many leagues. He likened them, in appearance on the water, to acorns floating on a stream; but they were so thick as to completely cover the sea. He was bound to England, and was five or six days in sailing through them. In about sixty days afterward, on his return, he fell in with the same school off the Western Islands, and here he was three or four days in passing them again. He recognized them as the same, for he had never before seen any like them; and on both occasions he frequently hauled up bucketfuls and examined them.

§ 73  
Sea-nettles

Anecdote

Now, the Western Islands is the great place of resort for whales: and at first there is something curious to us

§ 74



CHAPTER  
II.

in the idea that the Gulf of Mexico is the harvest-field, and the Gulf Stream the gleaner which collects the fruitage planted there, and conveys it thousands of miles off to the hungry whale at sea. But how perfectly in unison is it with the kind and providential care of that great and good Being which feeds the young ravens when they cry, and caters for the sparrow !

§ 75 The sea has its climates as well as the land. They both change with the latitude ; but one varies with the elevation above, the other with the depression below the sea level. The climates in each are regulated by circulation ; but the regulators are, on the one hand, winds ; on the other, currents.

§ 76 The inhabitants of the ocean are as much the creatures of climate as are those of the dry land ; for the same Almighty hand which decked the lily and cares for the sparrow, fashioned also the pearl and feeds the great whale, and adapted each to the physical conditions by which his providence has surrounded it. Whether of the land or the sea, the inhabitants are all his creatures, subjects of his laws, and agents in his economy. The sea, therefore, we may safely infer, has its offices and duties to perform ; so, may we infer, have its currents, and so, too, its inhabitants ; consequently, he who undertakes to study its phenomena must cease to regard it as a waste of waters. He must look upon it as a part of that exquisite machinery by which the harmonies of nature are preserved, and then he will begin to perceive the developments of order and the evidences of design ; these make it a most beautiful and interesting subject for contemplation.

Offices of  
the sea.



To one who has never studied the mechanism of a watch, its main-spring or the balance-wheel is a mere piece of metal. He may have looked at the face of the watch, and, while he admires the motion of its hands, and the time it keeps, or the tune it plays, he may have wondered in idle amazement as to the character of the machinery which is concealed within. Take it to pieces, and show him each part separately, he will recognize neither design, nor adaptation, nor relation between them; but put them together, set them to work, point out the offices of each spring, wheel, and cog, explain their movements, and then show him the result; now he perceives that it is all *one* design; that, notwithstanding the number of parts, their diverse forms and various offices, and the agents concerned, the whole piece is of *one* thought, the expression of *one* idea. He now rightly concludes that when the main-spring was fashioned and tempered, its relation to all the other parts must have been considered; that the cogs on this wheel are cut and regulated—*adapted*—to the rachets on that, &c.; and his final conclusion will be, that such a piece of mechanism could not have been produced by chance; for the adaptation of the parts is such as to show it to be according to design, and obedient to the will of *one* intelligence. So, too, when one looks out upon the face of this beautiful world, he may admire its lovely scenery, but his admiration can never grow into adoration unless he will take the trouble to look behind and study, in some of its details at least, the exquisite system of machinery by which such beautiful results are brought about. To him who does this, the sea, with its physical geography, becomes as the main-

CHAPTER  
I.  
§ 77Reflec-  
tions.

CHAPTER II. spring of a watch; its waters, and its currents, and its salts, and its inhabitants, with their adaptations, as balance-wheels, cogs and pinions, and jewels. Thus he perceives that they, too, are according to design; that they are the expression of One Thought, a unity with harmonies which One Intelligence, and One Intelligence alone, could utter. And when he has arrived at this point, then he feels that the study of the sea, in its physical aspect, is truly sublime. It elevates the mind and ennobles the man. The Gulf Stream is now no longer, therefore, to be regarded by such an one merely as an immense current of warm water running across the ocean, but as a balance-wheel—a part of that grand machinery by which air and water are adapted to each other, and by which this earth itself is adapted to the well-being of its inhabitants—of the flora which decks, and the fauna which enlivens its surface.

§ 78 Let us now consider the influence of the Gulf Stream upon the meteorology of the ocean.

Influence of the Gulf Stream on the meteorology of the sea.

To use a sailor expression, the Gulf Stream is the great “weather breeder” of the North Atlantic Ocean. The most furious gales of wind sweep along with it; and the fogs of Newfoundland, which so much endanger navigation in winter, doubtless owe their existence to the presence, in that cold sea, of immense volumes of warm water brought by the Gulf Stream. Sir Philip Brooke found the air on each side of it at the freezing point, while that of its waters was 80°. “The heavy, warm, damp air over the current produced great irregularities in his chronometers.” The excess of heat daily brought into such a region by the waters of the Gulf Stream

would, if suddenly stricken from them, be sufficient to make the column of superincumbent atmosphere hotter than melted iron. CHAPTER  
II.  
—

With such an element of atmospherical disturbance in its bosom, we might expect storms of the most violent kind to accompany it in its course. Accordingly, the most terrific that rage on the ocean have been known to spend their fury within or near its borders. § 79  
Its liability  
to storms.

Our nautical works tell us of a storm which forced this stream back to its sources, and piled up the water in the Gulf to the height of thirty feet. The Ledbury Snow attempted to ride it out. When it abated, she found herself high up on the dry land, and discovered that she had let go her anchor among the tree-tops on Elliott's Key. The Florida Keys were inundated many feet; and, it is said, the scene presented in the Gulf Stream was never surpassed in awful sublimity on the ocean. The water thus dammed up is said to have rushed out with wonderful velocity against the fury of the gale, producing a sea that beggared description. § 80

The "great hurricane" of 1780 commenced at Barbadoes. In it the bark was blown from the trees, and the fruits of the earth destroyed; the very bottom and depths of the sea were uprooted, and the waves rose to such a height that forts and castles were washed away, and their great guns carried about in the air like chaff; houses were razed, ships were wrecked, and the bodies of men and beasts lifted up in the air and dashed to pieces in the storm. At the different islands, not less than twenty thousand persons lost their lives on shore; while farther to the north, the "Stirling Castle" and the "Dover" § 81  
Great hur-  
ricane of  
1780.

CHAPTER II. "Castle" men-of-war went down at sea, and fifty sail were driven on shore at the Bermudas.

§ 82 Several years ago, the British Admiralty set on foot inquiries as to the cause of the storms in certain parts of the Atlantic, which so often rage with diastrous effects to navigation. The result may be summed up in the conclusion to which the investigation led: that they are occasioned by the irregularity between the temperature of the Gulf Stream and of the neighbouring regions, both in the air and water.

§ 83 The habitual dampness of the climate of the British Islands, as well as the occasional dampness of that along the Atlantic coasts of the United States when easterly winds prevail, is attributable also to the Gulf Stream. These winds come to us loaded with vapours gathered from its warm and smoking waters. The Gulf Stream carries the temperature of summer, even in the dead of winter, as far north as the Grand Banks of Newfoundland.

§ 84 One of the poles of maximum cold is, according to theory, situated in latitude  $80^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $100^{\circ}$  west. It is distant but little more than two thousand miles, in a north-westwardly direction, from the summer-heated waters of this stream. This proximity of extremes of greatest cold and summer heat will, as observations are multiplied and discussed, be probably found to have much to do with the storms that rage with such fury on the left side of the Gulf Stream.

§ 85 I am not prepared to maintain that the Gulf Stream is really the "Storm King" of the Atlantic, which has power to control the march of every gale that is raised there; but the course of many gales has been traced from the place of their origin directly to the Gulf Stream. Gales that take their rise on the coast of Africa,

and even as far down on that side as the parallel of 10° or 15° north latitude, have, it has been shown by an examination of log-books, made straight for the Gulf Stream; joining it, they have then been known to turn about, and, travelling with this stream, to recross the Atlantic, and so reach the shores of Europe. In this way the tracks of storms have been traced out and followed for a week or ten days. Their path is marked by wreck and disaster.

CHAPTER  
21.  
Its influ-  
ence on  
storms.

Plate X. was prepared by Lieutenant B. S. Porter, from § 86 data furnished by the log-books at the Observatory. It represents one of these storms that commenced in August 1848. It commenced more than a thousand miles from the Gulf Stream, made a straight course for it, and travelled with it for many days.

The dark shading shows the space covered by the gale, and the white line in the middle shows the axis of the gale, or the line of minimum barometric pressure. There are many other instances of similar gales. Professor Espy informs us that he also has traced many a gale from the land out toward the Gulf Stream.

Now, what should attract these terrific storms to the § 87 Gulf Stream? Sailors dread storms in the Gulf Stream more than they do in any other part of the ocean. It is not the fury of the storm alone that they dread, but it is the "ugly sea" which these storms raise. The current of the stream running in one direction, and the wind blowing in another, creates a sea that is often frightful.

In the month of December 1853, the fine new steam § 88 ship San Francisco sailed from New York with a regi- Wreck of  
ment of United States troops on board, bound around the San  
Cape Horn for California. She was overtaken, while Francisco.  
crossing the Gulf Stream, by a gale of wind, in which

CHAPTER II. she was dreadfully crippled. Her decks were swept, and by one single blow of those terrible seas that the storms there raise, one hundred and seventy-nine souls, officers and soldiers, were washed overboard and drowned.

The day after this disaster she was seen by one vessel, and again the next day, December 26th, by another, but neither of them could render her any assistance.

Apprehensions for those on board.

When these two vessels arrived in the United States, and reported what they had seen, the most painful apprehensions were entertained by friends for the safety of those on board the steamer. Vessels were sent out to search for and relieve her. But which way should these vessels go? Where should they look?

An appeal was made to know what light the system of researches carried on at the National Observatory concerning winds and currents could throw upon the subject.

§ 89 The materials that had been discussed were examined, and a chart was prepared to show the course of the Gulf Stream at that season of the year. (See the limits of the Gulf Stream for March, Plate VI.) Upon the supposition that the steamer had been completely disabled, the lines *a b* were drawn to define the limits of her drift. Between these two lines, it was said, the steamer, if she could neither steam nor sail after the gale, had drifted.

§ 90 By request, I prepared instructions for two revenue cutters that were sent to search for her. One of them being at New London, was told to go along the dotted track leading to *c*, expecting thereby to keep inside of the line along which the steamer had drifted, with the view of intercepting and speaking homeward-bound vessels that might have seen the wreck.

Search made for her.



The cutter was to proceed to *c*, where she might expect to fall in with the line of drift taken by the steamer. The last that was seen of that ill-fated vessel was when she was at *o*, but a few miles from *c*. So, if the cutter had been in time, she had instructions that would have taken her in sight of the object of her search.

It is true that, before the cutter sailed, the Kilby, the Three Bells, and the Antarctic, unknown to anxious friends at home, had fallen in with and relieved the wreck; but that does not detract from the system of observations, of the results of which, and their practical application, it is the object of this work to treat.

A beautiful illustration of their usefulness is the fact that, though the bark Kilby lost sight of the wreck at night, and the next morning did not know which way to look for it, and could not find it, yet, by a system of philosophical deduction, we on shore could point out the whereabouts of the disabled steamer so closely, that vessels could be directed to look for her exactly where she was to be seen.

These storms, for which the Gulf Stream has such attraction, and over which it seems to exercise so much control, are said to be, for the most part, whirlwinds. All boys are familiar with miniature whirlwinds on shore. They are seen, especially in the autumn, sweeping along the roads and streets, raising columns of dust, leaves, &c., which rise up like inverted cones in the air, and gyrate about the centre or axis of the storm. Thus, while the axis, and the dust, and the leaves, and all those things which mark the course of the whirlwind, are travelling in one direction, it may be seen that the wind is blowing around this axis in all directions.

CHAPTER  
II.  
§ 91

§ 92

§ 93

§ 94

Whirlwinds.



CHAPTER  
II.

Just so with some of these Gulf Stream storms. That represented on Plate X. is such a one. It was a rotary storm. Mr. Piddington, an eminent meteorologist of Calcutta, calls them *Cyclones*.

§ 95 Now, what should make these storms travel toward the Gulf Stream, and then, joining it, travel along with its current? It is the high temperature of its waters, say mariners. But why, or wherefore, should the spirits of the storm obey in this manner the influence of these high temperatures, philosophers have not been able to explain.

§ 96 *The influence of the Gulf Stream upon commerce and navigation.*

Influence  
of Gulf  
Stream on  
commerce  
and navigation.

Formerly the Gulf Stream controlled commerce across the Atlantic by governing vessels in their routes through this ocean to a greater extent than it does now, and simply for the reason that ships are faster, nautical instruments better, and navigators are more skilful now than formerly they were.

§ 97 Up to the close of the last century, the navigator *guessed* as much as he *calculated* the place of his ship: vessels from Europe to Boston frequently made New York, and thought the landfall by no means bad. Chronometers, now so accurate, were then an experiment. The Nautical Ephemeris itself was faulty, and gave tables which involved errors of thirty miles in the longitude. The instruments of navigation erred by *degrees* quite as much as they now do by *minutes*; for the rude "cross staff" and "back staff," the "sea-ring" and "mariner's bow," had not yet given place to the nicer sextant and circle of reflection of the present day. Instances are numerous of vessels navigating the Atlantic in those

Improvements  
in navigation

times being 6°, 8°, and even 10° of longitude out of their reckoning in as many days from port. CHAPTER II.

Though navigators had been in the habit of crossing and recrossing the Gulf Stream almost daily for three centuries, it never occurred to them to make use of it as a means of giving them their longitude, and of warning them of their approach to the shores of this continent. § 98  
Gulf Stream a means of finding longitude

Dr. Franklin was the first to suggest this use of it. The contrast afforded by the temperature of its waters and that of the sea between the Stream and the shores of America was striking. The dividing line between the warm and the cool waters was sharp; and this dividing line, especially that on the western side of the stream, never changed its position as much in longitude as mariners erred in their reckoning. § 99  
Dr. Franklin the first to suggest this.

When he was in London in 1770, he happened to be consulted as to a memorial which the Board of Customs at Boston sent to the Lords of the Treasury, stating that the Falmouth packets were generally a fortnight longer to Boston than common traders were from London to Providence, Rhode Island. They therefore asked that the Falmouth packets might be sent to Providence instead of to Boston. This appeared strange to the doctor, for London was much farther than Falmouth, and from Falmouth the routes were the same, and the difference should have been the other way. He, however, consulted Captain Folger, a Nantucket whaler, who chanced to be in London also; the fisherman explained to him that the difference arose from the circumstance that the Rhode Island captains were acquainted with the Gulf Stream, while those of the English packets were § 100  
Results of a knowledge of the Gulf Stream.

CHAPTER  
II.

Chart of  
its course  
by a  
fisherman.

not. The latter kept in it, and were set back sixty or seventy miles a day, while the former avoided it altogether. He had been made acquainted with it by the whales which were found on either side of it, but never in it.<sup>1</sup> At the request of the doctor, he then traced on a chart the course of this stream from the Straits of Florida. The doctor had it engraved at Tower Hill, and sent copies of it to the Falmouth captains, who paid no attention to it. The course of the Gulf Stream, as laid down by that fisherman from his general recollection of it, has been retained and quoted on the charts for navigation, we may say, until the present day.

But the investigations of which we are treating are beginning to throw more light upon this subject; they are giving us more correct knowledge in every respect with regard to it, and to many other new and striking features in the physical geography of the sea.

§ 101  
Dangerous  
navigation  
of our  
north  
coasts.

Snow-  
storms

No part of the world affords a more difficult or dangerous navigation than the approaches of our northern coast in winter. Before the warmth of the Gulf Stream was known, a voyage at this season from Europe to New England, New York, and even to the Capes of the Delaware or Chesapeake, was many times more trying, difficult, and dangerous than it now is. In making this part of the coast, vessels are frequently met by snow-storms and gales which mock the seaman's strength, and set at naught his skill. In a little while his bark becomes a mass of ice; with her crew frosted and helpless, she remains obedient only to her helm, and is kept away for the Gulf Stream. After a few hours' run, she reaches its edge, and almost at the next bound passes from the

<sup>1</sup> § 70.

midst of winter into a sea at summer heat. Now the ice disappears from her apparel; the sailor bathes his stiffened limbs in tepid waters; feeling himself invigorated and refreshed with the genial warmth about him, he realizes, out there at sea, the fable of Antæus and his mother Earth. He rises up and attempts to make his port again, and is again, perhaps, as rudely met and beat back from the north-west; but each time that he is driven off from the contest, he comes forth from this stream, like the ancient son of Neptune, stronger and stronger, until, after many days, his freshened strength prevails, and he at last triumphs and enters his haven in safety, though in this contest he sometimes falls to rise no more, for it is often terrible. Many ships annually founder in these gales; and I might name instances, for they are not uncommon, in which vessels bound to Norfolk or Baltimore, with their crews enervated in tropical climates, have encountered, as far down as the Capes of Virginia, snow-storms that have driven them back into the Gulf Stream time and again, and have kept them out for forty, fifty, and even for sixty days, trying to make an anchorage.

CHAPTER  
11.  
—  
Sudden  
change.

Nevertheless, the presence of the warm waters of the Gulf Stream, with their summer heat in mid-winter, off the shores of New England, is a great boon to navigation. At this season of the year especially, the number of wrecks and the loss of life along the Atlantic sea-front are frightful. The month's average of wrecks has been as high as three a day. How many escape by seeking refuge from the cold in the warm waters of the Gulf Stream is matter of conjecture. Suffice it to say, that before their temperature

§ 102

The warm  
waters of  
the Stream  
a boon to  
navigation.

CHAPTER  
II.

was known, vessels thus distressed knew of no place of refuge short of the West Indies; and the newspapers of that day—Franklin's Pennsylvania Gazette among them—inform us that it was no uncommon occurrence for vessels, bound for the Capes of the Delaware in winter, to be blown off and to go to the West Indies, and there wait for the return of spring before they would attempt another approach to this part of the coast.

§ 103

Import-  
ance of Dr.  
Franklin's  
discovery.

Accordingly, Dr. Franklin's discovery with regard to the Gulf Stream temperature was looked upon as one of great importance, not only on account of its affording to the frosted mariner in winter a convenient refuge from the snow-storm, but because of its serving the navigator with an excellent land-mark or beacon for our coast in all weathers. And so viewing it, the doctor, through political considerations, concealed his discovery for a while. It was then not uncommon for vessels to be as much as  $10^{\circ}$  out in their reckoning. He himself was  $5^{\circ}$ . The prize of £20,000, which had been offered, and partly paid to Harrison, the chronometer maker, for improving the means of finding longitude at sea, was fresh in the minds of navigators. And here it was thought a solution of the grand problem—for longitude at sea was a grand problem—had been stumbled upon by chance; for, on approaching the coast, the current of warm water in the Gulf Stream, and of cold water on this side of it, if tried with the thermometer, would enable the mariner to judge with great certainty, and in the worst of weather, as to his position. Jonathan Williams afterward, in speaking of the importance which the discovery of these warm and cold currents would prove to navigation, pertinently asked

the question, "If these stripes of water had been distinguished by the colours of red, white, and blue, could they be more distinctly discovered than they are by the constant use of the thermometer?" And he might have added, could they have marked the position of the ship more clearly?

When his work on Thermometrical Navigation appeared, Commodore Truxton wrote to him: "Your publication will be of use to navigation, by rendering sea voyages secure far beyond what even you yourself will immediately calculate, for I have proved the utility of the thermometer very often since we sailed together."

CHAPTER  
II.§ 104  
Commo-  
dore Trux-  
ton's opin-  
ion of the  
thermo-  
meter

"It will be found a most valuable instrument in the hands of mariners, and particularly as to those who are unacquainted with astronomical observations; . . . . these particularly stand in need of a simple method of ascertaining the approach to or distance from the coast, especially in the winter season; for it is then that passages are often prolonged, and ships blown off the coast by hard westerly winds, and vessels get into the Gulf Stream without its being known; on which account they are often hove to by the captains' supposing themselves near the coast when they are very far off (having been drifted by the currents). On the other hand, ships are often cast on the coast by sailing in the eddy of the Stream, which causes them to outrun their common reckoning. Every year produces new proofs of these facts, and of the calamities incident thereto."

Though Dr. Franklin's discovery was made in 1775, § 105 yet, for political reasons, it was not generally made known till 1790. Its immediate effect in navigation was to



CHAPTER  
II.  
Effect of  
Dr. Frank-  
lin's dis-  
covery on  
navigation

make the ports of the North as accessible in winter as in summer. What agency this circumstance had in the decline of the direct trade of the South, which followed this discovery, would be, at least to the political economist, a subject for much curious and interesting speculation. I have referred to the commercial tables of the time, and have compared the trade of Charleston with that of the northern cities for several years, both before and after the discovery of Dr. Franklin became generally known to navigators. The comparison shows an immediate decline in the Southern trade, and a wonderful increase in that of the North. But whether this discovery in navigation, and this revolution in trade, stand in the relation of cause and effect, or be merely a coincidence, let others judge.

Decline  
of the  
Southern  
trade.

§ 106 In 1769, the commerce of the two Carolinas equalled that of all the New England States together; it was more than double that of New York, and exceeded that of Pennsylvania by one-third.\* In 1792, the exports from New York amounted in value to two millions and

\* From *M'Pherson's Annals of Commerce.—Exports and Imports in 1769, valued in Sterling Money.*

EXPORTS.

	To Gr. Britain.			So. of Europe.			West Indies.			Africa.			Total.		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
New England.....	142,775	12	9	81,173	16	2	308,427	9	6	17,713	0	9	550,089	19	2
New York.....	113,382	8	8	50,885	13	0	66,324	17	5	1,313	2	6	231,906	1	7
Pennsylvania.....	28,112	6	9	203,762	11	11	178,331	7	8	560	9	9	410,756	16	1
North and South Carolina.....	405,014	13	1	76,119	12	10	87,758	19	3	691	12	1	569,584	17	3

IMPORTS.

New England.....	223,695	11	6	25,408	17	9	314,749	14	5	180	0	0	564,034	3	8
New York.....	75,930	19	7	14,927	7	0	897,420	4	0	697	10	0	188,976	1	3
Pennsylvania.....	204,979	17	4	14,249	8	4	180,591	12	4				399,830	18	0
North and South Carolina.....	327,084	8	6	7,099	5	10	76,269	17	11	137,620	10	0	535,714	2	3



a half; from Pennsylvania to 3,820,000 dollars; and from Charleston alone to 3,834,000 dollars.

CHAPTER II.

But in 1795—by which time the Gulf Stream began to be as well understood by navigators as it now is, and the average passages from Europe to the North were shortened nearly one-half, while those to the South remained about the same—the customs at Philadelphia alone amounted to 2,941,000 dollars,\* or more than one-half of those collected in all the states together.

§ 107  
Increase of the Northern trade.

Nor did the effect of the doctor's discovery end here. Before it was made, the Gulf Stream was altogether insidious in its effects. By it vessels were often drifted many miles out of their course without knowing it; and in bad and cloudy weather, when many days would intervene from one observation to another, the set of the current, though really felt for but a few hours during the interval, could only be proportioned out equally among the whole number of days. Therefore navigators could have only very vague ideas either as to the strength or the actual limits of the Gulf Stream, until they were marked out to

§ 108  
Further effects of the discovery.

\* Value of Exports in Dollars.<sup>1</sup>

	1791.	1792.	1793.	1794.	1795.	1796.
Massachusetts.....	2,519,651	2,888,104	3,755,347	5,292,441	7,117,907	9,949,345
New York.....	2,505,465	2,535,790	2,932,370	5,442,000	10,304,000	12,208,027
Pennsylvania.....	3,436,000	3,820,000	6,958,000	6,643,000	11,518,000	17,513,866
South Carolina.....	2,693,000	2,428,000	3,191,000	3,868,000	5,998,000	7,620,000

Duties on Imports in Dollars.

	1791.	1792.	1793.	1794.	1795.	1796.	1833.
Massachusetts..	1,006,000	723,000	1,044,000	1,121,000	1,520,000	1,460,000	3,055,000
New York.....	1,334,000	1,173,000	1,204,000	1,878,000	2,028,000	2,187,000	10,713,000
Pennsylvania....	1,466,000	1,100,000	1,823,000	1,498,000	2,300,000	2,050,000	2,207,000
South Carolina..	523,000	359,000	360,000	661,000	722,000	66,000	389,000

<sup>1</sup> Doc. No. 330, H. R., 2d Session, 25th Congress. Some of its statements do not agree with those taken from M'Pherson, and previously quoted.

CHAPTER  
II.

the Nantucket fishermen by the whales, or made known by Captain Folger to Dr. Franklin. The discovery, therefore, of its high temperature assured the navigator of the presence of a current of surprising velocity, and which, now turned to certain account, would hasten, as it had retarded his voyage in a wonderful degree.

§ 109 Such, at the present day, is the degree of perfection to which nautical tables and instruments have been brought, that the navigator may now detect, and with great certainty, every current that thwarts his way. He makes great use of them. Colonel Sabine, in his passage, a few years ago, from Sierra Leone to New York, was drifted one thousand six hundred miles of his way by the force of currents alone; and, since the application of the thermometer to the Gulf Stream, the average passage from England has been reduced from upwards of eight weeks to a little more than four.

§ 110 Some political economists of America have ascribed the great decline of Southern commerce which followed the adoption of the Constitution of the United States to the protection given by legislation to Northern interests. But I think these statements and figures show that this decline was in no small degree owing to the Gulf Stream and the water thermometer; for they changed the relations of Charleston—the great Southern emporium of the times—removing it from its position as a half-way house, and placing it in the category of an outside station.

§ 111 The plan of our work takes us necessarily into the air, for the sea derives from the winds some of the most striking features in its physical geography. Without a knowledge of the winds, we can neither understand the

Improvement of nautical tables and instruments.

Decline of Southern commerce ascribed to legislation.

Author's opinion.

Necessity for a knowledge of the winds.

navigation of the ocean, nor make ourselves intelligently acquainted with the great highways across it. As with the land, so with the sea; some parts of it are as untravelled and as unknown as the great Amazonian wilderness of Brazil, or the inland basins of Central Africa. To the south of a line extending from Cape Horn to the Cape of Good Hope<sup>1</sup> is an immense waste of waters. None of the commercial thoroughfares of the ocean lead through it; only the adventurous whaler finds his way there now and then in pursuit of his game; but for all the purposes of science and navigation, it is a vast unknown region. Now, were the prevailing winds of the South Atlantic northerly or southerly, instead of easterly or westerly, this unploughed sea would be an oft-used thoroughfare.

Nay, more, the sea supplies the winds with food for § 112 the rain which these busy messengers convey away from the ocean to "the springs in the valleys which run among the hills." To the philosopher the places which supply the vapours are as suggestive and as interesting for the instruction they afford, as the places are upon which the vapours are showered down. Therefore, as he who studies the physical geography of the land is expected to make himself acquainted with the regions of precipitation, so he who looks into the physical geography of the sea should search for the regions of evaporation, and for those springs in the ocean which supply the reservoirs among the mountains with water to feed the rivers; and, in order to conduct this search properly, he must consult the winds, and make himself acquainted with their "circuits." Hence, in a work on the Physical Geography of the Sea, we treat also of the ATMOSPHERE.

How this  
subject  
ought to  
be studied

---

<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

## CHAPTER III.

## THE ATMOSPHERE.

Its Connection with the Physical Geography of the Sea, § 113.—Description, 114.—Order in Sea and Air, 119.—The Language and Eloquence of Nature, 120.—The Trade Winds, 122.—Plate I., Circulation of the Atmosphere, 123.—An Illustration, 126.—Theory, 128.—Where and why the Barometer stands highest, 133.—The Pleiades, 142.—Trade-wind Clouds, 146.—Forces concerned, 149.—Heat and Cold, 150.—How the Winds turn about the Poles, 155.—Offices of the Atmosphere, 159.—Mechanical Power of, 167.—Whence come the Rains for the Northern Hemisphere? 169.—Quantity of Rain in each Hemisphere, 175.—The Saltiest Portion of the Sea, 179.—The North-east Trade-winds take up Vapours for the Southern Hemisphere, 181.—Rainy Seasons, 187.—In Oregon, 189.—California, 191.—Panama, 193.—Rainless Regions, 194.—Rainy Side of Mountains, 199.—The Ghauts, 200.—The greatest Precipitation—where it takes place, 203.—Evaporation, 207.—Rate of, in India, 210.—Adaptations of the Atmosphere, 219.

CHAPTER  
III.

§ 113  
The At-  
mosphere.

A PHILOSOPHER of the East,\* with a richness of imagery truly Oriental, describes the atmosphere as “a spherical shell which surrounds our planet to a depth which is unknown to us, by reason of its growing tenuity, as it is released from the pressure of its own superincumbent mass. Its upper surface cannot be nearer to us than fifty, and can scarcely be more remote than five hundred miles. It surrounds us on all sides, yet we see it not; it presses on us with a load of fifteen pounds on every square inch of surface of our bodies, or from seventy to one hundred tons on us in all, yet we do not so much as feel its weight. Softer than the softest down—more impalpable than the finest gossamer—it leaves the cobweb undisturbed, and scarcely stirs the lightest flower that feeds on the dew it supplies; yet it bears the fleets of nations on its wings around the world, and crushes

\* Dr. Buist, of Bombay.

the most refractory substances with its weight. When in motion, its force is sufficient to level the most stately forests and stable buildings with the earth—to raise the waters of the ocean into ridges like mountains, and dash the strongest ships to pieces like toys. It warms and cools by turns the earth and the living creatures that inhabit it. It draws up vapours from the sea and land, retains them dissolved in itself, or suspended in cisterns of clouds, and throws them down again as rain or dew when they are required. It bends the rays of the sun from their path, to give us the twilight of evening and of dawn; it disperses and refracts their various tints to beautify the approach and the retreat of the orb of day. But for the atmosphere, sunshine would burst on us and fail us at once, and at once remove us from midnight darkness to the blaze of noon. We should have no twilight to soften and beautify the landscape; no clouds to shade us from the scorching heat, but the bald earth, as it revolved on its axis, would turn its tanned and weakened front to the full and unmitigated rays of the lord of day. It affords the gas which vivifies and warms our frames, and receives into itself that which has been polluted by use, and is thrown off as noxious. It feeds the flame of life exactly as it does that of the fire—it is in both cases consumed, and affords the food of consumption—in both cases it becomes combined with charcoal, which requires it for combustion, and is removed by it when this is over.”

“It is only the girdling encircling air,” says another § 114 philosopher,\* “that flows above and around all, that

CHAPTER  
III.  
—  
Beautifully  
described

\* *Vide* North British Review.

CHAPTER  
III.

Its use to  
the whole  
world.

makes the whole world kin. The carbonic acid with which to-day our breathing fills the air, to-morrow seeks its way round the world. The date-trees that grow round the falls of the Nile will drink it in by their leaves; the cedars of Lebanon will take of it to add to their stature; the cocoa-nuts of Tahiti will grow rapidly upon it, and the palms and bananas of Japan will change it into flowers. The oxygen we are breathing was distilled for us some short time ago by the magnolias of the Susquehanna, and the great trees that skirt the Orinoco and the Amazon—the giant rhododendrons of the Himalayas contributed to it, and the roses and myrtles of Cashmere, the cinnamon-tree of Ceylon, and the forest older than the flood, buried deep in the heart of Africa, far behind the Mountains of the Moon. The rain we see descending was thawed for us out of the icebergs which have watched the polar star for ages, and the lotus lilies have soaked up from the Nile, and exhaled as vapour, snows that rested on the summits of the Alps.”

## § 115

As food of  
animals.

“The atmosphere,” continues Maun, “which forms the outer surface of the habitable world, is a vast reservoir, into which the supply of food designed for living creatures is thrown; or, in one word, it is itself the food, in its simple form, of all living creatures. The animal grinds down the fibre and the tissue of the plant, or the nutritious store that has been laid up within its cells, and converts these into the substance of which its own organs are composed. The plant acquires the organs and nutritious store thus yielded up as food to the animal, from the invulnerable air surrounding it.”

## § 116

“But animals are furnished with the means of loco-



motion and of seizure—they can approach their food, and lay hold of and swallow it; plants must wait till their food comes to them. No solid particles find access to their frames; the restless ambient air which rushes past them loaded with the carbon, the hydrogen, the oxygen, the water—everything they need in the shape of supplies, is constantly at hand to minister to their wants, not only to afford them food in due season, but in the shape and fashion in which alone it can avail them.”

CHAPTER  
III.  
Of plants

There is no employment more ennobling to man and § 117  
his intellect than to trace the evidences of design and purpose in the Creator, which are visible in many parts of the creation. Hence, to the right-minded mariner, and to him who studies the physical relations of earth, sea, and air, the atmosphere is something more than a shoreless ocean, at the bottom of which he creeps along. It is an envelope or covering for the dispersion of light and heat over the surface of the earth; it is a sewer into which, with every breath we draw, we cast vast quantities of dead animal matter; it is a laboratory for purification, in which that matter is recompounded, and wrought again into wholesome and healthful shapes; it is a machine<sup>1</sup> for pumping up all the rivers from the sea, and conveying the waters for their fountains on the ocean to their sources in the mountains; it is an inexhaustible magazine, marvellously adapted for many benign and beneficent purposes.

General  
uses.

Upon the proper working of this machine depends the § 118  
well-being of every plant and animal that inhabits the earth; therefore the management of it, its movements, and the performance of its offices, cannot be left to

<sup>1</sup> § 112.



CHAPTER III.  
 chance. They are, we may rely upon it, guided by laws that make all parts, functions, and movements of the machinery as obedient to order and as harmonious as are the planets in their orbits.

§ 119 An examination into the economy of the universe will be sufficient to satisfy the well-balanced minds of observant men, that the laws which govern the atmosphere and the laws which govern the ocean<sup>1</sup> are laws which were put in force by the Creator when the foundations of the earth were laid, and that therefore they are laws of order; else, why should the Gulf Stream, for instance, be always where it is, and running from the Gulf of Mexico, and not somewhere else, and sometimes running into it? Why should there be a perpetual drought in one part of the world, and continual showers in another? Or why should the winds and “waves of the sea ever clap their hands with joy,” or obey the voice of rebuke?

§ 120 To one who looks abroad to contemplate the agents of nature, as he sees them at work upon our planet, no expression uttered nor act performed by them is without meaning. By such an one, the wind and rain, the vapour and the cloud, the tide, the current, the saltness, and depth, and warmth, and colour of the sea, the shade of the sky, the temperature of the air, the tint and shape of the clouds, the height of the tree on the shore, the size of its leaves, the brilliancy of its flowers—each and all may be regarded as the exponent of certain physical combinations, and therefore as the expression in which Nature chooses to announce her own doings, or, if we please, as the language in which she writes down or chooses to make known her own laws. To understand

---

<sup>1</sup> § 76.

that language and to interpret aright those laws is the object of the undertaking which we now have in hand. No fact gathered in such a field as the one before us can therefore come amiss to those who tread the walks of inductive philosophy; for, in the hand-book of nature, every such fact is a syllable; and it is by patiently collecting fact after fact, and by joining together syllable after syllable, that we may finally seek to read aright from the great volume which the mariner at sea as well as the philosopher on the mountain each sees spread out before him.

OF ITS CIRCULATION.—We have seen<sup>1</sup> that there are § 121 constant currents in the ocean; we shall now see that there are also regular currents in the atmosphere.

From the parallel of about 30° north and south, nearly § 122 to the equator, we have, extending entirely around the earth, two zones of perpetual winds, namely, the zone of north-east trades on this side, and of south-east on that. With slight interruptions, they blow perpetually, and are as steady and as constant as the currents of the Mississippi River, always moving in the same direction (Plate I.) except when they are turned aside by a desert here and there to blow as monsoons, or as land and sea breezes. As these two main currents of air are constantly flowing from the poles toward the equator, we are safe in assuming that the air which they keep in motion must return by some channel to the place toward the poles whence it came in order to supply the trades. If this were not so, these winds would soon exhaust the Polar regions of atmosphere, and pile it up about the equator, and then cease to blow for the want of air to make more wind of.

The trade winds.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 31.

CHAPTER

III.

§ 123

Their  
currents.

This return current, therefore, must be in the upper regions of the atmosphere, at least until it passes over those parallels between which the trade-winds are always blowing on the surface. The return current must also move in the direction opposite to that wind the place of which it is intended to supply. These direct and counter currents are also made to move in a sort of spiral or loxodromic curve, turning to the west as they go from the poles to the equator, and in the opposite direction as they move from the equator toward the poles. This turning is caused by the rotation of the earth on its axis.

§ 124 The earth, we know, moves from west to east. Now,

Cause of  
north-east  
wind.

if we imagine a particle of atmosphere at the north pole, where it is at rest, to be put in motion in a straight line toward the equator, we can easily see how this particle of air, coming from the very axis of diurnal rotation, where it did not partake of the diurnal motion of the earth, would, in consequence of its *vis inertiae*, find, as it travels south, the earth slipping from under it, as it were, and thus it would appear to be coming from the north-east and going toward the south-west; in other words, it would be a north-east wind.

§ 125 The better to explain, let us take a common terrestrial

Illustra-  
tion.

globe for the illustration. Bring the island of Madeira, or any other place about the same parallel, under the brazen meridian; put a finger of the left hand on the place; then, moving the finger down along the meridian to the south, to represent the particle of air, turn the globe on its axis from west to east, to represent the diurnal rotation of the earth, and when the finger reaches the equator, stop. It will now be seen that the place on the

globe under the finger is to the southward and westward of the place from which the finger started ; in other words, the track of the finger over the surface of the globe, like the track of the particle of air upon the earth, has been from the northward and eastward.

On the other hand, we can perceive how a like particle of atmosphere that starts from the equator, to take the place of the other at the pole, would, as it travels north, in consequence of its *vis inertia*, be going toward the east faster than the earth. It would therefore appear to be blowing from the south-west, and going toward the north-east, and exactly in the opposite direction to the other. Writing south for north, the same takes place between the south pole and the equator.

§ 126  
Cause of south-west wind.

Such is the process which is actually going on in nature; and if we take the motions of these two particles as the type of the motion of all, we shall have an illustration of the great currents in the air, the equator being near one of the nodes, and there being at least two systems of currents, an upper and an under, between it and each pole.

§ 127  
Two systems of currents.

Halley, in his theory of the trade-winds, pointed out the key to the explanation so far, of the atmospherical circulation ; but, were the explanation to rest here, a north-east trade-wind extending from the pole to the equator would satisfy it ; and were this so, we should have, on the surface, no winds but the north-east trade-winds on this side, and none but south-east trade-winds on the other side, of the equator.

§ 128  
Halley's theory not conclusive.

Let us return now to our northern particle (Plate I.), and follow it in a round from the north pole across the

§ 129  
Theory.

CHAPTER III.  
 — equator to the south pole, and back again. Setting off from the polar regions, this particle of air, for some reason which does not appear to have been very satisfactorily explained by philosophers, instead of travelling<sup>1</sup> on the surface all the way from the pole to the equator, travels in the upper regions of the atmosphere until it gets near the parallel of 30°. Here it meets, also in the clouds, the hypothetical particle that is coming from the south, and going north to take its place.

§ 130 About this parallel of 30° north, then, these two particles press against each other with the whole amount of their motive power, and produce a calm and an accumulation of atmosphere: this accumulation is sufficient to balance the pressure of the two winds from the north and south.

Cause of calm.

§ 131 From under this bank of calms, which seamen call the "horse latitudes" (I have called them the calms of Cancer), two surface currents of wind are ejected; one toward the equator, as the north-east trades, the other toward the pole, as the south-west passage-winds.

Calms of Cancer.

§ 132 These winds come out at the lower surface of the calm region, and consequently the place of the air borne away in this manner must be supplied, we may infer, by downward currents from the superincumbent air of the calm region. Like the case of a vessel of water which has two streams from opposite directions running in at the top, and two of equal capacity discharging in opposite directions at the bottom, the motion of the water would be downward, so is the motion of the air in this calm zone.

Downward currents.

§ 133 The barometer, in this calm region, is said to stand

higher than it does either to the north or to the south of it; and this is another proof as to the banking up here of the atmosphere, and pressure from its downward motion. We can understand why there should be an uprising of the air which the two systems of trade-winds pour into the equatorial calms. But when this air commences to flow toward the poles as an upper current, we cannot understand why it should not continue gradually to descend and turn back<sup>1</sup> all the way from the equator to the poles, nor as far as investigation has gone, has any explanation been suggested for the calm belts of the tropics; nor can we tell why the upper currents should meet at one parallel in preference to another. But the fact of a meeting and a preference is certain.

CHAPTER  
III.Effect of  
calm  
region on  
barometer.Causes not  
under-  
stood.

Following our imaginary particle of air, however, from § 134 the north across this calm belt of Cancer, we now feel it moving on the surface of the earth as the north-east trade-wind; and as such it continues, till it arrives near the equator, where it meets a like hypothetical particle, which, starting from the south at the same time the other started from the north pole, has blown as the south-east trade-wind.

Theory  
continued

Here, at this equatorial place of meeting, there is another conflict of winds, and another calm region, for a north-east and south-east wind cannot blow at the same time in the same place. The two particles have been put in motion by the same power; they meet with equal force; and, therefore, at their place of meeting, are stopped in their course. Here, therefore, there is a calm belt.

§ 135

Cause of  
calm.

Warmed now by the heat of the sun, and pressed on § 136

---

<sup>1</sup> § 144.



CHAPTER  
III.  
Ascending  
currents.

each side by the whole force of the north-east and south-east trades, these two hypothetical particles, taken as the type of the whole, cease to move onward and ascend. This operation is the reverse of that which took place at the meeting<sup>1</sup> near the parallel of 30°.

§ 137 This imaginary particle, then, having ascended to the upper regions of the atmosphere again, travels there counter to the south-east trades, until it meets, near the calm belt of Capricorn, another particle from the south pole; here there is a descent as before; it then<sup>3</sup> flows on toward the south pole as a surface wind from the north-west.

§ 138 Entering the polar regions obliquely, it is pressed upon by similar particles flowing in oblique currents across every meridian; and here again is a calm place or node; for, as our imaginary particle approaches the parallels near the polar calms more and more obliquely, it, with all the rest, is whirled about the pole in a continued circular gale; finally, reaching the vortex or the calm place, it is carried upward to the regions of atmosphere above, whence it commences again its circuit to the north as an upper current, as far as the calm belt of Capricorn; here it encounters<sup>4</sup> its fellow from the north;<sup>5</sup> they stop, descend, and flow out as surface currents,<sup>6</sup> the one with which the imagination is travelling, to the equatorial calm as the south-east trade-wind; here<sup>7</sup> it ascends, travelling thence to the calm belt of Cancer as an upper current counter to the north-east trades. Here<sup>8</sup> it ceases to be an upper current, but, descending,<sup>9</sup> travels on with the south-west passage-winds toward the pole.

§ 139 Now the course we have imagined an atom of air to take is this (Plate I.): an ascent in a place of calms

<sup>1</sup> § 136.

<sup>3</sup> § 126.

<sup>6</sup> § 126.

<sup>7</sup> § 135.

<sup>9</sup> § 131.

<sup>2</sup> § 131.

<sup>4</sup> § 137.

<sup>5</sup> § 132.

<sup>8</sup> § 130 and § 129.



about the north pole at P; an efflux thence as an upper current<sup>1</sup> until it meets G (also an upper current) over the calms of Cancer. Here<sup>2</sup> there is supposed to be a descent, as shown by the arrows along the wavy lines which envelop the circle. This upper current from the pole<sup>3</sup> now becomes the north-east trade-wind, B,<sup>1</sup> on the surface, until it meets the south-east trades in the equatorial calms, when it ascends and travels as C with the upper current to the calms of Capricorn, then as D with the prevailing north-west surface current to the south pole, thence up with the arrow P, and around with the hands of a watch, and back, as indicated by the arrows along E, F, G, and H.

CHAPTER  
III.  
Course  
of the  
imaginary  
atom of  
air.

The Bible frequently makes allusions to the laws of § 140 nature, their operation and effects. But such allusions are often so wrapped in the folds of the peculiar and graceful drapery with which its language is occasionally clothed, that the meaning, though peeping out from its thin covering all the while, yet lies in some sense concealed, until the lights and revelations of science are thrown upon it; then it bursts out and strikes us with exquisite force and beauty.

Bible  
allusions  
to laws of  
nature.

As our knowledge of nature and her laws has in- § 141 creased, so has our understanding of many passages in the Bible been improved. The Psalmist called the earth "the round world;" yet for ages it was the most damnable heresy for Christian men to say the world is round; and, finally, sailors circumnavigated the globe, proved the Bible to be right, and saved Christian men of science from the stake.

Light  
thrown on  
the Bible  
by our  
knowledge  
of nature.

"Canst thou tell the sweet influences of the Pleiades?" § 142

<sup>1</sup> § 129.

<sup>2</sup> § 130.

<sup>3</sup> § 124.

<sup>4</sup> § 134.

CHAPTER  
III.  
Remarks  
on the  
Pleiades.

Astronomers of the present day, if they have not answered this question, have thrown so much light upon it as to show that, if ever it be answered by man, he must consult the science of astronomy. It has been recently all but proved, that the earth and sun, with their splendid retinue of comets, satellites, and planets, are all in motion around some point or centre of attraction inconceivably remote, and that that point is in the direction of the star Alcyon, one of the Pleiades! Who but the astronomer, then, could tell their "sweet influences?"

§ 143

The Bible  
in refer-  
ence to  
winds.

And as for the general system of atmospherical circulation which I have been so long endeavouring to describe, the Bible tells it all in a single sentence: "The wind goeth toward the south, and turneth about unto the north; it whirleth about continually, and the wind returneth again according to his circuits."—Ecl. i. 6.

§ 144

"Slough-  
ing off"  
of  
winds on  
approach-  
ing the  
poles.

Of course, as the surface winds H and D (Plate I.) approach the poles, there must be a sloughing off, if I may be allowed the expression, of air from the surface winds, in consequence of their approaching the poles; for as they near the poles, the parallels become smaller and smaller, and the surface current must either extend much higher up, and blow with greater rapidity as it approaches the poles, or else a part of it must be sloughed off above, and so turn back before reaching the calms about the poles. The latter is probably the case.

§ 145

Trade-  
winds  
on the  
Atlantic.

Our investigations show that the south-east trade-wind region is much larger than the north-east (I speak now of its extent over the Atlantic Ocean only); that the south-east trades are the fresher, and that they often push themselves up to  $10^{\circ}$  or  $15^{\circ}$  of north latitude;

whereas the north-east trade-wind seldom gets south of the equator. CHAPTER  
111.

The peculiar clouds of the trade-winds are formed between the upper and lower currents of air. They are probably formed of vapour condensed from the upper current, and evaporated as it descends by the lower and dry current from the poles. It is the same phenomenon up there which is so often observed here below; when a cool and dry current of air meets a warm and wet one, an evolution of vapour or fog ensues. § 146  
Clouds of the trade-winds.

We now see the general course of the "wind in his circuits," as we see the general course of the water in a river. There are many abrading surfaces, irregularities, &c., which produce a thousand eddies in the main stream; yet, nevertheless, the general direction of the whole is not disturbed nor affected by those counter currents; so with the atmosphere and the variable winds which we find here in this latitude. § 147  
General course of winds.

Have I not, therefore, very good grounds for the opinion<sup>1</sup> that the "wind in his circuits," though apparently to us never so wayward, is as obedient to law and as subservient to order as were the morning stars when they "sang together?" § 148  
Obedient to law.

There are at least two forces concerned in driving the wind through its circuits. We have seen<sup>2</sup> whence that force is derived which gives easting to the winds as they approach the equator, and westing as they approach the poles, and allusion, without explanation, has been made<sup>3</sup> to the source whence they derive their northing and their southing. The trade-winds are caused, it is said, by the inter-tropical heat of the sun, which, expanding the air, § 149  
Two forces concerned in driving the winds.  
Cause of trade winds considered.

<sup>1</sup> § 118.<sup>2</sup> § 124.<sup>3</sup> § 136.

CHAPTER  
III.

causes it to rise up near the equator; it then flows off in the upper currents north and south, and there is a rush of air at the surface both from the north and the south to restore the equilibrium—hence the trade-winds. But to the north side of the trade-wind belt in the northern, and on the south side in the southern hemisphere, the prevailing direction of the winds is not toward the source of heat about the equator, but exactly in the opposite direction. In the extra-tropical region of each hemisphere the prevailing winds blow from the equator toward the poles. It therefore at first appears paradoxical to say that heat makes the easterly winds of the torrid zone blow toward the equator, and the westerly winds of the temperate zones to blow toward the poles. Let us illustrate:

§ 150 The *primum mobile* of the extra-tropical winds toward the equator is, as just intimated, generally ascribed to heat, and in this wise, namely: Suppose, for the moment, the earth to have no diurnal rotation; that it is at rest; that the rays of the sun have been cut off from it; that the atmosphere has assumed a mean uniformity of temperature, the thermometer at the equator and the thermometer at the poles giving the same reading; that the winds are still, and that the whole aerial ocean is in equilibrium and at rest. Now imagine the screen which is supposed to have shut off the influence of the sun to be removed, and the whole atmosphere to assume the various temperatures in the various parts of the world that it actually has at this moment, what would take place, supposing the uniform temperature to be a mean between that at the equator and that at the poles?

Illustration.

Why, this would take place : a swelling up of the atmosphere about the equator by the expansive force of inter-tropical heat, and a contraction of it about the poles in consequence of the cold. These two forces, considering them under their most obvious effects, would disturb the supposed atmospherical equilibrium by altering the level of the great aerial ocean ; the expansive force of heat elevating it about the equator, and the contracting powers of cold depressing it about the poles. And forthwith two systems of winds would commence to blow, namely, one in the upper regions from the equator toward the poles, and as this warm and expanded air should flow toward either pole, seeking its level, a wind would blow on the surface from either pole to restore the air to the equator which the upper current had carried off.

These two winds would blow due north and south ; § 151 the effects of heat at the equator, and cold at the poles, would cause them so to do. Now suppose the earth to commence its diurnal rotation ; then, instead of having these winds north and south winds, they will, for reasons already explained,<sup>1</sup> approach the equator on both sides with *easting* in them, and each pole with *westing*.

Illustration continued.

The circumference of the earth measured on the § 152 parallel of  $60^\circ$  is only half what it is when measured on the equator. Therefore, supposing velocity to be the same, only half the volume of atmosphere<sup>2</sup> that sets off from the equator as an upper current toward the poles can cross the parallel of  $60^\circ$  north or south. The other moiety has been gradually drawn in and carried back<sup>3</sup> by the current which is moving in the opposite direction.

Such, and such only, would be the extent of the power § 153

<sup>1</sup> § 124.

<sup>2</sup> § 149.

<sup>3</sup> § 144.

CHAPTER  
III.Power of  
sun on the  
air under  
supposed  
circum-  
stances.Specific  
gravity of  
air.

of the sun to create a polar and equatorial flow of air, were its power confined simply to a change of level. But the atmosphere has been invested with another property which increases its mobility, and gives the heat of the sun still more power to put it in motion, and it is this: as heat changes the atmospherical level, it changes also the specific gravity of the air acted upon. If, therefore, the level of the great aerial ocean were undisturbed by the sun's rays, and if the air were adapted to a change of specific gravity alone, without any change in volume, this quality would also be the source of at least two systems of currents in the air, namely, an upper and a lower. The two agents combined, namely, that which changes level or volume, and that which changes specific gravity, give us the general currents under consideration. Hence we say that the *primum mobile* of the air is derived from change of specific gravity induced by the freezing temperature of the polar regions, as well as from change of specific gravity due the expanding force of the sun's rays within the tropics.

§ 154 Therefore, fairly to appreciate the extent of the influence due the heat of the sun in causing the winds, it should be recollected that we may with as much reason ascribe to the inter-tropical heat of the sun the north-west winds, which are the prevailing winds of the extra-tropical regions of the southern hemisphere, or the south-west winds, which are the prevailing winds of the extra-tropical regions of the northern hemisphere, as we may the trade-winds, which blow in the opposite directions. Paradoxical, therefore, as it seems for us to say that the heat of the sun causes the winds between the parallels of 25° or

Con-  
clusions.



30° north and south to blow toward the equator, and that it also causes the prevailing winds on the polar sides of these same parallels to blow toward the poles, yet the paradox ceases when we come to recollect that by the process of equatorial heating and polar cooling which is going on in the atmosphere, the specific gravity of the air is changed as well as its level. Nevertheless, as Halley said, in his paper read before the Royal Society in London in 1686, and as we also have said,<sup>1</sup> “it is likewise very hard to conceive why the limits of the trade-wind should be fixed about the parallel of latitude 30° all around the globe, and that they should so seldom exceed or fall short of those bounds.”

CHAPTER  
III.Halley's  
remarks.

Operated upon by the equilibrating tendency of the atmosphere and by diurnal rotation, the wind approaches the north pole, for example, by a series of spirals from the south-west. If we draw a circle about this pole on a common terrestrial globe, and intersect it by spirals to represent the direction of the wind, we shall see that the wind enters all parts of this circle from the south-west, and that, consequently, there should be about the poles a disc or circular space of calms, in which the air ceases to move forward as wind, and ascends as in a calm; about this calm disc, therefore, there should be a whirl, in which the ascending column of air revolves from right to left, or *against* the hands of a watch. At the south pole the winds come from the north-west,<sup>2</sup> and consequently there they revolve about it *with* the hands of a watch.

§ 155  
How  
wind ap-  
proaches  
north  
pole.

South pole

That this should be so will be obvious to any one who will look at the arrows on the polar sides of the calms Cancer and Capricorn (Plate I.) These arrows are

<sup>1</sup> § 133.<sup>2</sup> § 137.



CHAPTER III. intended to represent the prevailing direction of the wind at the surface of the earth on the polar side of these calms.

§ 156 It is a singular coincidence between these two facts thus deduced, and other facts which have been observed and which have been set forth by Redfield, Reid, Piddington, and others, namely, that many of the rotatory storms in the northern hemisphere revolve as do the whirlwinds about the north pole, namely, from right to left, and that all circular gales in the southern hemisphere revolve in the opposite direction, as does the whirl about the south pole.

Singular coincidence regarding rotatory storms and whirlwinds.

§ 157 How can there be any connection between the rotary motion of the wind about the pole, and the rotary motion of it in a gale caused here by local agents?

Heat not the sole agent of winds.

§ 158 That there is probably such a connection has been suggested by other facts and circumstances, and perhaps I shall be enabled to make myself clearer when we come to treat of these facts and circumstances, and to inquire farther<sup>1</sup> into the relations between magnetism and the circulation of the atmosphere; for, although the theory of heat satisfies the conditions of the problem, and though heat, doubtless, is one of the chief agents in keeping up the circulation of the atmosphere, yet it can be made to appear that it is not the *sole* agent.

Offices of the atmosphere

§ 159 SOME OF ITS METEOROLOGICAL AGENCIES.—So far, we see how the atmosphere moves; but the atmosphere, like every other department in the economy of nature, has its offices to perform, and they are many. I have already alluded to some of them; but I only propose, at this time, to consider some of the meteorological agencies at sea, which, in the grand design of creation, have probably been assigned to this wonderful machine.

<sup>1</sup> As at § 299.

To distribute moisture over the surface of the earth, and to temper the climate of different latitudes, it would seem, are two great offices assigned by their Creator to the ocean and the air.

When the north-east and south-east trades meet and produce the equatorial calms,<sup>1</sup> the air, by the time it reaches this calm belt, is heavily laden with moisture, for in each hemisphere it has travelled obliquely over a large space of the ocean. It has no room for escape but in the upward direction.<sup>2</sup> It expands as it ascends, and becomes cooler; a portion of its vapour is thus condensed, and comes down in the shape of rain. Therefore it is that, under these calms, we have a region of constant precipitation. Old sailors tell us of such dead calms of long continuance here, of such heavy and constant rains, that they have scooped up fresh water from the surface of the sea.

The conditions to which this air is exposed here under the equator are probably not such as to cause it to precipitate all the moisture that it has taken up in its long sweep across the waters. Let us see what becomes of the rest; for Nature, in her economy, permits nothing to be taken away from the earth which is not to be restored to it again in some form, and at some time or other.

Consider the great rivers—the Amazon and the Mississippi, for example. We see them day after day, and year after year, discharging immense volumes of water into the ocean.

“All the rivers run into the sea, yet the sea is not full” (Eccl. i. 7). Where do the waters so discharged go, and where do they come from? They come from their sources, you will say. But whence are their sources supplied? for,

CHAPTER  
III.§ 160  
On moisture and climate.§ 161  
Constant precipitation in calm belts

Singular fact.

§ 162

§ 163

Amazon and Mississippi.

Whence are their sources supplied.

<sup>1</sup> § 135.<sup>2</sup> § 136.

CHAPTER III. unless what the fountain sends forth be returned to it again, it will fail and be dry.

§ 164 We see simply, in the waters that are discharged by these rivers, the amount by which the precipitation exceeds the evaporation throughout the whole extent of valley drained by them; and by precipitation I mean the total amount of water that falls from, or is deposited by the atmosphere, whether as dew, rain, hail, or snow.

§ 165 The springs of these rivers<sup>1</sup> are supplied from the rains of heaven, and these rains are formed of vapours which are taken up from the sea, that "it be not full," and carried up to the mountains through the air.

"Note the place whence the rivers come, thither they return again."

§ 166 Behold how the waters of the Amazon, of the Mississippi, the St. Lawrence, and all the great rivers of America, Europe, and Asia, lifted up by the atmosphere, and flowing in invisible streams back through the air to their sources among the hills,<sup>2</sup> and that through channels so regular, certain, and well defined, that the quantity thus conveyed one year with the other is nearly the same: for that is the quantity which we see running down to the ocean through these rivers; and the quantity discharged annually by each river is, as far as we can judge, nearly a constant.

§ 167 We now begin to conceive what a powerful machine the atmosphere must be; and, though it is apparently so capricious and wayward in its movements, here is evidence of order and arrangement which we must admit, and proof which we cannot deny, that it performs this mighty office with regularity and certainty, and is, therefore, as

<sup>1</sup> § 112.

<sup>2</sup> § 112.

obedient to law as is the steam-engine to the will of its builder.

CHAPTER  
III.

It, too, is an engine. The South Seas themselves, in all their vast inter-tropical extent, are the boiler for it, and the northern hemisphere is its condenser. The mechanical power exerted by the air and the sun in lifting water from the earth, in transporting it from one place to another, and in letting it down again, is inconceivably great. The utilitarian who compares the water-power that the Falls of Niagara would afford if applied to machinery, is astonished at the number of figures which are required to express its equivalent in horse-power. Yet what is the horse-power of the Niagara, falling a few steps, in comparison with the horse-power that is required to lift up as high as the clouds and let down again all the water that is discharged into the sea, not only by this river, but by all other rivers in the world. The calculation has been made by engineers, and, according to it, the force for making and lifting vapour from each area of one acre that is included on the surface of the earth is equal to the power of 30 horses, and for the whole area of the earth it is 800 times greater than all the water-power in Europe.

§ 168

Comparison with the steam engine.

Calculation of force required for lifting vapour from the earth.

*Where does the vapour that makes the rains which feed the rivers of the northern hemisphere come from?*

§ 169

The proportion between the land and water in the northern hemisphere is very different from the proportion that obtains between them in the southern. In the northern hemisphere, the land and water are nearly equally divided. In the southern, there is several times more water than land. All the great rivers in the world are

Difference of proportion between land and water in northern and southern hemispheres.

CHAPTER  
III.River  
Amazon.Rio de la  
Plata the  
only great  
river of the  
southern  
hemi-  
sphere.

in the northern hemisphere, where there is less ocean to supply them. Whence, then, are their sources replenished? Those of the Amazon are supplied with rains from the equatorial calms and trade-winds of the Atlantic. That river runs east, its branches come from the north and south; it is always the rainy season on one side or the other of it; consequently, it is a river without periodic stages of a very marked character. It is always near its high-water mark. For one half of the year its northern tributaries are flooded, and its southern for the other half. It discharges under the line, and as its tributaries come from both hemispheres, it cannot be said to belong exclusively to either. It is supplied with water made of vapour that is taken up from the Atlantic Ocean. Taking the Amazon, therefore, out of the count, the Rio de la Plata is the only great river of the southern hemisphere. There is no large river in New Holland. The South Sea Islands give rise to none, nor is there one in South Africa entitled to be called great that we know of.

§ 170 The great rivers of North America and North Africa, and all the rivers of Europe and Asia, lie wholly within the northern hemisphere. How is it, then, considering that the evaporating surface lies mainly in the southern hemisphere—how is it, I say, that we should have the evaporation to take place in one hemisphere and the condensation in the other? The total amount of rain which falls in the northern hemisphere is much greater, meteorologists tell us, than that which falls in the southern. The annual amount of rain in the north temperate zone is half as much again as that of the south temperate.

Greater  
amount of  
rain falls  
in north-  
ern hemi-  
sphere than  
southern.

§ 171 How is it, then, that this vapour gets, as stated,<sup>1</sup> from the

---

<sup>1</sup> § 170.

southern into the northern hemisphere, and comes with such regularity that our rivers never go dry and our springs fail not? It is because of the beautiful operations and the exquisite *compensation* of this grand machine, the atmosphere. It is exquisitely and wonderfully counterpoised. Late in the autumn of the north, throughout its winter, and in early spring, the sun is pouring his rays with the greatest intensity down upon the seas of the southern hemisphere, and this powerful engine which we are contemplating is pumping up the water there<sup>1</sup> for our rivers with the greatest activity. At this time, the mean temperature of the entire southern hemisphere is said to be about 10° higher than the northern.

CHAPTER  
III.  
—

How the  
atmo-  
sphere  
supplies  
the north-  
ern rivers  
from the  
southern  
seas.

The heat which this heavy evaporation absorbs becomes § 172 latent, and, with the moisture, is carried through the upper regions of the atmosphere until it reaches our climates. Here the vapour is formed into clouds, condensed, and precipitated. The heat which held this water in the state of vapour is set free, it becomes sensible heat, and it is that which contributes so much to temper our winter climate. It clouds up in winter, turns warm, and we say we are going to have falling weather. That is because the process of condensation has already commenced, though no rain or snow may have fallen: thus we feel this southern heat that has been collected from the rays of the sun by the sea, been bottled away by the winds in the clouds of a southern summer, and set free in the process of condensation in our northern winter.

Process of  
condensa-  
tion.

If Plate I. fairly represent the course of the winds, § 173 the south-east trade-winds would enter the northern hemisphere, and, as an upper current, bear into it all their

South-east  
trade-  
winds bear  
their mois-  
ture into  
northern  
hemi-  
sphere.

<sup>1</sup> § 169.



CHAPTER moisture, except that which is precipitated in the region of  
 III. equatorial calms.

§ 174 The South Seas, then,<sup>1</sup> should supply mainly the water  
 Hypo- for this engine, while the northern hemisphere condenses  
 thesis. it; we should, therefore, have more rain in the northern  
 hemisphere. The rivers tell us that we have—at least  
 on the land: for the great water-courses of the globe, and  
 half the fresh water in the world, are found on our side  
 of the equator. This fact alone is strongly corroborative  
 of this hypothesis.

§ 175 The rain gauge tells us also the same story. The  
 Confirmed yearly average of rain in the north temperate zone is,  
 by rain according to Johnston, thirty-seven inches. He gives  
 gauge. but twenty-six in the south temperate. The observations  
 of mariners are also corroborative of the same. Log-  
 books, containing altogether the records for upward of  
 260,000 days in the Atlantic Ocean north and south,<sup>2</sup>  
 have been carefully examined for the purpose of ascer-  
 taining, for comparison, the number of calms, rains, and  
 gales, therein recorded for each hemisphere. Proportionally  
 the number of each is given as decidedly greater  
 for the north than it is for the south. The result of this  
 examination is very instructive, for it shows the status  
 of the atmosphere to be much more unstable in the  
 northern hemisphere, with its excess of land, than in the  
 southern, with its excess of water. Rains, and fogs, and  
 thunder, and calms, and storms, all occur much more  
 frequently, and are more irregular also as to the time  
 and place of their occurrence on this side, than they are  
 on the other side of the equator.

§ 176 Moisture is never extracted from the air by subjecting

<sup>1</sup> According to § 168.

<sup>2</sup> Plate XIII.



it from a low to a higher temperature, but the reverse. Thus all the air which comes loaded with moisture from the other hemisphere, and is borne into this with the south-east trade-winds, travels in the upper regions of the atmosphere<sup>1</sup> until it reaches the calms of Cancer; here it becomes the surface wind that prevails from the southward and westward. As it goes north it grows cooler, and the process of condensation commences.

CHAPTER  
III.

Moisture never extracted by subjecting the air from a low to a higher temperature.

We may now liken it to the wet sponge, and the decrease of temperature to the hand that squeezes that sponge. Finally reaching the cold latitudes, all the moisture that a dew-point of zero, and even far below, can extract, is wrung from it; and this air then commences "to return according to his circuits" as dry atmosphere. And here we can quote Scripture again: "The north wind driveth away rain." This is a meteorological fact of high authority and great importance in the study of the circulation of the atmosphere.

§ 177

Important meteorological fact

By reasoning in this manner and from such facts, we are led to the conclusion that our rivers are supplied with their waters principally from the trade-wind regions, the extra-tropical northern rivers from the southern trades, and the extra-tropical southern rivers from the northern trade-winds, for the trade-winds are the evaporating winds.

§ 178

Conclusion drawn.

Taking for our guide such faint glimmerings of light as we can catch from these facts, and supposing these views to be correct, then the saltiest portion of the sea should be in the trade-wind regions, where the water for all the rivers is evaporated; and there the saltiest portions are found. There, too, the rains fall less frequently.<sup>2</sup>

§ 179

Saltiest portion of the sea found in trade-wind regions.

<sup>1</sup> § 159.<sup>2</sup> Plate XIII.

CHAPTER  
III.

§ 180  
Dr. Ruschenberger's observations on specific gravity of sea-water

Dr. Ruschenberger, of the navy, on his last voyage to India, was kind enough to conduct a series of observations on the specific gravity of sea water. In about the parallel of  $17^{\circ}$  north and south—midway of the trade-wind regions—he found the heaviest water. Though so warm, the water there was heavier than the cold water to the south of the Cape of Good Hope. Lieutenant D. D. Porter, in the steam-ship *Golden Age*, found the heaviest water about the parallels of  $20^{\circ}$  north and  $17^{\circ}$  south.

§ 181  
How it is that there are smaller rivers and less rain in southern hemisphere.

In summing up the evidence in favour of this view of the general system of atmospherical circulation, it remains to be shown how it is, if the view be correct, there should be smaller rivers and less rain in the southern hemisphere. The winds that are to blow as the north-east trade-winds, returning from the polar regions, where the moisture<sup>1</sup> has been compressed out of them, remain, as we have seen, dry winds until they cross the calm zone of Cancer, and are felt on the surface as the north-east trades. About two-thirds of them only can then blow over the ocean; the rest blow over the land—over Asia, Africa, and North America, where there is but comparatively a small portion of evaporating surface exposed to their action.

§ 182  
Zone of north-east trade-wind

The zone of the north-east trades extends, on an average, from about  $29^{\circ}$  north to  $7^{\circ}$  north. Now, if we examine the globe, to see how much of this zone is land and how much water, we shall find, commencing with China and coming over Asia, the broad part of Africa, and so on, across the continent of America to the Pacific, land enough to fill up, as nearly as may be, just one third of it. This land, if thrown into one body between these

---

<sup>1</sup> § 176.

parallels, would make a belt equal to 120° of longitude by 22° of latitude, and comprise an area of about twelve and a half millions of square miles, thus leaving an evaporating surface of about twenty-five millions of square miles in the northern against about seventy-five millions in the southern hemisphere. CHAPTER  
III.  
—

According to the hypothesis, illustrated by Plate I, § 183 as to the circulation of the atmosphere, it is these north-east trade-winds that take up and carry over, after they rise up in the belt of equatorial calms, the vapours which make the rains that feed the rivers in the extra-tropical regions of the southern hemisphere.

Upon this supposition, then, two-thirds only of the § 184 north-east trade-winds are fully charged with moisture, and only two-thirds of the amount of rain that falls in the northern hemisphere should fall in the southern, and this is just about the proportion<sup>1</sup> that observation gives. Only two-thirds fully charged with moisture.

In like manner, the south-east trade-winds take up the § 185 vapours which make our rivers, and as they prevail to a much greater extent at sea, and have exposed to their action about three times as much ocean as the north-east trade-winds have, we might expect, according to this hypothesis, more rains in the northern—and consequently more and larger rivers—than in the southern hemisphere. That part of the ocean over which the south-east trades prevail is very much larger than that portion where the north-east trades blow. South-east trade-winds prevail to a greater extent at sea.

This estimate as to the quantity of rain in the two § 186 hemispheres is one which is not capable of verification by any more than the rudest approximations; for the greater extent of south-east trades on one side, and of high moun- Difficulty of estimating the quantity of rain in the two hemispheres.

<sup>1</sup> § 173.

CHAPTER  
— III.

tains on the other, must each of necessity, and independent of other agents, have their effects. Nevertheless, this estimate gives as close an approximation as we can make out from our data.

§ 187 *The rainy seasons, how caused.*—The calm and trade-wind regions or belts move up and down the earth annually, in latitude nearly a thousand miles. In July and August, the zone of equatorial calms is found between  $7^{\circ}$  north and  $12^{\circ}$  north, sometimes higher; in March and April, between latitude  $5^{\circ}$  south and  $2^{\circ}$  north.

§ 188 With this fact, and these points of view before us, it is easy to perceive why it is that we have a rainy season in Oregon, a rainy and dry season in California, another at Panama, two at Bogotá, none in Peru, and one in Chili.

Rainy  
seasons.

§ 189 In Oregon it rains every month, but about five times more in the winter than in the summer months.

In Oregon.

The winter there is the summer of the southern hemisphere, when this steam-engine<sup>1</sup> is working with the greatest pressure. The vapour that is taken up by the south-east trades is borne along over the region of north-east trades to latitude  $35^{\circ}$  or  $40^{\circ}$  north, where it descends and appears on the surface with the south-west winds of those latitudes. Driving upon the highlands of the continent, this vapour is condensed and precipitated, during this part of the year, almost in constant showers, and to the depth of about thirty inches in three months.

§ 190 In the winter, the calm belt of Cancer approaches the equator. This whole system of zones, namely, of trades, calms, and westerly winds, follows the sun; and they of our hemisphere are nearer the equator in the winter and spring months than at any other season.

System of  
zones fol-  
lows the  
sun.

<sup>1</sup> § 163.

The south-west winds commence at this season to prevail as far down as the lower part of California. In winter and spring, the land in California is cooler than the sea air, and is quite cold enough to extract moisture from it. But in summer and autumn the land is the warmer, and cannot condense the vapours of water held by the air. So the same cause which made it rain in Oregon now makes it rain in California. As the sun returns to the north, he brings the calm belt of Cancer and the north-east trades along with him; and now, at places where, six months before, the south-west winds were the prevailing winds, the north-east trades are found to blow. This is the case in the latitude of California. The prevailing winds, then, instead of going from a warmer to a cooler climate, as before, are going the opposite way. Consequently, if, under these circumstances, they have the moisture in them to make rains of, they cannot precipitate it.

CHAPTER  
III.  
§ 191

Rainy  
season in  
California.

Cause.

Proof, if proof were wanting, that the prevailing winds in the latitude of California are from the westward, is obvious to all who cross the Rocky Mountains or ascend the Sierra Madre. In the pass south of the Great Salt Lake basin those west winds have worn away the hills and polished the rock by their ceaseless abrasion and the scouring effects of the driving sand. Those who have crossed this pass are astonished at the force of the wind and the marks there exhibited of its GEOLOGICAL AGENCIES.

§ 192

Proof that  
west winds  
prevail in  
California.

Panama is in the region of equatorial calms. This belt of calms travels during the year, back and forth, over about  $17^{\circ}$  of latitude, coming farther north in the summer, where it tarries for several months, and then returning

§ 193

Equatorial  
calms.

CHAPTER III. so as to reach its extreme southern latitude some time in March or April. Where these calms are it is always raining, and the chart\* shows that they hang over the latitude of Panama from June to November, consequently from June to November is the rainy season at Panama. The rest of the year that place is in the region of the north-east trades, which, before they arrive there, have to cross the mountains of the isthmus, on the cool tops of which they deposit their moisture, and leave Panama rainless and pleasant until the sun returns north with the belt of equatorial calms after him. They then push the belt of north-east trades farther to the north, occupy a part of the winter zone, and refresh that part of the earth with summer rains. This belt of calms moves over more than double of its breadth, and nearly the entire motion from south to north is accomplished generally in two months, May and June. Take the parallel of 4° north as an illustration: during these two months the entire belt of calms crosses this parallel, and then leaves it in the region of the south-east trades. During these two months it was pouring down rain on that parallel. After the calm belt passes it, the rains cease, and the people in that latitude have no more wet weather till the fall, when the belt of calms recrosses this parallel on its way to the south. By examining the "Trade-wind Chart," it may be seen what the latitudes are that have two rainy seasons, and that Bogotá is within the bi-rainy latitudes.

§ 194 *The Rainless Regions.*—The coast of Peru is within the region of perpetual south-east trade-winds. Though

\* Vide *Trade-wind Chart* (Maury's Wind and Current).



the Peruvian shores are on the verge of the great South Sea boiler, yet it never rains there. The reason is plain. CHAPTER III.

The south-east trade-winds in the Atlantic Ocean first strike the water on the coast of Africa. Travelling to the north-west, they blow obliquely across the ocean until they reach the coast of Brazil. By this time they are heavily laden with vapour, which they continue to bear along across the continent, depositing it as they go, and supplying with it the sources of the Rio de la Plata and the southern tributaries of the Amazon. Finally, they reach the snow-capped Andes, and here is wrung from them the last particle of moisture that that very low temperature can extract. § 195  
South-east trade-winds.

Reaching the summit of that range, they now tumble down as cool and dry winds on the Pacific slopes beyond. Meeting with no evaporating surface, and with no temperature *colder* than that to which they were subjected on the mountain-tops, they reach the ocean before they again become charged with fresh vapour, and before, therefore, they have any which the Peruvian climate can extract. The last they had to spare was deposited as snow on the tops of the Cordilleras, to feed mountain streams under the heat of the sun, and irrigate the valleys on the western slopes. Thus we see how the top of the Andes becomes the reservoir from which are supplied the rivers of Chili and Peru. Peruvian climate cannot extract vapour from them.

The other rainless or almost rainless regions are the western coasts of Mexico, the deserts of Africa, Asia, North America, and Australia. § 196  
Other rainless regions.

We have a rainless region about the Red Sea, because § 197



CHAPTER III.  
 — the Red Sea, for the most part, lies within the north-east trade-wind region, and these winds, when they reach that region, are dry winds, for they have as yet, in their course, crossed no wide sheets of water from which they could take up a supply of vapour.

§ 198 Most of New Holland lies within the south-east trade-wind region; so does most of inter-tropical South America. But inter-tropical South America is the land of showers. The largest rivers, and most copiously watered country in the world are to be found there, whereas almost exactly the reverse is the case in Australia.

Difference  
 between  
 Australia  
 and South  
 America.

Whence this difference? Examine the direction of the winds with regard to the shore-line of these two regions, and the explanation will at once be suggested. In Australia—east coast—the shore-line is stretched out in the direction of the trades; in South America—east coast—it is perpendicular to their direction. In Australia, they fringe this shore only with their vapour, and so stint that thirsty land with showers that the trees cannot afford to spread their leaves out to the sun, for it evaporates all the moisture from them; their instincts, therefore, teach them to turn their edges to his rays. In inter-tropical South America, the trade-winds blow perpendicularly upon the shore, penetrating the very heart of the country with their moisture. Here the leaves, measuring many feet square—as the plantain, &c.—turn their broad sides up to the sun, and court his rays.

§ 199 *Why there is more rain on one side of a mountain than on the other.*

We may now, from what has been said, see why the Andes, and all other mountains which lie athwart the

course of the winds, have a dry and a rainy side, and how the prevailing winds of the latitude determine which is the rainy and which the dry side.

Thus, let us take the southern coast of Chili for illustration. In our summer time, when the sun comes north, and drags after him his belts of perpetual winds and calms, that coast is left within the regions of the north-west winds—the winds that are counter to the south-east trades—which, cooled by the winter temperature of the highlands of Chili, deposit their moisture copiously. During the rest of the year, the most of Chili is in the region of the south-east trades, and the same causes which operate in California to prevent rain there, operate in Chili; only the dry season in one place is the rainy season of the other.

Reason why one side of a mountain is wet and the other dry.

Hence we see that the weather side of all such mountains as the Andes is the wet side, and the lee side the dry.

The same phenomenon, from a like cause, is repeated § 200 in inter-tropical India, only in that country each side of the mountain is made alternately the wet and the dry side by a change in the prevailing direction of the wind. India is in one of the monsoon regions:<sup>1</sup> it is the most famous of them all. From October to April the north-east trades prevail. They evaporate from the Bay of Bengal water enough to feed with rains, during this season, the western shores of this bay and the Ghauts range of mountains. This range holds the relation to these winds that the Andes of Peru<sup>2</sup> hold to the south-east trades; it first cools and then relieves them of their moisture, and they tumble down on the western slopes

India the most famous of the monsoon regions.

<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

<sup>2</sup> § 194.

CHAPTER  
III.

of the Ghauts, Peruvian-like,<sup>1</sup> cool, rainless, and dry ; wherefore that narrow strip of country between the Ghauts and the Arabian Sea would, like that in Peru between the Andes and the Pacific, remain without rain for ever, were it not for other agents which are at work about India, and not about Peru. The work of the agents to which I allude is felt in the monsoons, and these prevail in India, and not in Peru.

§ 201 After the north-east trades have blown out their season, which in India ends in April,<sup>2</sup> the great arid plains of Central Asia, of Tartary, Thibet, and Mongolia, become heated up ; they rarefy the air of the north-east trades, and cause it to ascend. This rarefaction and ascent, by their demand for an indraught, are felt by the air which the south-east trade-winds bring to the equatorial Dol-drums of the Indian Ocean ; it rushes over into the northern hemisphere to supply the upward draught from the heated plains as the south-west monsoons. The forces of diurnal rotation assist<sup>3</sup> to give these winds their westing. Thus the south-east trades, in certain parts of the Indian Ocean, are converted, during the summer and early autumn, into south-west monsoons. These, then, come from the Indian Ocean and Sea of Arabia loaded with moisture, and striking with it perpendicularly upon the Ghauts, precipitate upon that narrow strip of land between this range and the Arabian Sea an amount of water that is truly astonishing. Here, then, are not only the conditions for causing more rain, now on the west, now on the east side of this mountain range, but the conditions also for the most copious precipitation. Accordingly, when we come to consult rain gauges, and

How the south-east trades in certain parts of the Indian Ocean become south-west monsoons.

<sup>1</sup> § 199.<sup>2</sup> § 200.<sup>3</sup> § 44.

to ask meteorological observers in India about the fall of rain, they tell us that on the western slopes of the Ghauts it sometimes reaches the enormous depth of twelve or fifteen inches in one day.\* Were the Andes stretched along the eastern instead of the western coast of America, we should have an amount of precipitation on their eastern slopes that would be truly astonishing; for the water which the Amazon and the other majestic streams of South America return to the ocean would still be precipitated between the sea-shore and the crest of these mountains.

CHAPTER  
III.Enormous  
depth of  
rain on the  
Ghauts.

These winds of India then continue their course to the Himalaya range as dry winds. In crossing this range, they are subjected to a lower temperature than that to which they were exposed in crossing the Ghauts. Here they drop more of their moisture in the shape of snow and rain, and then pass over into the thirsty lands beyond with scarcely enough vapour in them to make even a cloud. Thence they ascend into the upper air, there to become counter-currents in the general system of atmospheric circulation.

§ 202

Dry winds  
on the  
Himalayas

*The Regions of Greatest Precipitation.*—We shall now be enabled to determine, if the views which I have been endeavouring to present be correct, what parts of the earth are subject to the greatest fall of rain. They should be on the slopes of those mountains which the trade-winds first strike, after having blown across the greatest tract of ocean. The more abrupt the elevation, and the shorter the distance between the mountain top and the ocean,<sup>1</sup> the greater the amount of precipitation.

§ 203

The  
regions of  
greatest  
precipitation.

\* Keith Johnston.

<sup>1</sup> § 199.

CHAPTER  
III.

If, therefore, we commence at the parallel of about  $30^{\circ}$  north in the Pacific, where the north-east trade-winds first strike that ocean, and trace them through their circuits till they first strike high land, we ought to find such a place of heavy rains.

## § 204

Course of  
north-east  
trade-  
wind.

Commencing at this parallel of  $30^{\circ}$ , therefore, in the North Pacific, and tracing thence the course of the north-east trade-winds, we shall find that they blow thence, and reach the region of equatorial calms near the Caroline Islands. Here they rise up; but, instead of pursuing the same course in the upper stratum of winds through the southern hemisphere, they, in consequence of the rotation of the earth,<sup>1</sup> are made to take a south-east course. They keep in this upper stratum until they reach the calms of Capricorn, between the parallels of  $30^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$ , after which they become the prevailing north-west winds of the southern hemisphere, which correspond to the south-west of the northern. Continuing on to the south-east, they are now the surface winds; they are going from warmer to cooler latitudes; they become as the wet sponge,<sup>2</sup> and are abruptly intercepted by the Andes of Patagonia, whose cold summit compresses them, and with its low dew-point squeezes the water out of them. Captain King found the astonishing fall of water here of nearly thirteen feet (one hundred and fifty-one inches) in forty-one days; and Mr. Darwin reports that the sea-water along this part of the South American coast is sometimes quite fresh, from the vast quantity of rain that falls.

Astonish-  
ing fall of  
water in  
Patagonia.

## § 205

We ought to expect a corresponding rainy region to be found to the north of Oregon; but there the moun-

<sup>1</sup> § 126.

<sup>2</sup> § 177.

tains are not so high, the obstruction to the south-west winds is not so abrupt, the highlands are farther from the coast, and the air which these winds carry in their circulation to that part of the coast, though it be as heavily charged with moisture as at Patagonia, has a greater extent of country over which to deposit its rain, and consequently, the fall to the square inch will not be as great.\*

CHAPTER  
III.  
—  
Why  
greater  
than  
Oregon.

In like manner, we should be enabled to say in what part of the world the most equable climates are to be found. They are to be found in the equatorial calms, where the north-east and south-east trades meet fresh from the ocean, and keep the temperature uniform under a canopy of perpetual clouds.

Most  
equable  
climates.

*Amount of Evaporation.*—The mean annual fall of rain on the entire surface of the earth is estimated at about five feet.

To evaporate water enough annually from the ocean to cover the earth, on the average, five feet deep with rain; to transport it from one zone to another; and to precipitate it in the right places, at suitable times, and in the proportions due, is one of the offices of the grand atmospherical machine. This water is evaporated principally from the torrid zone. Supposing it all to come thence, we shall have, encircling the earth, a belt of ocean three thousand miles in breadth, from which this atmosphere evaporates a layer of water annually sixteen

Evapora-  
tion.

\* I have, through the kindness of A. Holbrook, Esq., United States Attorney for Oregon, received the *Oregon Spectator* of February 13, 1851, containing the Rev. G. H. Atkinson's Meteorological Journal, kept in Oregon city during the month of January 1851. The quantity of rain and snow for that month is 13.63 inches, or about one third the average quantity that falls at Washington during the year.



CHAPTER  
III.

Exquisite  
machinery  
of the at-  
mosphere.

feet in depth. And to hoist up as high as the clouds, and lower down again all the water in a lake sixteen feet deep, and three thousand miles broad, and twenty-four thousand long, is the yearly business of this invisible machinery. What a powerful engine is the atmosphere! and how nicely adjusted must be all the cogs, and wheels, and springs, and *compensations* of this exquisite piece of machinery, that it never wears out nor breaks down, nor fails to do its work at the right time, and in the right way!

§ 209 In his annual report to the Society (*Transactions of the Bombay Geographical Society* from May, 1849, to August, 1850, vol. ix.), Dr. Buist, the secretary, states, on the authority of Mr. Laidly, the evaporation at Calcutta to be "about fifteen feet annually; that between the Cape and Calcutta it averages, in October and November, nearly three-fourths of an inch daily; between 10° and 20° in the Bay of Bengal, it was found to exceed an inch daily. Supposing this to be double the average throughout the year, we should," continues the doctor, "have eighteen feet of evaporation annually."

§ 210 If, in considering the direct observations upon the daily rate of evaporation in India, it be remembered that the seasons there are divided into wet and dry; that in the dry season, evaporation in the Indian Ocean, because of its high temperature, and also of the high temperature and dry state of the wind, probably goes on as rapidly as it does any where else in the world; if, moreover, we remember that the regular trade-wind regions proper at sea are regions of small precipitation;<sup>1</sup> that evaporation is going on from them all the year round, we shall have

Evapora-  
tion in  
Indian  
Ocean.

Estimate  
for trade-  
wind sur-  
face.



reason to consider the estimate of sixteen feet annually for the trade-wind surface of the ocean not too high.

CHAPTER  
III.

We see the light beginning to break upon us, for we now begin to perceive why it is that the proportions between the land and water were made as we find them in nature. If there had been more water and less land, we should have had more rain, and *vice versa*; and then climates would have been different from what they now are, and the inhabitants, animal or vegetable, would not have been as they are. And as they are, that wise Being who, in his kind providence, so watches over and regards the things of this world that he takes notice of the sparrow's fall, and numbers the very hairs of our head, doubtless designed them to be.

§ 211

Why the proportions of land and water are as we find them.

The mind is delighted, and the imagination charmed, by contemplating the physical arrangements of the earth from such points of view as this is which we now have before us; from it the sea, and the air, and the land, appear each as a part of that grand machinery upon which the well-being of all the inhabitants of earth, sea, and air depends; and which, in the beautiful adaptations that we are pointing out, affords new and striking evidence that they all have their origin in ONE omniscient idea, just as the different parts of a watch may be considered to have been constructed and arranged according to *one* human design.

§ 212

Beauty of physical arrangements of the earth.

In some parts of the earth, the precipitation is greater than the evaporation; thus the amount of water borne down by every river that runs into the sea may be considered as the excess of the precipitation over the evaporation that takes place in the valley drained by that river.

§ 213

Precipitation sometimes greater than evaporation.

CHAPTER  
III.

§ 214

This excess comes from the sea; the winds convey it to the interior; and the forces of gravity, dashing it along in mountain torrents or gentle streams, hurry it back to the sea again.

In other  
parts  
exactly  
equal.

§ 215

In other parts of the earth, the evaporation and precipitation are exactly equal, as in those inland basins such as that in which the city of Mexico, Lake Titicaca, the Caspian Sea, &c., are situated, which basins have no ocean drainage.

Valley of  
Caspian  
Sea.

§ 216

If more rain fell in the valley of the Caspian Sea than is evaporated from it, that sea would finally get full and overflow the whole of that great basin. If less fell than is evaporated from it again, then that sea, in the course of time, would dry up, and plants and animals there would all perish for the want of water.

§ 217

In the sheets of water which we find distributed over that and every other inhabitable inland basin, we see reservoirs, or evaporating surfaces, just sufficient for the supply of that degree of moisture which is best adapted to the well-being of the plants and animals that people such basins.

In others  
neither e-  
vaporation  
nor preci-  
pitation  
takes place

§ 218

In other parts of the earth still, we find places, as the Desert of Sahara, in which neither evaporation nor precipitation takes place, and in which we find neither plant nor animal.

Terrestrial  
adapta-  
tions.

§ 219

ADAPTATIONS.—In contemplating the system of terrestrial adaptations, these researches teach one to regard the mountain ranges and the great deserts of the earth as the astronomer does the counterpoises to his telescope—though they be mere dead weights, they are, nevertheless, necessary to make the balance complete, the adjustments of

his machine perfect. These counterpoises give ease to the motions, stability to the performance, and accuracy to the workings of the instrument. They are "*compensations*."

CHAPTER  
III.  
—

Whenever I turn to contemplate the works of nature, § 220 I am struck with the admirable system of compensation, with the beauty and nicety with which every department is poised by the others; things and principles are meted out in directions apparently the most opposite, but in proportions so exactly balanced and nicely adjusted that results the most harmonious are produced.

System of compensation.

It is by the action of opposite and compensating forces § 221 that the earth is kept in its orbit, and the stars are held suspended in the azure vault of heaven; and these forces are so exquisitely adjusted, that, at the end of a thousand years, the earth, the sun, and moon, and every star in the firmament, is found to come and stand in its proper place at the proper moment.

By it the earth is kept in its orbit.

Nay, philosophy teaches us that when the little snow-drop, which in our garden-walks we see raising its beautiful head at "the singing of birds," to remind us that "the winter is passed and gone," was created, the whole mass of the earth, from pole to pole, and from circumference to centre, must have been taken into account and weighed, in order that the proper degree of strength might be given to its tiny fibres.

§ 222  
What philosophy teaches by the snow-drop.

Botanists tell us that the constitution of this plant is § 223 such as to require that, at a certain stage of its growth, the stalk should bend, and the flower should bow its head, that an operation may take place which is necessary in order that the herb should produce seed after its kind;

CHAPTER  
III.  
Its consti-  
tution.

and that, after this fecundation, its vegetable health requires that it should lift its head again and stand erect. Now, if the mass of the earth had been greater or less, the force of gravity would have been different; in that case, the strength of fibre in the snow-drop, as it is, would have been too much or too little; the plant could not bow or raise its head at the right time, fecundation could not take place, and its family would have become extinct with the first individual that was planted, because its "seed" would not have been "in itself," and therefore it could not have reproduced itself, and its creation would have been a failure.

§ 224 Now, if we see such perfect adaptation, such exquisite adjustment, in the case of one of the smallest flowers of the field, how much more may we not expect "compensation" in the atmosphere and the ocean, upon the right adjustment and due performance of which depends not only the life of that plant, but the well-being of every individual that is found in the entire vegetable and animal kingdoms of the world?

§ 225 When the east winds blow along the Atlantic coast for a little while, they bring us air saturated with moisture from the Gulf Stream, and we complain of the sultry, oppressive, heavy atmosphere; the invalid grows worse, and the well man feels ill, because, when he takes this atmosphere into his lungs, it is already so charged with moisture that it cannot take up and carry off that which encumbers his lungs, and which nature has caused his blood to bring and leave there, that respiration may take up and carry off. At other times the air is dry and hot; he feels that it is conveying off matter from the lungs

Perfect  
adaptation

Effects of  
east wind.

too fast ; he realizes the idea that it is consuming him, and he calls the sensation burning.

Therefore, in considering the general laws which govern the physical agents of the universe, and regulate them in the due performance of their offices, I have felt myself constrained to set out with the assumption that, if the atmosphere had had a greater or less capacity for moisture, or if the proportion of land and water had been different—if the earth, air, and water had not been in exact counterpoise—the whole arrangement of the animal and vegetable kingdoms would have varied from their present state. But God, for reasons which man may never know, chose to make those kingdoms what they are ; for this purpose it was necessary, in his judgment, to establish the proportions between the land and water and the desert just as they are, and to make the capacity of the air to circulate heat and moisture just what it is, and to have it to do all its work in obedience to law and in subservience to order. If it were not so, why was power given to the winds to lift up and transport moisture, and to feed the plants with nourishment ? or why was the property given to the sea by which its waters may become first vapour, and then fruitful showers or gentle dews ? If the proportions and properties of land, sea, and air were not adjusted according to the reciprocal capacities of all to perform the functions required by each, why should we be told that HE “ measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and comprehended the dust in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance ? ” Why did he span the heavens, but that he might mete out the atmosphere in exact propor-

CHAPTER  
III.

§ 226

Assump-  
tion.

CHAPTER III.  
 — tion to all the rest, and impart to it those properties and powers which it was necessary for it to have, in order that it might perform all those offices and duties for which he designed it?

§ 227 Harmonious in their action, the air and sea are obedient to law and subject to order in all their movements; when we consult them in the performance of their manifold and marvellous offices, they teach us lessons concerning the wonders of the deep, the mysteries of the sky, the greatness, and the wisdom, and goodness of the Creator, which make us wiser and better men. The investigations into the broad-spreading circle of phenomena connected with the winds of heaven and the waves of the sea are second to none for the good which they do and the lessons which they teach. The astronomer is said to see the hand of God in the sky; but does not the right-minded mariner, who looks aloft as he ponders over these things, hear his voice in every wave of the sea that “claps its hands,” and feel his presence in every breeze that blows?

Lessons  
 taught by  
 sea and  
 air.

## CHAPTER IV.

## LAND AND SEA BREEZES.

Lieutenant Jansen, § 228.—His Contributions, 229.—The Sea-breeze, 230.—An Illustration, 231.—The Land-breeze, 232.—Jansen's Account of the Land and Sea Breeze in the East Indies, 234.—A Morning Scene, 235.—The Calm, 237.—The Inhabitants of the Sea going to Work, 239.—Noon, 240.—The Sea-breeze dies, 245.—The Land-breeze, 247.—A Discussion, 248.—Why Land and Sea Breezes are not of equal Freshness on the Sea-shore of all Countries, 252.—The Sea-breeze at Valparaiso, 255.—The Night, 258.—A Contrast, 263.

I HAVE been assisted in my investigations into these phenomena of the sea by many thinking minds; among those whose debtor I am, stands first and foremost the clear head and warm heart of a foreign officer, Lieutenant Marin Jansen, of the Dutch navy, whom I am proud to call my friend. He is an ornament to his profession; and a more accomplished officer it has never been my good fortune to meet in any service. He has entered this magnificent field of research *con amore*, and has proved to be a most zealous and efficient fellow-labourer. Promotion in the Dutch navy unfortunately goes by seniority; if it went by merit, I should I am sure, have the pleasure of writing of him as admiral.

Jansen has served many years in the East Indies. He observed minutely and well. He has enriched my humble contributions to the "Physical Geography of the Sea" with contributions from the storehouse of his knowledge, set off and presented in many fine pictures, and has appended them to a translation of the first edition of this work into the Dutch language. He has added a chapter on the land and sea breezes; another on the

CHAPTER  
IV.  
§ 228

Lieutenant  
Jansen

§ 229  
His contributions.



CHAPTER  
IV.

changing of the monsoons in the East Indian Archipelago: he has also extended his remarks to the north-west monsoon, to hurricanes, the south-east trades of the South Atlantic, and to winds and currents generally.

§ 230 *The sea-breeze.* In many parts of the world the oppressive heat of summer is modified, and the climate of the sea-shore is made refreshing and healthful, by the alternation of winds which come from the sea by day and from the land by night. About ten in the morning the heat of the sun has played upon the land with sufficient intensity to raise its temperature above that of the water. A portion of this heat, being imparted to the superincumbent air, causes it to rise, when the air, first from the beach, then from the sea, to the distance of several miles, begins to flow in with a most delightful and invigorating freshness.

§ 231 *Illustration.* When a fire is kindled on the hearth, we may, if we will observe the motes floating in the room, see that those nearest to the chimney are the first to feel the draught and to obey it—they are drawn into the blaze. The circle of inflowing air is gradually enlarged, until it is scarcely perceived in the remote parts of the room. Now the land is the hearth, the rays of the sun the fire, and the sea, with its cool and calm air, the room; and thus we have at our firesides the sea-breeze in miniature.

§ 232 *Land-breeze.* When the sun goes down the fire ceases; then the dry land commences to give off its surplus heat by radiation, so that by nine or ten o'clock it and the air above it are cooled below the sea temperature. The atmosphere on the land thus becomes heavier than that on the sea, and, consequently, there is a wind seaward which we call the land-breeze.

Jansen thus describes this phenomenon in the East Indies, where one must live fully to appreciate its benign influences. CHAPTER  
IV.  
§ 233

JANSEN'S ACCOUNT.\*—"A long residence in the East Indian Archipelago, and, consequently, in that part of the world where the investigations of the Observatory at Washington have not extended, has given me the opportunity of studying the phenomena which there occur in the atmosphere, and to these phenomena my attention was, in the first place, directed. I was involuntarily led from one research to another, and it is the result of these investigations to which I would modestly give a place at the conclusion of Maury's 'Physical Geography of the Sea,' with the hope that these first-fruits of the log-books of the Netherlands may be speedily followed by more and better. § 234  
Jansen's  
observa-  
tions

"Upon the northern coast of Java, the phenomenon of daily land and sea breezes is finely developed. There, as the gorgeous 'eye of day' rises almost perpendicularly from the sea with fiery ardour, in a cloudless sky, it is greeted by the volcanoes with a column of white smoke, which, ascending from the conical summits high in the firmament above, forms a crown, or assumes the shape of an immense bouquet,† that they seem to offer to the dawn; then the joyful land-breeze plays over the flood, which, in the torrid zone, furnishes, with its fresh breath, so much enjoyment to the inhabitants of that sultry belt § 235  
Land  
and sea  
breezes on  
the north-  
ern coast  
of Java.  
  
Land-  
breeze.

\* Jansen's Appendix to the "Physical Geography of the Sea," translated from the Dutch by Mrs. Dr. Breed, Washington.

† Upon the coast of Java I saw daily, during the east monsoon, such a column of smoke ascending at sunrise from Bromo, Lamongan, and Smiro. Probably there is then no wind above.—JANSEN.

CHAPTER

IV.

It effects.

of earth, for, by means of it, everything is refreshed and beautified. Then, under the influence of the glorious accompaniments of the break of day, the silence of the night is awakened, and we hear commencing everywhere the morning hymn of mute nature, whose gesticulation is so expressive and sublime. All that lives feels the necessity of pouring forth, each in its way, and in various tones and accents, from the depths of inspiration, a song of praise.

§ 236 “The air, still filled with the freshness of the evening dew, bears aloft the enraptured song, as, mingled with the jubilee tones which the contemplation of nature everywhere forces from the soul, it gushes forth in deep earnestness to convey the daily thank-offering over the sea, over hill and dale.\*

§ 237 “As the sun ascends the sky, the azure vault is bathed in dazzling light; now the land-breeze, wearied with play, goes to rest. Here and there it still plays over the water, as if it could not sleep; but finally becoming exhausted, it sinks to repose in the stillness of the calm. But not so with the atmosphere: it sparkles, and glitters, and twinkles, becoming clear under the increasing heat, while the gentle swelling of the now polished waves, reflects, like a thousand mirrors, the rays of light which dance and leap to the tremulous but vertical movements of the atmosphere.

§ 238 “Like pleasant visions of the night, that pass before the mind in sleep, so do sweet phantoms hover about the land-breeze as it slumbers upon the sea. The shore seems

---

\* In the very fine mist of the morning, a noise—for example, the firing of cannon—at a short distance is scarcely heard, while at mid-day, with the sea-breeze, it penetrates for miles with great distinctness.—JANSEN.

to approach and to display all its charms to the mariner in the offing. All objects become distinct and more clearly delineated,\* while, upon the sea, small fishing-boats loom up like large vessels. The seaman, drifting along the coast, and misled by the increasing clearness and mirage, believes that he has been driven by a current toward the land; he casts the lead, and looks anxiously out for the sea-breeze, in order to escape from what he believes to be threatening danger.† The planks burn under his feet; in vain he spreads the awning to shelter himself from the broiling sun. Its rays are oppressive; repose does not refresh; motion is not agreeable.

CHAPTER  
IV.  
—  
Description.

“The inhabitants of the deep, awakened by the clear § 239 light of day, prepare themselves for labour. Corals, and thousands of crustacea, await, perhaps impatiently, the coming of the sea-breeze, which shall cause evaporation to take place more rapidly, and thus provide them with a bountiful store of building material for their picturesque and artfully constructed dwellings: these they know how to paint and to polish in the depths of the sea more beautifully than can be accomplished by any human art. Like them, also, the plants of the sea are dependent upon the winds, upon the clouds, and upon the sunshine; for upon these depend the vapour and the rains which feed the streams that bring nourishment for them into the sea.‡

\* The transparency of the atmosphere is so great that we can sometimes discover Venus in the sky in the middle of the day.—JANSEN.

† Especially in the rainy season the land looms very greatly; then we see mountains which are from 5000 to 6000 feet high at a distance of 80 or 100 English miles.

‡ The archipelago of coral islands on the north side of the Straits of Sunda is remarkable. Before the salt water flowed from the Straits, it was deprived of the solid matter of which the *Thousand Islands* are constructed. A similar group of islands is found between the Straits of Macassar and Balie.—JANSEN.

CHAPTER

IV.

§ 240

Description continued.

“When the sun reaches the zenith, and his stern eye, with burning glare, is turned more and more upon the Java Sea, the air seems to fall into a magnetic sleep; yet, even as the magnetizer exercises his will upon his subject, and the latter, with uncertain and changeable gestures, gradually puts himself in motion, and, sleeping, obeys that will, so also we see the slow efforts of the sea-breeze to repress the vertical movements of the air, and to obey the will which calls it to the land. This vertical movement appears to be not easily overcome by the horizontal, which we call wind. Yonder, far out upon the sea, arises and disappears alternately a darker tint upon the otherwise shining sea-carpet; finally, that tint remains and approaches; that is the long-wished-for sea-breeze; and yet it is sometimes one, yes, even two hours, before that darker tint is permanent, before the sea-breeze has regularly set in.

§ 241 “Now small white clouds begin to rise above the horizon; to the experienced seaman they are a prelude to a fresh sea-breeze. We welcome the first breath from the sea; it is cooling, but it soon ceases; presently it is succeeded by other grateful puffs of air, which continue longer; presently they settle down into the regular sea-breeze, with its cooling and refreshing breath.

§ 242 “The sun declines, and the sea-wind—that is, the common trade-wind or monsoon which is drawn toward the land—is awakened. It blows right earnestly, as if it would perform its daily task with the greatest possible ado.

§ 243 “The air, itself refreshed upon the deep, becomes gray from the vapour which envelopes the promontories in

mist, and curtains the inland with dark clouds. The land, relieved by the darker tint which it gives to the mist, looms up beautifully; the distance cannot be estimated. The sailor thinks himself farther from shore than he really is, and steers on his course carelessly, while the capricious wind lashes the waters, and makes a short and broken sea, from the white caps of which light curls are torn, with sportive hand, to float away like party-coloured streamers in the sunbeam. In the meanwhile clouds appear now and then high in air, yet it is too misty to see far.

CHAPTER  
IV.  
Description  
continued.

“The sun approaches the horizon. Far over the land § 244 the clouds continue to heap up; already the thunder is heard among the distant hills; the thunder-bolts reverberate from hill-side to hill-side, while through the mist the sheets of lightning are seen.\*

“Finally, the ‘king of day’ sinks to rest; now the § 245 mist gradually disappears, and as soon as the wind has laid down the lash, the sea, which, chafing and fretting, had with curled mane resisted its violence, begins to go down also. Presently both winds and waves are hushed, and all is again still. Above the sea, the air is clearer or slightly clouded; above the land, it is thick, dark, and swollen. To the feelings, this stillness is pleasant. The sea-breeze, the driving brine that has made a salt-pan of the face, the short, restless sea, the dampness—all have grown wearisome, and welcome is the calm. There is, however, a somewhat of dimness in the air, an uncertain but threatening appearance. Presently, from the

\* At Buitenzorg, near Batavia, 40 English miles from the shore, 500 feet above the sea, with high hills around, these thunder-storms occur between 4 P. M. and 8 P. M.



dark mass of clouds, which hastens the change of day into night, the thunder-storm peals forth. The rain falls in torrents in the mountains, and the clouds gradually overspread the whole sky. But for the wind, which again springs up, it would be alarming to the sailor, who is helpless in a calm. What change will take place in the air? The experienced seaman, who has to work against the trade-wind or against the monsoon, is off the coast, in order to take advantage of the land-breeze (the destroyer of the trade) so soon as it shall come. He rejoices when the air is released from the land, and the breeze comes, at first feebly, but afterward growing stronger, as usual, during the whole night. If the land-breeze meets with a squall, then it is brief, and becomes feeble and uncertain. We sometimes find then the permanent sea-breeze close to the coast, which otherwise remains twenty or more English miles from it.

§ 246 “One is not always certain to get the land-breeze at the fixed time. It sometimes suffers itself to be waited for; sometimes it tarries the whole night long.

§ 247 “During the greatest part of the rainy season, the land-breeze in the Java Sea cannot be depended upon. This is readily explained according to the theory which ascribes the origin of the sea and land breezes to the heating of the soil by day, and the cooling by means of radiation by night; for, during the rainy season, the clouds extend over land and sea, interrupting the sun's rays by day, and the radiation of heat by night, thus preventing the variations of temperature; and from these variations, according to this theory, the land and sea breezes arise. Yet there are other tropical regions where

Land-  
breeze in  
Java not  
to be de-  
pendent on.



the land and sea breezes, even in the rainy season, regularly succeed each other. CHAPTER  
IV.

“The warming and the radiation alone are therefore not sufficient to explain all the phenomena of land and sea breezes, and other causes—electricity, rain, &c., appear to have an influence upon the regularity of the land winds.\* § 248

“Upon the coast of Africa, the land-breeze is universally scorching hot, but the sea-breeze is cool and refreshing. When this is the case, the land-breeze certainly cannot be occasioned by the cooling of the earth by radiation. When we shall have brought together all the observations upon the various phenomena which the land and sea breezes afford, then we shall be able to begin to found upon facts a theory which shall explain the varied phenomena. Thus, among other things, upon the west coast of Africa, from  $0^{\circ} 27' S.$  to  $15^{\circ} 24' S.$ , according to Thomas Miller,† from June to October, and, above all, in July, there are heavy dews, and when the dews are very heavy, then the land and sea breezes are invariably feeble—sometimes very faint.” § 249  
Land-  
breeze on  
the coast  
of Africa.  
  
Observa-  
tions by  
Thomas  
Miller.

[Lieutenant Jansen's remarks are both instructive and suggestive. It is true that a given difference of tem- § 250

---

\* My observations lead me to suspect that the position of the moon is also herein concerned. In the eastern outlet of Sourabaya, during the east monsoon, there is at full moon little land-breeze, and at new moon little sea-breeze. I afterward made the same observation in the Gulf of Darien. *Feb. 4, 1852.*—At the Road of Carthagen (New Grenada), full moon, sea-breeze north, under reefed top-sail, fresh gale; at 11 P. M., feeble and easterly. *Feb. 5.*—11 A. M., sea-breeze grows faint. 1 P. M., stronger, and between 5 and 6 P. M. fresh gale; double-reefed top-sail. Each day somewhat later and less hard. Thermometer varying between  $79^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ}$ . Barometer varying between  $763^{\circ}$  and  $759^{\circ}$ . Upon leaving Chagres, with new moon, it was by day mostly feeble.—JANSEN.

† Nautical Magazine for June 1855.—JANSEN.

CHAPTER  
IV.

perature between land and water, though it may be sufficient to produce the phenomena of land and sea breezes at one place, will not be adequate to the same effect at another; and the reason is perfectly philosophical.

§ 251  
Philosophical reason why causes of land and sea-breezes at one place will not produce them at another.

It is easier to obstruct and turn back the current in a sluggish than in a rapid stream. So, also, in turning a current of air first upon the land, then upon the sea—very slight alterations of temperature would suffice for this on the coast of Africa, in and about the equatorial calms, for instance; there the air is in a state of rest, and will obey the slightest call in any direction—not so in regions where the trades blow over the land, and are strong. It requires, under such circumstances, a considerable degree of rarefaction to check them, and produce a calm, and a still farther rarefaction to turn them back, and convert them into a regular sea-breeze.

§ 252  
Scorching land-breeze on west coast of Africa.

Hence the scorching land-breeze on the west coast of Africa: the heat there may not have been intense enough to produce the degree of rarefaction required to check and turn back the south-east trades. In that part of the world, their natural course is from the land to the sea, and therefore, if this view be correct, the sea-breeze should be more feeble than the land-breeze, neither should it last so long.

§ 253  
Sea-breeze prevails on the coast of Brazil.

But on the opposite side—on the coast of Brazil, as at Pernambuco, for instance—where the trade-wind comes from the sea, we should have this condition of things reversed, and the sea-breeze will prevail for most of the time—then it is the land-breeze which is feeble and of short duration: it is rarely felt.

§ 254 Again, the land and sea breezes in Cuba, and along

the Gulf shores of the United States, will be more regular in their alternations than they are along the shores of Brazil or South Africa, and for the simple reason that the shore-wind named in North American waters lies nearly parallel with the course of the winds in their prevailing direction. In Rio de Janeiro, the sea-breeze is the regular trade-wind, made fresher by the daily action of the sun on the land. It is worthy of remark, also, that, for the reason stated by Jansen, the land and sea breezes in the winter time are almost unknown in countries of severe cold, though, in the summer, the alternation of wind from land to sea, and sea to land, may be well marked.

In Valparaiso, the phenomenon of the sea-breeze is finely developed. Valparaiso is situated near the southern border of the calm belt of Capricorn, when it is at its farthest southern reach, which happens in our late winter and early spring—the Southern summer and autumn. This is the dry season, when the sky is singularly clear and bright. The atmosphere, being nearly in a state of equilibrium, is then ready to obey even the most feeble impulse, and to hasten toward the place of any, the slightest rarefaction.

At about ten in the morning, at this season of the year, the land begins to feel the sun, and there is a movement in the air. By 3 or 4 P.M., the sea-breeze comes rushing in from the southward and westward, and strikes the shipping in the harbour with the force of a gale. Vessels sometimes drag before it, and communication with the shore is suspended. By 6 P.M., however, the wind has spent its fury, and there is a perfect calm.]

CHAPTER  
IV.  
—  
Cuba.

Rio de  
Janeiro.

§ 255  
Phenomenon of sea-breeze finely developed in Valparaiso

§ 256  
Begins at  
3 or 4 p.m.

CHAPTER  
IV.

§ 257

Quotation  
from  
Jansen.

“Happy he,” continues Jansen, “who, in the Java Sea at evening, seeking the land-breeze off the coast, finds it there, after the salt-bearing, roaring sea-wind, and can, in the magnificent nights of the tropics, breathe the refreshing land-breeze, oftentimes laden with delicious odours.\*

§ 258

Description  
by  
Jansen  
of land  
and sea  
breezes in  
the Java  
Sea.

“The veil of clouds, either after a squall, with or without rain, or after the coming of the land-breeze, is speedily withdrawn, and leaves the sky clearer during the night, only now and then flecked with dark clouds floating over from the land. Without these floating clouds the land-breeze is feeble. When the clouds float away from the sea, the land-breeze does not go far out from the coast, or is wholly replaced by the sea-breeze, or, rather, by the trade-wind. If the land-breeze continues, then the stars loom forth, as if to free themselves from the dark vault of the heavens, but their light does not wholly vanquish its deep blue, though the dark flecking of clouds comes out more distinctly near the Southern Cross, which smiles consolingly upon us, while Scorpio, the emblem of the tropical climate, stands like a warning in the heavens. The starlight, which is reflected by the mirrored waters, causes the nights to vie in clearness with the early twilight in high latitudes. Numerous shooting stars weary the eye, although they break the monotony of the sparkling firmament. Their unceasing motion in the unfathomable ocean affords a great contrast to the seeming quiet of the gently-flowing aerial current of the land-breeze. But at times, when, 30° or 40° above the horizon, a fire-ball arises, which suddenly illumines

\* In the roads of Batavia, however, they are not very agreeable. — JANSEN.

the whole horizon, appearing to the eye the size of the fist, and fading away as suddenly as it appeared, falling into fiery nodules, then we perceive that, in the apparent calm of nature, various forces are constantly active, in order to cause, even in the invisible air, such combinations and combustions, the appearance of which amazes the crews of ships.

“When the slender keel glides quickly over the mirrored waters upon the wings of the wind, it cuts for itself a sparkling way, and disturbs in their sleep the monsters of the deep, which whirl and dart quicker than an eight-knot ship; sweeping and turning around their disturber, they suddenly clothe the dark surface of the water in brilliancy. Again, when we go beyond the limits of the land-breeze, and come into the continuous trade-wind, we occasionally see from the low-moving, round black clouds (unless it thunders), light blue sparks collected upon the extreme points of the iron belaying-pins, &c. ;\* then the crew appear to fear a new danger, against which courage is unavailing, and which the mind can find no power to endure. The fervent, fiery nature inspires the traveller with deep awe. They who, under the beating of the storm and terrible violence of the ocean, look danger courageously in the face, feel, in the presence of these phenoma, insignificant, feeble, anxious. Then they perceive the mighty power of the Creator over the works of his creation.

§ 259

Phosphoric light.

Electricity

“And how can the uncertain, the undetermined sensations arise which are produced by the clear yet sad light

§ 260

\* I have seen this in a remarkable degree upon the south coast of Java; these sparks were then seen six feet above the deck, upon the frames of timber, (*kousen der blokken*), in the implements, &c.—JANSEN.

CHAPTER  
— IV.

of the moon?—she who has always great tears in her eyes, while the stars look sweetly at her, as if they loved to trust her and to share her affliction?\*

§ 261 “In the latter part of the night, the land-breeze sinks

Fickleness  
of land-  
breeze.

to sleep, for it seldom continues to blow with strength, but is always fickle and capricious. With the break of day it again awakes, to sport a while, and then gradually dies away as the sun rises. The time at which it becomes calm after the land and sea breezes is indefinite, and the calms are of unequal duration.

§ 262 “Generally, those which precede the sea-breeze are

Calms that  
precede  
land  
and sea  
breezes.

rather longer than those which precede the land-breeze. The temperature of the land, the direction of the coast-line with respect to the prevailing direction of the trade-wind in which the land is situated, the clearness of the atmosphere, the position of the sun, perhaps also that of the moon, the surface over which the sea-breeze blows, possibly also the degree of moisture and the electrical state of the air, the heights of the mountains, their extent, and their distance from the coast, all have influence thereon. Local observations in regard to these can afford much light, as well as determine the distance at which the land-breeze blows from the coast, and beyond which the regular trade-wind or monsoon continues uninterruptedly to blow. The direction of land and sea winds must also be determined by local observations, for the idea is incorrect that they should always blow perpendicular to the coast-line.

Limits.

---

\* Some one has ventured the remark, that at full moon, near the equator, more and darker dew falls than at new moon, and to this are ascribed the moonheads (*maan hoofden*), which I have seen, however, but once during all the years which I have spent between the tropics. —JANSEN.



“Scarcely has one left the Java Sea,—which is, as it were, an inland sea between Sumatra, Borneo, Java, and the archipelago of small islands between both of the last-named,—than, in the blue waters of the easterly part of the East Indian archipelago, nature assumes a bolder aspect, more in harmony with the great depth of the ocean. The beauty of the Java Sea, and the delightful phenomena which air and ocean display, have here ceased. The scene becomes more earnest. The coasts of the eastern islands rise boldly out of the water, far in whose depths they have planted their feet. The south-east wind, which blows upon the southern coasts of the chain of islands, is sometimes violent, always strong through the straits which separate them from each other, and this appears to be more and more the case as we go eastward. Here, also, upon the northern coast, we find land-breezes, yet the trade-wind often blows so violently that they have not sufficient power to force it beyond the coast.

CHAPTER  
IV.  
§ 263  
Easterly  
part of  
East  
Indian  
archipel-  
ago.

“Owing to the obstruction which the chain of islands presents to the south-east trade-wind, it happens that it blows with violence away over the mountains, apparently as the land breeze does upon the north coast;\* yet this wind, which only rises when it blows hard from the south-east upon the south coast, is easily distinguished from the gentle land-breeze.

§ 264  
Effects of  
the ob-  
struction  
of islands

“The regularity of the land and sea breezes in the Java Sea and upon the coasts of the northern range of islands, Banca, Borneo, Cèlebes, &c., during the east monsoon, must in part be ascribed to the hindrances which the

§ 265  
Cause of  
regularity  
of land  
and sea  
breezes in  
Java Sea.

\* Such is the case, among others, in the Strait Madura, upon the heights of Bezockie.



CHAPTER  
IV.  
—

south-east trade-wind meets in the islands which lie directly in its way; in part to the inclination toward the east monsoon which the trade-wind undergoes after it has come within the archipelago; and, finally, to its abatement as it approaches the equator. The causes which produce the land-breezes thus appear collectively not sufficiently powerful to be able to turn back a strong trade-wind in the ocean."

## CHAPTER V.

## RED FOGS AND SEA DUST.

Where found, § 266.—Tallies on the Wind, 272.—Where taken up, 278.—Humboldt's Description, 282.—Questions to be answered, 284.—What Effects the Deserts have upon the General Circulation of the Air, 286.—Information derived from Sea Dust, 288.—Limits of Trade-winds, 289.—Breadth of Calm Belts, 290.

SEAMEN tell us of "red fogs" which they sometimes encounter, especially in the vicinity of the Cape de Verd Islands. In other parts of the sea, also, they meet showers of dust. What these showers precipitate in the Mediterranean is called "sirocco dust," and in other parts "African dust," because the winds which accompany them are supposed to come from the Sirocco desert, or some other parched land of the continent of Africa. It is of a brick-red or cinnamon colour, and it sometimes comes down in such quantities as to cover the sails and rigging, though the vessel may be hundreds of miles from the land.

Now, the patient reader who has had the heart to follow me, in the preceding chapter, around with "the wind in his circuits," will perceive that proof is yet wanting to establish it as a fact, that the north-east and south-east trades, after meeting and rising up in the equatorial calms, do cross over and take the paths represented by C and G, Plate I.

Statements and reasons and arguments enough have already been made and adduced to make it highly probable, according to human reasoning, that such is the

CHAPTER  
V.  
§ 266  
Red fogs  
and sea-  
dust.

§ 267  
Proof  
wanted  
that the  
trade-  
winds  
cross over  
and take  
the paths  
shown in  
Plate I.

§ 268

CHAPTER case ; and though the theoretical deductions, showing such  
 V. — to be the case, be never so plausible, positive proof that they are true cannot fail to be received with delight and satisfaction.

§ 269 Were it possible to take a portion of this air, repre-  
 Difficulty of finding such proof. senting, as it travels along with the south-east trades, the general course of atmospherical circulation, and to put a tally on it by which we could follow it in its circuits and always recognise it, then we might hope actually to prove, by evidence the most positive, the channels through which the air of the trade-winds, after ascending at the equator, returns whence it came.

§ 270 But the air is invisible ; and it is not easily perceived how either marks or tallies may be put upon it, that it may be traced in its paths through the clouds. The sceptic, therefore, who finds it hard to believe that the general circulation is such as Plate I. represents it to be, might consider himself safe in his unbelief were he to declare his willingness to give it up the moment any one should put tallies on the wings of the wind, which would enable him to recognise that air again, and those tallies, when found at other parts of the earth's surface.

§ 271 As difficult as this seems to be, it has actually been done. Ehren-  
 Ehren- berg's dis- berg's dis-covery.covery. almost beyond a doubt, that the air which the south-east trade-winds bring to the equator does rise up there and pass over into the northern hemisphere.

§ 272 The Sirocco, or African dust, which he has been ob-  
 Tallies put on the wind. serving so closely, has turned out to be tallies put upon the wind in the other hemisphere ; and this beautiful instrument of his enables us to detect the marks on these

little tallies as plainly as though those marks had been written upon labels of wood and tied to the wings of the wind.

CHAPTER  
V.  
—

This dust, when subjected to microscopic examination, is found to consist of infusoria and organisms whose *habitat* is not Africa, but South America, and in the south-east trade-wind region of South America. Professor Ehrenberg has examined specimens of sea dust from the Cape de Verds and the regions thereabout, from Malta, Genoa, Lyons, and the Tyrol; and he has found a similarity among them as striking as it would have been had these specimens been all taken from the same pile. South American forms he recognises in all of them; indeed they are the prevailing forms in every specimen he has examined.

§ 273

Microscopic examination of dust.

Results.

It may, I think, be now regarded as an established fact, that there is a perpetual upper current of air from South America to North Africa; and that the volume of air which flows to the northward in these upper currents is nearly equal to the volume which flows to the southward with the north-east trade-winds, there can be no doubt.

§ 274

Upper current of air from South to North America.

The "rain dust" has been observed most frequently to fall in spring and autumn; that is, the fall has occurred after the equinoxes, but at intervals from them varying from thirty to sixty days, more or less. To account for this sort of periodical occurrence of the falls of this dust, Ehrenberg thinks it "necessary to suppose a *dust-cloud* to be held constantly swimming in the atmosphere by continuous currents of air, and lying in the region of the trade-winds, but suffering partial and periodical deviations."

§ 275

Rain dust most frequently falls in spring and autumn.

Ehrenberg's supposition.

CHAPTER

V.

§ 276

It has already been shown,<sup>1</sup> that the rain or calm belt between the trades travels up and down the earth from north to south, making the rainy season wherever it goes. The reason of this will be explained in another place.

§ 277

This dust probably taken up in the dry, and not in the wet season.

This dust is probably taken up in the dry and not in the wet season. Instead, therefore, of its being "held in clouds suffering partial and periodical deviations," as Ehrenberg suggests, it more probably comes from one place about the vernal, and from another about the autumnal equinox; for places which have their rainy season at one equinox have their dry season at the other.

§ 278

Valley of the Lower Orinoco during vernal equinox parched with drought.

At the time of the vernal equinox, the valley of the Lower Orinoco is then in its dry season; everything is parched up with the drought; the pools are dry, and the marshes and plains become arid wastes. All vegetation has ceased; the great serpents and reptiles have buried themselves for hibernation;\* the hum of insect life is hushed, and the stillness of death reigns through the valley.

Under these circumstances, the light breeze, raising dust from lakes that are dried up, and lifting motes from the brown savannas, will bear them away like clouds in the air.

§ 279

It is also swept over by whirlwinds.

This is the period of the year when the surface of the earth in this region, strewed with impalpable and feather-light remains of animal and vegetable organisms, is swept over by whirlwinds, gales, and tornadoes of terrific force. This is the period for the general atmospheric disturbances which have made characteristic the equinoxes. Do not these conditions appear sufficient to afford the "rain dust" for the spring showers?

\* Humboldt.

<sup>1</sup> § 135.

At the period of the autumnal equinox, another portion of the Amazonian basin is parched with drought, and liable to winds that fill the air with dust, and with the remains of dead animal and vegetable matter; these impalpable organisms, which each rainy season calls into being, to perish the succeeding season of drought, are perhaps distended and made even lighter by the gases of decomposition which has been going on in the period of drought.

CHAPTER  
V.§ 280  
During the autumnal equinox another part of the Amazonian basin is parched

May not, therefore, the whirlwinds which accompany the vernal equinox, and sweep over the lifeless plains of the Lower Orinoco, take up the "rain dust" which descends in the northern hemisphere in April and May? and may it not be the atmospherical disturbances which accompany the autumnal equinox that take up the microscopic organisms from the Upper Orinoco and the great Amazonian basin for the showers of October?

§ 281

May not these whirlwinds take up the rain dust.

The Baron von Humboldt, in his *Aspects of Nature*, thus contrasts the wet and the dry seasons there:

§ 282

"When, under the vertical rays of the never-clouded sun, the carbonized turf covering falls into dust, the indurated soil cracks asunder as if from the shock of an earthquake. If at such times two opposing currents of air, whose conflict produces a rotary motion, come in contact with the soil, the plain assumes a strange and singular aspect. Like conical-shaped clouds, the points of which descend to the earth, the sand rises through the rarefied air on the electrically-charged centre of the whirling current, resembling the loud water-spout, dreaded by the experienced mariner. The lowering sky sheds a dim, almost straw-coloured light on the desolate plain.

Contrast of the wet and dry season by Von Humboldt.

CHAPTER

V.

The horizon draws suddenly nearer, the steppe seems to contract, and with it the heart of the wanderer. The hot, dusty particles which fill the air increase its suffocating heat, and the east wind, blowing over the long-heated soil, brings with it no refreshment, but rather a still more burning glow. The pools which the yellow, fading branches of the fan-palm had protected from evaporation, now gradually disappear. As in the icy north the animals become torpid with cold, so here, under the influence of the parching drought, the crocodile and the boa become motionless and fall asleep, deeply buried in the dry mud. . . .

Contrast  
continued.

“The distant palm-bush, apparently raised by the influence of the contact of unequally heated and therefore unequally dense strata of air, hovers above the ground, from which it is separated by a narrow intervening margin. Half-concealed by the dense clouds of dust, restless with the pain of thirst and hunger, the horses and cattle roam around, the cattle lowing dismally, and the horses stretching out their long necks and snuffing the wind, if haply a moister current may betray the neighbourhood of a not wholly dried-up pool. . . .

“At length, after the long drought, the welcome season of the rain arrives; and then how suddenly is the scene changed! . . .

“Hardly has the surface of the earth received the refreshing moisture, when the previously barren steppe begins to exhale sweet odours, and to clothe itself with killingias, the many panicles of the *paspulum*, and a variety of grasses. The herbaceous mimosas, with renewed sensibility to the influence of light, unfold their



drooping, slumbering leaves to greet the rising sun ; and the early song of birds and the opening blossoms of the water-plants join to salute the morning.”

CHAPTER  
V.  
—

The arid plains and deserts, as well as high mountain ranges, have, it may well be supposed, an influence upon the movements of the great aerial ocean, as shoals and other obstructions have upon the channels of circulation in the sea. The deserts of Asia, for instance, produce<sup>1</sup> a disturbance upon the grand system of atmospheric circulation, which, in summer and autumn, is felt in Europe, in Liberia, and away out upon the Indian Ocean, as far to the south as the equinoctial line. There is an indraught from all these regions toward these deserts. These indraughts are known as monsoons at sea ; on the land, as the prevailing winds of the season.

Effects of  
the deserts  
on atmo-  
spherical  
circulation

§ 283

Imagine the area within which this indraught is felt, and let us ask a question or two, hoping for answers. The air which the indraught brings into the desert places, and which, being heated, rises up there, whither does it go? It rises up in a column a few miles high and many in circumference, we know, and we can imagine that it is like a shaft many times thicker than it is tall, but how is it crowned? Is it crowned like the stem of a mushroom, with an efflorescence or ebullition of heated air flaring over and spreading out in all directions, and then gradually thinning out as an upper current, extending even unto the verge of the area whence the indraught is drawn? If so, does it then descend and return to the desert plains as an indraught again? Then these desert places would constitute centres of circulation for the monsoon period ; and if they were such centres, whence would

§ 284

Questions  
to be  
answered

<sup>1</sup> § 203.

CHAPTER these winds get the vapour for their rains in Europe and  
 V. Asia?

§ 285 Or, instead of the mushroom shape, and the flare at the top in all directions from centre to circumference, does the uprising column, like one of those submarine fountains which are said to be in the Gulf Stream off the coast of Florida, bubble up and join in with the flow of the upper current? The right answers and explanations to these questions would add greatly to our knowledge concerning the general circulation of the atmosphere. It may be in the power of the microscope to give light here. Let us hope.

§ 286 The colour of the "rain dust," when collected in parcels and sent to Ehrenberg, is "brick-red," or "yellow ochre;" when seen by Humboldt in the air, it was less deeply shaded, and is described *by him* as imparting a "straw colour" to the atmosphere. In the search of spider lines for the diaphragm of my telescopes, I procured the finest and best threads from a cocoon of a mud-red colour; but the threads of this cocoon, as seen singly in the diaphragm, were of a golden colour; there would seem, therefore, no difficulty in reconciling the difference between the colours of the rain dust when viewed in little piles by the microscopist, and when seen attenuated and floating in the wind by the great traveller.

§ 287 It appears, therefore, that we here have placed in our hands a clew, which, attenuated and gossamer-like though it at first appears, is nevertheless palpable and strong enough to guide us along through the "circuits of the wind" even unto "the chambers of the south."

§ 288 The frequency of the fall of "rain dust" between the

parallels of 17° and 25° north, and in the vicinity of the Cape Verd Islands, is remarked upon with emphasis by the microscopist. It is worthy of remark, because, in connection with the investigations at the Observatory, it is significant.

CHAPTER  
V.  
Frequency  
of fall of  
rain dust  
near the  
Cape Verd  
Islands.

The latitudinal limits of the northern edge of the north-east trade-winds are variable. In the spring they are nearest to the equator, extending sometimes at this season not farther from the equator than the parallel of 15° north.

§ 289  
Latitudi-  
nal limits  
of trade-  
winds  
variable.

The breadth of the calms of Cancer is also variable; so also are their limits. The extreme vibration of this zone is between the parallels of 17° and 38° north, according to the season of the year.

§ 290  
Breadth of  
calms of  
Cancer  
variable.

According to the hypothesis<sup>1</sup> suggested by my researches, this is the zone in which the upper currents of atmosphere that ascended in the equatorial calms, and flowed off to the northward and eastward, are supposed to descend. This, therefore, is the zone in which the atmosphere that bears the "rain dust," or "African sand," descends to the surface; and this, therefore, is the zone, it might be supposed, which would be the most liable to showers of this "dust." This is the zone in which the Cape Verd Islands are situated; they are in the direction which theory gives to the upper current of air from the Oronoco and Amazon with its "rain dust," and they are in the region of the most frequent showers of "rain dust," all of which, though they do not absolutely prove, are nevertheless strikingly in conformity with, this theory as to the circulation of the atmosphere.

Confirma-  
tion of  
theory as  
to circula-  
tion of at-  
mosphere.

• It is true that, in the present state of our information, § 292

CHAPTER

V.

we cannot tell why this "rain dust" should not be gradually precipitated from this upper current, and descend into the stratum of trade-winds, as it passes from the equator to higher northern latitudes; neither can we tell why the vapour which the same winds carry along should not, in like manner, be precipitated on the way; nor why we should have a thunder-storm, a gale of wind, or the display of any other atmospherical phenomenon to-morrow, and not to-day: all that we can say is, that the conditions of to-day are not such as the phenomenon requires for its own development.

§ 293

Fall of  
rain dust  
always  
occurs in  
same at-  
mospheri-  
cal vein.

Therefore, though we cannot tell why the "sea-dust" should not fall always in the same place, we may nevertheless suppose that it is not always in the atmosphere, for the storms that take it up occur only occasionally, and that when up, and in passing the same parallels, it does not, any more than the vapour from a given part of the sea, always meet with the conditions—electrical and others—favourable to its descent, and that these conditions, as with the vapour, may occur now in this place, now in that. But that the fall does occur always in the same atmospherical vein or general direction, my investigations would suggest, and Ehrenberg's researches prove.

§ 294

General  
regularity  
of upper  
currents.

Judging by the fall of sea or rain dust, we may suppose that the currents in the upper regions of the atmosphere are remarkable for their general regularity, as well as for their general direction and sharpness of limits, so to speak.

§ 295

We may imagine that certain electrical conditions are necessary to a shower of "sea-dust," as well as to a thunder-storm; and that the interval between the time of the

equinoctial disturbances in the atmosphere and the occurrence of these showers, though it does not enable us to determine the true rate of motion in the general system of atmospherical circulation, yet assures us that it is not less on the average than a certain rate. CHAPTER  
V.  
—

I do not offer these remarks as an explanation with which we ought to rest satisfied, provided other proof can be obtained; I rather offer them in the true philosophical spirit of the distinguished microscopist himself, simply as affording, as far as they are entitled to be called an explanation, that explanation which is most in conformity with the facts before us, and which is suggested by the results of a novel and beautiful system of philosophical research. It is not, however, my province, or that of any other philosopher, to dictate belief. Any one may found hypotheses if he will state his facts and the reasoning by which he derives the conclusions which constitute the hypothesis. Having done this, he should patiently wait for time, farther research, and the judgment of his peers, to expand, confirm, or reject the doctrine which he may have conceived it his duty to proclaim. § 296  
Author's  
remarks.

Thus, though we have tallied the air, and put labels on the wind, to "tell whence, it cometh and whither it goeth," yet there evidently is an agent concerned in the circulation of the atmosphere whose functions are manifest, but whose presence has never yet been clearly recognized. § 297  
Another  
agent con-  
cerned in  
atmosphe-  
ric circula-  
tion.

When the air which the north-east trade-winds bring down meets in the equatorial calms that which the south-east trade-winds convey, and the two rise up together, what is it that makes them cross? Where is the power § 298

CHAPTER that guides that from the north over to the south, and  
—<sup>v.</sup> that from the south up to the north?

The conjectures in the next chapter as to “the relation between magnetism and the circulation of the atmosphere” may perhaps throw some light upon the answer to this question.

## CHAPTER VI.

ON THE PROBABLE RELATION BETWEEN MAGNETISM AND  
THE CIRCULATION OF THE ATMOSPHERE.

Faraday's Discoveries, § 299.—Is there a crossing of Air at the Calm Belts? 301.—Whence comes the Vapour for Rains in extra-tropical Regions? 305.—Significant Facts, 310.—Wet and dry Winds, 311.—Regions of Precipitation and Evaporation, 312.—What guides the Wind in his Circulations? 313.—Distribution of Rains and Winds not left to Chance, 315.—A Conjecture about Magnetism, 318.—Circumstantial Evidence, 323.—More Evaporating Surface in the Southern than in the Northern Hemisphere, 326.—Whence come the Vapours that feed the great Rivers with Rains? 329.—Rain and Thermal Maps, 330.—The Dry Season in California, the Wet in the Mississippi Valley, 332.—Importance of Meteorological Observations in British America, 333.—Importance of extending the System from the Sea to the Land, 334.—Climate of the Interior, 335.—The extra-tropical Regions of the Northern Hemisphere Condenser for the Trade-winds of the Southern, 336.—Plate VII., 339.—Countries most favourable for having Rains, 343.—How does the Air of the North-east and South-east Trades cross in the Equatorial Calms, 350.—Rain for the Mississippi Valley, 357.—Blood Rains, 372.—Track of the Passat-Staub on Plate VII., 374.—The Theory of Ampère, 378.—Calm Regions about the Poles, 380.—The Pole of maximum Cold, 381.

OXYGEN, philosophers say, comprises one-fifth part of the atmosphere, and Faraday has discovered that it is magnetic. CHAPTER VI.

This discovery presents itself to the mind as a great physical fact, which is perhaps to serve as the keystone for some of the grand and beautiful structures which philosophy is building up for monuments to the genius of the age.

Certain facts and deductions elicited in the course of § 300 these investigations had directed my mind to the workings in the atmosphere of some agent, as to whose character and nature I was ignorant. Heat, and the diurnal rotation of the earth on its axis, were not, it appeared to me, sufficient to account for all the currents of both sea and air which investigation was bringing to light.

VI.

§ 299  
Oxygen is  
magnetic.

Heat and diurnal rotation not sufficient to account for all the currents of sea and air



CHAPTER  
VI.

## § 301

Reason to  
suppose  
that the  
trade-  
winds  
cross at the  
calm belts.

For instance, there was reason to suppose that there is a crossing of winds at the three calm belts; that is, that the south-east trade-winds, when they arrive at the belt of equatorial calms and ascend, cross over and continue their course as an upper current to the calms of Cancer, while the air that the north-east trade-winds discharge into the equatorial calm belt continues to go south, as an upper current bound for the calms of Capricorn. But what should cause this wind to cross over? Why should there not be a general mingling in this calm belt of the air brought by the two trade-winds, and why should not that which the south-east winds convey there be left, after its ascent, to flow off either to the north or to the south, as chance directs?

§ 302 In the first place, it was at variance with my faith in the grand design; for I could not bring myself to believe that the operations of such an important machine as the atmosphere should be left to chance, even for a moment. Yet I knew of no agent which should guide the wind across these calm belts, and lead it out always on the side opposite to that on which it entered; nevertheless, certain circumstances seemed to indicate that such a crossing does take place.

§ 303 Evidence in favour of it seemed to be afforded by this circumstance, namely, our researches enabled us to trace from the belt of calms, near the tropic of Cancer, which extends entirely across the seas, an efflux of air both to the north and to the south; from the south side of this belt the air flows in a never-ceasing breeze, called the north-east trade-winds, toward the equator. (Plate I.)

Evidence  
in favour  
of this sup-  
position.

On the north side of it, the prevailing winds come

from it also, but they go toward the north-east. They are the well-known south-westerly winds which prevail along the route from this country to England, in the ratio of two to one. But why should we suppose a crossing to take place here?

CHAPTER  
VI.

We suppose so, because these last-named winds are going from a warmer to a colder climate, and therefore it may be inferred that nature exacts from them what we know she exacts from the air under similar circumstances, but on a smaller scale, before our eyes, namely, more precipitation than evaporation.

§ 304

But where, it may be asked, does the vapour which these winds carry along, for the replenishing of the whole extra-tropical regions of the north, come from? They did not get it as they came along in the upper regions, a counter-current to the north-east trades, unless they evaporated the trade-wind clouds, and so robbed those winds of their vapour. They certainly did not get it from the surface of the sea in the calm belt of Cancer, for they did not tarry long enough there to become saturated with moisture. Thus circumstances again pointed to the south-east trade-wind regions as the place of supply.

Whence comes the vapour for replenishing the extra-tropical regions

Moreover, these researches afforded grounds for the supposition that the air of which the north-east trade-winds are composed, and which comes out of the same zone of calms as do these south-westerly winds, so far from being saturated with vapour at its exodus, is dry; for near their polar edge, the north-east trade winds are, for the most part, dry winds. Reason suggests, and philosophy teaches, that, going from a lower to a higher temperature, the evaporating powers of these winds are

§ 306

North-east trade-winds for the most part dry.

CHAPTER VI. increased; that they have to travel, in their oblique course toward the equator, a distance of nearly three thousand miles; that, as a general rule, they evaporate all the time, and all the way, and precipitate little or none on their route; investigations have proved that they are not saturated with moisture until they have arrived fully up to the regions of equatorial calms, a zone of constant precipitation.

This calm zone of Cancer borders also, it was perceived, upon a rainy region.

§ 307 Where does the vapour which here, on the northern edge of this zone of Cancer, is condensed into rains, come from?—and where, also—was the oft-repeated question—does the vapour which is condensed into rains for the extra-tropical regions of the north generally come from? By what agency is it conveyed across this calm belt from its birth-place between the tropics?

By what agency is the vapour conveyed across the calm belt.

§ 308 I know of no law of nature or rule of philosophy which would forbid the supposition that the air which has been brought along as the north-east trade-winds to the equatorial calms does, after ascending there, return by the counter and upper currents to the calm zone of Cancer, here descend and re-appear on the surface as the north-east trade-winds again. I know of no agent in nature which would *prevent* it from taking this circuit, nor do I know of any which would compel it to take this circuit; but while I know of no agent in nature that would prevent it from taking this circuit, I know, on the other hand, of circumstances which rendered it probable that such, in general, is not the course of atmospherical circulation—that it does not take this circuit. I speak of the

rule, not of the exceptions ; these are infinite, and, for the most part, are caused by the land.

And I moreover know of facts which go to strengthen the supposition that the winds which have come in the upper regions of the atmosphere from the equator, do not, after arriving at the calms of Cancer, and descending, return to the equator on the surface, but that they continue on the surface toward the pole. But why should they? What agent in nature is there that can compel these, rather than any other winds, to take such a circuit?

§ 309  
There are facts which strengthen the supposition that the winds cross.

The following are some of the facts and circumstances which give strength to the supposition that these winds do continue from the calm belt of Cancer toward the pole as the prevailing south-westerly winds of the extra-tropical north :

§ 310  
Some of the facts.

We have seen (Plate I.) that, on the north side of this calm zone of Cancer, the prevailing winds on the surface are from this zone toward the pole, and that these winds return as A through the upper regions from the pole ; that, arriving at the calms of Cancer, this upper current A meets another upper current G from the equator, where they neutralize each other, produce a calm, descend, and come out as surface winds, namely, A as B, or the trade winds ; and G as H, or the variable winds.

Now, observations have shown that the winds represented by H are rain winds ; those represented by B, dry winds ; and it is evident that A could not bring any vapours to these calms to serve for H to make rains of ; for the winds represented by A have already performed the circuit of surface winds as far as the pole, during which journey they parted with all their moisture, and,

§ 311  
Wet and dry winds

CHAPTER VI. returning through the upper regions of the air to the calm belt of Cancer, they arrived there as dry winds. The winds represented by B are dry winds; therefore it was supposed that these are but a continuation of the winds A.

§ 312 On the other hand, if the winds A, after descending, do turn about and become the surface winds H, they would first have to remain a long time in contact with the sea, in order to be supplied with vapour enough to feed the great rivers, and supply the rains for the whole earth between us and the north pole. In this case we should have an evaporating region on the north as well as on the south side of this zone of Cancer; but investigation shows no such region; I speak exclusively of the ocean.

§ 313 Hence it was inferred that A and G do come out on the surface as represented by Plate I. But what is the agent that should lead them out by such opposite paths?

§ 314 According to this mode of reasoning, the vapours which supply the rains for H would be taken up in the south-east trade-wind region by F, and conveyed thence along the route G to H. And if this mode of reasoning be admitted as plausible—if it be true that G have the vapour which, by condensation, is to water with showers the extra-tropical regions of the northern hemisphere, Nature, we may be sure, has provided a guide for conducting G across this belt of calms, and for sending it on in the right way. Here it was, then, at this crossing of the winds, that I thought I first saw the foot-prints of an agent whose character I could not comprehend. Could it be the magnetism that resides in the oxygen of the air?

No evaporating region on the north side of the zone of Cancer.

Conjecture about magnetism.

Heat and cold, the early and the latter rain, clouds and sunshine, are not, we may rely upon it, distributed over the earth by chance; they are distributed in obedience to laws that are as certain and as sure in their operations as the seasons in their rounds. If it depended upon chance whether the dry air should come out on this side or on that of this calm belt, or whether the moist air should return or not whence it came—if such were the case in nature, we perceive that, so far from any regularity as to seasons, we should have, or might have, years of droughts the most excessive, and then again seasons of rains the most destructive; but, so far from this, we find for each place a mean annual proportion of both, and that so regulated withal, that year after year the quantity is preserved with remarkable regularity.

CHAPTER VI.

§ 315  
Distribu-  
tion of  
rain and  
wind not  
left to  
chance.

Having thus shown that there is no reason for supposing that the upper currents of air, when they meet over the calms of Cancer and Capricorn, are turned back to the equator, but having shown that there is reason for supposing that the air of each current, after descending, continues on in the direction towards which it was travelling before it descended, we may go farther, and, by a similar train of circumstantial evidence, afforded by these researches and other sources of information, show that the air, kept in motion on the surface by the two systems of trade-winds, when it arrives at the belt of equatorial calms, and ascends, continues on thence, each current toward the pole which it was approaching while on the surface.

§ 316  
No reason  
for suppos-  
ing the  
winds turn  
back to the  
equator.

In a problem like this, demonstration in the positive way is difficult, if not impossible. We must rely for our

§ 317



CHAPTER VI. proof upon philosophical deduction, guided by the lights of reason; and in all cases in which positive proof cannot be adduced, it is permitted to bring in circumstantial evidence.

§ 318 I am endeavouring, let it be borne in mind, to show cause for conjecturing the agency of magnetism. cause for the conjecture that the magnetism of the oxygen of the atmosphere is concerned in conducting the air which has blown as the south-east trade-winds—and after it has arrived at the belt of equatorial calms and risen up—over into the northern hemisphere, and so on through its channels of circulation, as traced on Plate I.

§ 319 But, in order to show reasonable grounds for this conjecture, I want to establish, by circumstantial evidence and such indirect proof as my investigations afford, that such is the course of the “wind in his circuits,” and that the winds represented by F, Plate I, *do* become those represented by G, H, A, B, C, D, and E successively.

§ 320 In the first place, F represents the south-east trade-winds—*i.e.*, all the winds of the southern hemisphere as they approach the equator; and is there any reason for supposing that the atmosphere does not pass freely from one hemisphere to another? On the contrary, many reasons present themselves for supposing that it does.

§ 321 If it did not, the proportion of land and water, and consequently of plants and warm-blooded animals, being so different in the two hemispheres, we might imagine that the constituents of the atmosphere in them would, in the course of ages, probably become different, and that consequently, in such a case, man could not safely pass from one hemisphere to the other.

§ 322 Consider the manifold beauties in the whole system of



terrestrial adaptations; remember what a perfect and wonderful machine<sup>1</sup> is this atmosphere; how exquisitely balanced and beautifully compensated it is in all its parts. We know that it is perfect; that in the performance of its various offices it is never left to the guidance of chance —no, not for a moment. Therefore I was led to ask myself why the air of the south-east trades, when arrived at the zone of equatorial calms, should not, after ascending, rather return to the south than go on to the north? Where and what is the agency by which its course is decided?

CHAPTER  
VI.  
—  
Perfect  
machinery  
of the at-  
mosphere.

Here I found circumstances which again induced me to suppose it probable that it neither turned back to the south nor mingled with the air which came from the regions of the north-east trades, ascended, and then flowed indiscriminately to the north or the south.

But I saw reasons for supposing that what came to the equatorial calms as the south-east trade-winds continued to the north as an upper current, and that what had come to the same zone as north-east trade-winds ascended and continued over into the southern hemisphere as an upper current, bound for the calm zone of Capricorn.

§ 323  
§ 324  
Supposi-  
tion.

And these are the principal reasons and conjectures upon which these suppositions were based:

At the seasons of the year when the area covered by the south-east trade-winds is large, and when they are evaporating most rapidly in the southern hemisphere, even up to the equator, the most rain is falling in the northern. Therefore it is fair to suppose that much of the vapour which is taken up on that side of the equator is precipitated on this.

§ 325  
Evapora-  
tion and  
precipita-  
tion.

## CHAPTER

## VI.

## § 326

More evaporating surface in southern than northern hemisphere.

The evaporating surface in the southern hemisphere is greater, much greater, than it is in the northern; still, all the great rivers are in the northern hemisphere, the Amazon being regarded as common to both; and this fact, as far as it goes, tends to corroborate the suggestion as to the crossing of the trade-winds at the equatorial calms.

## § 327

Temperature of tropical regions higher in the northern hemisphere.

Independently of other sources of information, my investigations also taught me to believe that the mean temperature of the tropical regions was higher in the northern than in the southern hemisphere; for they show that the difference is such as to draw the equatorial edge of the south-east trades far over on this side of the equator, and to give them force enough to keep the north-east trade-winds out of the southern hemisphere almost entirely.

## § 328

Consequently, as before stated, the south-east trade-winds being in contact with a more extended evaporating surface, and continuing in contact with it for a longer time or through a greater distance, they would probably arrive at the trade-wind place of meeting more heavily laden with moisture than the others.

## § 329

Whence come the vapours that feed the great rivers.

Taking the laws and rates of evaporation into consideration, I could find no part of the ocean of the northern hemisphere from which the sources of the Mississippi, the St. Lawrence, and the other great rivers of our hemisphere could be supplied.

## § 330

Rain maps

A regular series of meteorological observations has been carried on at the military posts of the United States since 1819. Rain maps of the whole country\* have been prepared from these observations by Mr. Lorin

\* See Army Meteorological Observations, published 1855.

Blodget at the surgeon general's office, and under the direction of Dr. Cooleage, U. S. A. These maps, as far as they go, sustain these views in a remarkable manner; for they bring out facts in a most striking way to show that the dry season in California and Oregon is the wet season in the Mississippi Valley.

CHAPTER  
VI.  
—

The winds coming from the south-west, and striking upon the coasts of California and Oregon in winter, precipitate there copiously. They then pass over the mountains robbed in part of their moisture. Of course, after watering the Pacific shores, they have not as much vapour to make rains of, especially for the upper Mississippi Valley, as they had in the summer time, when they dispensed their moisture, in the shape of rains, most sparingly upon the Pacific coasts.

§ 331  
Wet and dry seasons in California and Mississippi Valley.

According to these views, the dry season on the Pacific slopes should be the wet, especially in the upper Mississippi Valley, and *vice versa*. Blodget's maps show that such is actually the case.

§ 332

Meteorological observations in the "Red River country," and other parts of British America, would throw farther light, and give farther confirmation, I doubt not, both to these views and to this interesting question.

§ 333

These army observations, as expressed in Blodget's maps, reveal other interesting features also, touching the physical geography of the country. I allude to the two isothermal lines  $45^{\circ}$  and  $65^{\circ}$ ,<sup>1</sup> which include between them all places that have a mean annual temperature between  $45^{\circ}$  and  $65^{\circ}$ .

§ 334  
Isotherma<sup>l</sup> lines.

I have drawn similar lines on the authority of Dove and Johnston (A. K., of Edinburgh), across Europe and

§ 335

<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

CHAPTER  
VI.Climates  
not to be  
reckoned  
according  
to parallels  
of latitude.

Asia, for the sake of comparison. The isotherm of  $65^{\circ}$  skirts the northern limits of the sugar-cane, and separates the inter-tropical from the extra-tropical plants and productions. I have drawn these two lines across America, and the result shows how much we err when we reckon climates accord to parallels of latitude. The space that these two isotherms of  $45^{\circ}$  and  $65^{\circ}$  comprehend between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains, owing to the singular effect of those mountains upon the climate, is larger than the space they comprehend between the Mississippi and the Atlantic.

Humboldt's  
opinion  
of the  
climates  
of the  
Caspian  
Sea.

Hyetographically it is also different, being dryer, and possessing a purer atmosphere. In this grand range of climate between the meridians of  $100^{\circ}$  and  $110^{\circ}$  W., the amount of precipitation is just about one half of what it is between those two isotherms east of the Mississippi. In this new country west of it, winter is the dry, and spring the rainy season. It includes the climates of the Caspian Sea, which Humboldt regards as the most salubrious in the world, and where he found the most delicious fruits that he saw during his travels. Such was the purity of the air there, that polished steel would not tarnish even by night exposure. These two isotherms, with the remarkable loop which they make to the north-west, beyond the Mississippi, embrace the most choice climates for the olive, the vine, and the poppy; for the melon, the peach, and almond. The finest of wool may be grown there, and the potato, with hemp, tobacco, maize, and all the cereals, may be cultivated there in great perfection. No climate of the temperate zone will be found to surpass in salubrity that of this Piedmont trans-Mississippi country.

By such trains of thought and reasoning as are here sketched, and by such facts and circumstances as are stated above, I have been brought to regard the extra-tropical regions of the northern hemisphere as standing in the relation of a condenser to a grand steam machine,<sup>1</sup> the boiler of which is in the region of the south-east trade-winds, and to consider the trade-winds of this hemisphere as performing the like office for the regions beyond Capricorn.

CHAPTER  
VI.

§ 336  
Extra-tropical regions of the north a condenser for the trade-winds of the southern hemisphere.

The calm zone of Capricorn is the duplicate of that of Cancer, and the winds flow from it as they do from that, both north and south; but with this difference: that on the polar side of the Capricorn belt they prevail from the north-west instead of the south-west, and on the equatorial side from the south-east instead of the north-east.

§ 337

Calm zones.

Now, if it be true that the vapour of the north-east trade-winds is condensed in the extra-tropical regions of the southern hemisphere, the following path, on account of the effect of diurnal rotation of the earth upon the course of the winds, would represent the mean circuit of a portion of the atmosphere moving according to the general system of its circulation over the Pacific Ocean, namely, coming down from the north as an upper current, and appearing on the surface of the earth in about longitude 120° west, and near the tropic of Cancer, it would here commence to blow the north-east trade-winds of that region.

§ 338

Mean circuit of a portion of the atmosphere.

To make this clear, see Plate VII., on which I have marked the course of such vapour-bearing winds; A being a breadth or *swath* of winds in the north-east trades; B, the same wind as the upper and counter-current to the

§ 339

Course of vapour-bearing winds.

<sup>1</sup> § 163.

CHAPTER VI. south-east trades; and C, the same wind after it has descended in the calm belt of Capricorn, and come out on the polar side thereof, as the rain-winds and prevailing north-west winds of the extra-tropical regions of the south-western hemisphere.

§ 340 This, as the north-east trades, is the evaporating wind. As the north-east trade-wind, it sweeps over a great waste of waters lying between the tropic of Cancer and the equator.

§ 341 Meeting no land in this long oblique track over the tepid waters of a tropical sea, it would, if such were its route, arrive somewhere about the meridian of  $140^{\circ}$  or  $150^{\circ}$  west, at the belt of equatorial calms, which always divides the north-east from the south-east trade-winds. Here, depositing a portion of its vapour as it ascends, it would, with the residuum, take, on account of diurnal rotation, a course in the upper region of the atmosphere to the south-east, as far as the calms of Capricorn. Here it descends and continues on toward the coast of South America, in the same direction, appearing now as the prevailing north-west wind of the extra-tropical regions of the southern hemisphere. Travelling on the surface from warmer to colder regions, it must, in this part of the circuit, precipitate more than it evaporates.

§ 342 Now, it is a coincidence, at least, that this is the route by which, on account of the land in the northern hemisphere, the north-east trade-winds have the fairest sweep over that ocean. This is the route by which they are longest in contact with an evaporating surface; the route by which all circumstances are most favourable to complete saturation; and this is the route by which they



can pass over into the southern hemisphere most heavily laden with vapours for the extra-tropical regions of that half of the globe; and this is the supposed route which the north-east trade-winds of the Pacific take to reach the equator, and to pass from it.

Accordingly, if this process of reasoning be good, that portion of South America between the calms of Capricorn and Cape Horn, upon the mountain ranges of which this part of the atmosphere, whose circuit I am considering as a type, first impinges, ought to be a region of copious precipitation.

Now, let us turn to the works on Physical Geography, and see what we can find upon this subject. In Berghaus and Johnston—department Hyetography—it is stated, on the authority of Captain King, R. N., that upward of twelve feet (one hundred and fifty-three inches) of rain fell in forty-one days on that part of the coast of Patagonia which lies within the sweep of the winds just described. So much rain falls there, navigators say, that they sometimes find the water on the top of the sea fresh and sweet.

After impinging upon the cold hill-tops of the Andes, this same wind tumbles down upon the eastern slopes of the range as a dry wind; as such, it traverses the almost rainless and barren regions of cis-Andean Patagonia and South Buenos Ayres.

These conditions, the direction of the prevailing winds, and the amount of precipitation, may be regarded as evidence afforded by nature, if not in favour of, certainly not against, the conjecture that such may have been the voyage of this vapour through the air. At any rate,

CHAPTER  
VI.Region of  
precipitation.

Patagonia.

§ 345

Becomes a  
dry wind  
in Buenos  
Ayres.

§ 346

Evidence  
in favour  
of con-  
jecture.



CHAPTER  
VI.

here is proof of the immense quantity of vapour which these winds of the extra-tropical regions carry along with them toward the poles; and I can imagine no other place than that suggested, whence these winds could get so much vapour.

Theory.

I am not unaware of the theory, or of the weight attached to it, which requires precipitation to take place in the upper regions of the atmosphere on account of the cold there, irrespective of proximity to mountain tops and snow-clad hills.

§ 347

Facts irreconcilable with it.

But the facts and conditions developed by this system of research upon the high seas are in many respects irreconcilable with that theory. With a new system of facts before me, I have, independent of all preconceived notions and opinions, set about to seek among them for explanations and reconciliations.

§ 348

How do the currents of air cross each other

These may not in all cases be satisfactory to every one; indeed, notwithstanding the amount of circumstantial evidence that has already been brought to show that the air which the north-east and the south-east trade-winds discharge into the belts of equatorial calms, does, in ascending, cross—that from the southern passing over into the northern, and that from the northern passing over into the southern hemisphere (see F and G, B and C, Plate I.)—yet some have implied doubt by asking the question, “How are two such currents of air to pass each other?” And, for the want of light upon this point, the correctness of reasoning, facts, inferences, and deductions have been questioned.

§ 349

Breadth of calm belt.

In the first place, it may be said in reply, the belt of equatorial calms is often several hundred miles across,

seldom less than sixty ; whereas the depth of the volume of air that the trade-winds pour into it is only about three miles, for that is supposed to be about the height to which the trade-winds extend.

CHAPTER  
VI.  
Height  
of trade-  
winds.

Thus we have the air passing into these calms by an opening on the north side for the north-east trades, and another on the south for the south-east trades, having a cross section of three miles vertically to each opening. It then escapes by an opening upward, the cross section of which is sixty or one hundred, or even three hundred miles. A very slow motion upward there will carry off the air in that direction as fast as the two systems of trade-winds, with their motion of twenty miles an hour, can pour it in ; and that *curds* or columns of air can readily cross each other and pass in different directions without interfering the one with the other, or at least to that degree which obstructs or prevents, we all know.

§ 350  
Columns  
of air can  
cross with-  
out inter-  
fering  
with each  
other.

For example, open the window of a warm room in winter, and immediately there are two currents of air ready at once to set through it, namely, a current of warm air flowing out at the top, and one of cold coming in below.

§ 351  
Illustra-  
tion.

But the brown fields in summer afford evidence on a larger scale, and in a still more striking manner, of the fact that, in nature, columns, or streamlets, or curdles of air do really move among each other without obstruction. That tremulous motion which we so often observe above stubble-fields, barren wastes, or above any heated surface, is caused by the ascent and descent, at one and the same time, of columns of air at different temperatures, the cool coming down, the warm going up. They do not readily commingle, for the astronomer, long after nightfall, when

§ 352  
Striking  
evidence.

CHAPTER  
VI.

he turns his telescope upon the heavens, perceives and laments the unsteadiness they produce in the sky.

§ 353  
Difference  
of tem-  
perature  
of trade-  
winds  
would pre-  
vent them  
from  
mingling.

If the air brought down by the north-east trade-winds differ in temperature (and why not?) from that brought by the south-east trades, we have the authority of nature for saying that the two currents would not readily commingle. Proof is daily afforded that they would not, and there is reason to believe that the air of each current, in streaks, or patches, or *curdles*, does thread its way through the air of the other without difficulty. Now, if the air of these two currents differs as to magnetism, might not that be an additional reason for their not mixing, and for their taking the direction of opposite poles after ascending?

§ 354  
Assump-  
tion.

Therefore we may assume it as a postulate which nature concedes, that there is no difficulty as to the two currents of air, which come into those calm belts from different directions, crossing over, each in its proper direction, without mingling.

§ 355  
Additional  
evidence  
that they  
cross.

Thus, having shown that there is nothing to *prevent* the crossing of the air in these calm belts, I return to the process of reasoning by induction, and offer additional circumstantial evidence to prove that such a crossing does take place. Let us therefore catechise, on this head, the waters which the Mississippi pours into the sea, inquiring of them as to the channels among the clouds through which they were brought from the ocean to the fountains of that mighty river.

§ 356  
Rain in  
Mississippi  
Valley.

It rains more in the valley drained by that river than is evaporated from it again. The difference for a year is the volume of water annually discharged by that river into the sea.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 165.

At the time and place that the vapour which supplies this immense volume of water was lifted by the atmosphere up from the sea, the thermometer, we may infer, stood higher than it did at the time and place where this vapour was condensed and fell down as rain in the Mississippi Valley.

CHAPTER  
VI.  
§ 357

I looked to the south for the springs in the Atlantic which supply the fountains of this river with rain. But I could not find spare evaporating surface enough for it, in the first place; and if the vapour, I could not find the winds which would convey it thence to the right place.

§ 358  
Where  
does it  
come from

The prevailing winds in the Caribbean Sea and southern parts of the Gulf of Mexico are the north-east trade-winds. They have their offices to perform in the river basins of inter-tropical America, and the rains which they may discharge into the Mississippi Valley now and then are exceptions, not the rule.

§ 359

The winds from the north cannot bring vapours from the great lakes to make rains for the Mississippi, for two reasons: 1st, The basin of the great lakes receives from the atmosphere more water in the shape of rain than they give back in the shape of vapour. The St. Lawrence River carries off the excess. 2d, The mean climate of the lake country is colder than that of the Mississippi Valley, and therefore, as a general rule, the temperature of the Mississippi Valley is unfavourable for condensing vapour from that quarter.

§ 360  
It cannot  
come from  
the north,  
for two  
reasons.

It cannot come from the Atlantic, because the greater part of the Mississippi Valley is to the windward of the Atlantic. The winds that blow across this ocean go to Europe with their vapours; and in the Pacific, from the

§ 361  
Nor from  
the Atlan-  
tic.

CHAPTER  
VI.

parallels of California down to the equator, the direction of the wind at the surface is from, not toward the basin of the Mississippi. Therefore it seemed to be established with some degree of probability, or, if that expression be too strong, with something like apparent plausibility, that the rain winds of the Mississippi Valley do not, as a general rule, get their vapours from the North Atlantic Ocean, nor from the Gulf of Mexico, nor from the great lakes, nor from that part of the Pacific Ocean over which the north-east trade-winds prevail.

§ 362 The same process of reasoning which conducted us<sup>1</sup> into the trade-wind region of the northern hemisphere for the sources of the Patagonian rains, now invites us into the trade-wind regions of the South Pacific Ocean to look for the vapour springs of the Mississippi.

We must  
look to  
South  
Pacific.

§ 363 If the rain winds of the Mississippi Valley come from the east, then we should have reason to suppose that their vapours were taken up from the Atlantic Ocean and Gulf Stream; if the rain winds come from the south, then the vapour springs might, perhaps, be in the Gulf of Mexico; if the rain winds come from the north, then the great lakes might be supposed to feed the air with moisture for the fountains of that river; but if the rains come from the west, where, short of the great Pacific Ocean, should we look for the place of evaporation?

Reasons.

Wondering where, I addressed a circular letter to farmers and planters of the Mississippi Valley, requesting to be informed as to the direction of their rain winds.

§ 364 I received replies from Virginia, Mississippi, Tennessee, Missouri, Indiana, and Ohio; and, subsequently, from Col. W. A. Bird, Buffalo, New York, who says, "The south-

Direction  
of rain  
winds.

<sup>1</sup> § 342.

west winds are our fair-weather winds ; we seldom have rain from the south-west." Buffalo may get much of its rains from the Gulf Stream with easterly winds. But I speak of the Mississippi Valley ; all the respondents there, with the exception of one in Missouri, said, "The south-west winds bring us our rains."

CHAPTER  
VI.  
South-  
west winds  
bring rain.

These winds certainly cannot get their vapours from the Rocky Mountains, nor from the Salt Lake, for they rain quite as much upon that basin as they evaporate from it again ; if they did not, they would, in the process of time, have evaporated all the water there, and the lake would now be dry.

§ 365  
They can-  
not get  
vapours  
from Salt  
Lake or  
the Rocky  
Mountains

These winds, that feed the sources of the Mississippi with rain, like those between the same parallels upon the ocean, are going from a higher to a lower temperature ; and these winds in the Mississippi Valley, not being in contact with the ocean, or with any other evaporating surface to supply them with moisture, must bring with them from some sea or another that which they deposit.

§ 366  
These  
winds go  
from a  
higher to  
a lower  
tempera-  
ture.

Therefore, though it may be urged, inasmuch as the winds which brought the rains to Patagonia<sup>1</sup> came direct from the sea, that they therefore took up their vapours as they came along, yet it cannot be so urged in this case ; and if these winds could pass with their vapours from the equatorial calms through the upper regions of the atmosphere to the calms of Cancer, and then as surface winds into the Mississippi Valley, it was not perceived why the Patagonian rain winds should not bring their moisture by a similar route. These last are from the north-west, from warmer to colder latitudes ; therefore, being once charged with vapours, they must precipitate

§ 367

---

<sup>1</sup> § 344.



CHAPTER

VI.

Alterna-  
tion of  
rainy  
and dry  
seasons

as they go, and take up less moisture than they deposit. The circumstance that the rainy season in the Mississippi Valley<sup>1</sup> alternates with the dry season on the coast of California and Oregon, indicates that the two regions derive vapour for their rains from the same fountains.

§ 368 This, however, could be regarded only as circumstantial evidence. Not a fact had yet been elicited to prove that the course of atmospherical circulation suggested by my investigations is the actual course in nature. It is a case in which I could yet hope for nothing more direct than such conclusions as might legitimately flow from circumstances.

§ 369 My friend Lieutenant De Haven was about to sail in command of the American Arctic Expedition in search of Sir John Franklin. Infusoria are sometimes found in sea-dust, rain-drops, hail-stones, or snow-flakes; and if by any chance it should so turn out that the *locus* of any of the microscopic infusoria which might be found descending with the precipitation of the Arctic regions should be identified as belonging to the regions of the south-east trade-winds, we should thus add somewhat to the strength of the many clues by which we have been seeking to enter into the chambers of the wind, and to "tell whence it cometh and whither it goeth."

American  
Arctic ex-  
pedition.

Infusoria.

§ 370 It is not for man to follow the "wind in his circuits;" and all that could be hoped was, after a close examination of all the facts and circumstances which these researches upon the sea have placed within my reach, to point out that course which seemed to be most in accordance with them; and then, having established a probability, or even a possibility, as to the true course of the atmospheric



circulation, to make it known, and leave it for future investigations to confirm or set aside.

CHAPTER  
VI.

It was at this stage of the matter that my friend, Baron von Gerolt, the Prussian minister, had the kindness to place in my hand Ehrenberg's work, "Passat-Staub und Blut-Regen."

§ 371  
Clew  
found in  
Ehren-  
berg's  
work

Here I found the clew which I hoped, almost against hope, De Haven would place in my hands<sup>1</sup> from the north pole.

That celebrated microscopist reports that he found South American infusoria in the blood-rains and sea-dust of the Cape Verd Islands, Lyons, Genoa, and other places.<sup>2</sup>

§ 372  
Blood-rain  
and sea-  
dust.

Thus confirming, as far as such evidence can, the indications of our observations, and increasing the probability that the general course of atmospherical circulation is in conformity with the suggestions of the facts gathered from the sea as I had interpreted them, namely, that the trade-winds of the southern hemisphere, after arriving at the belt of equatorial calms, ascend and continue in their course toward the calms of Cancer as an upper current from the south-west, and that, after passing this zone of calms, they are felt on the surface as the prevailing south-west winds of the extra-tropical parts of our hemisphere; and that, for the most part, they bring their moisture with them from the trade-wind regions of the opposite hemisphere.

§ 373  
Increased  
probabi-  
lity that  
the trade-  
winds  
cross in  
calms of  
Cancer.


I have marked on Plate VII. the supposed track of the "Passat-Staub," showing where it was taken up in South America, as at P, P, and where it was found, as at S, S; the part of the line in dots denoting where it was in the upper current, and the unbroken line where it was wafted

§ 374  
Supposed  
track of  
the "Pas-  
sat-Staub"

<sup>1</sup> § 369.

<sup>2</sup> § 273.

CHAPTER  
VI.

by a surface current; also on the same plate is designated the part of the South Pacific in which the vapour-springs for the Mississippi rains are supposed to be. The hands () point out the direction of the wind. Where the shading is light, the vapour is supposed to be carried by an upper current.

Suspicion  
of some  
other  
agent.

§ 375 Such is the character of the circumstantial evidence which induced me to suspect that some agent, whose office in the grand system of atmospherical circulation is neither understood nor recognised, was at work in these calm belts.

Faraday's  
discoveries

§ 376 Dr. Faraday has shown that, as the temperature of oxygen is raised, its paramagnetic force diminishes, being resumed as the temperature falls again.

“These properties it carries into the atmosphere, so that the latter is, in reality, a magnetic medium, ever varying, from the influence of natural circumstances, in its magnetic power. If a mass of air be cooled, it becomes more paramagnetic; if heated, it becomes less paramagnetic (or diamagnetic), as compared with the air in a mean or normal condition.” \*

Probabi-  
lity that  
magne-  
tism is the  
agent.

§ 377 Now, is it not more than probable that here we have, in the magnetism of the atmosphere, that agent which guides the air from the south<sup>1</sup> through the calms of Capricorn, of the equator, and of Cancer, and conducts it into the north; that agent which causes the atmosphere, with its vapours and infusoria, to flow above the clouds from one hemisphere into the other, and whose footprints had become so palpable?

\* Philosophical Magazine and Journal of Science, 4th Series, No. I., January, 1851, page 73.

<sup>1</sup> § 373.

Taking up the theory of Ampère with regard to the magnetic polarity induced by an electrical current, according as it passes through wire coiled *with* or coiled *against* the sun, and expanding it in conformity with the discoveries of Faraday and the experiments of a Prussian philosopher,\* we perceive a series of facts and principles which, being applied to the circulation of the atmosphere, make the conclusions to which I have been led touching these crossings in the air, and the continual "whirl" of the wind in the Arctic regions *against*, and in the Antarctic *with the hands of a watch*, very significant.

CHAPTER  
VI.  
§ 378  
Theory of  
Ampère.

Significant  
facts.

In this view of the subject, we see light springing up from various sources, by which the shadows of approaching confirmation are clearly perceived. One such source of light comes from the observations of my excellent friend Quetelet, at Brussels, which show that the great electrical reservoir of the atmosphere is in the upper regions of the air. It is filled with positive electricity, which increases as the temperature diminishes.

§ 379

Observations of  
Quetelet at  
Brussels.

May we not look, therefore, to find about the north and south magnetic poles these atmospherical nodes or calm regions which I have theoretically pointed out there? In other words, are not the magnetic poles of the earth in those atmospherical nodes, the two standing in the relation of cause and effect, the one to the other?

§ 380

Supposed  
calm  
regions at  
the poles.

This question was first asked several years ago,† and I was then moved to propound it by the inductions of theoretical reasoning.

Observers, perhaps, will never reach those inhospitable

§ 381

\* Professor Von Feilitzsch, of the University of Griefswald. Philosophical Magazine, January, 1851.  
† Maury's Sailing Directions.

## CHAPTER

## VI.

Opinions  
of Parry  
and Bar-  
row.

Professor  
Coffin's  
conclusion

Position of  
the poles.

Sir David  
Brewster.

regions with their instruments to shed light upon this subject; but Parry and Barrow have found reasons to believe in the existence of a perpetual calm about the north pole, and, later, Bellot has reported the existence of a calm region within the frigid zone. Professor J. H. Coffin, in an elaborate and valuable paper\* on the "WINDS OF THE NORTHERN HEMISPHERE," arrives by deduction at a like conclusion. In that paper he has discussed the records at no less than five hundred and seventy-nine meteorological stations, embracing a totality of observations for two thousand eight hundred and twenty-nine years. He places his "meteorological pole"—pole of the winds—near latitude  $84^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $105^{\circ}$  west. The pole of maximum cold, by another school of philosophers, Sir David Brewster among them, has been placed in latitude  $80^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $100^{\circ}$  west; and the magnetic pole, by still another school,† in latitude  $73^{\circ} 35'$  north, longitude  $95^{\circ} 39'$  west.

## § 382

Difficulty  
of defining  
their exact  
position.

Neither of these poles is a point susceptible of definite and exact position. The polar calms are no more a point than the equatorial calms are a line; and, considering that these poles are areas or discs, not points, it is a little curious that philosophers in different parts of the world, using different data, and following up investigation each through a separate and independent system of research, and each aiming at the solution of different problems, should nevertheless agree in assigning very nearly the same position to them all? Are these three poles grouped together by chance, or by some physical cause? By the

Philoso-  
phers as-  
sign nearly  
the same  
position to  
them all.

\* Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge, vol. vi., 1854.

† Gauss.

latter undoubtedly. Here, then, we have another of those gossamer-like clews, that sometimes seem almost palpable enough for the mind, in its happiest mood, to lay hold of, and follow up to the very portals of knowledge, where, pausing to knock, we may boldly demand that the chambers of hidden things be thrown wide open, that we may see and understand the mysteries of the winds, the frost, and the trembling needle.

CHAPTER  
VI.  
A clew.

In the polar calms there is<sup>1</sup> an ascent of air; if an ascent, a diminution of pressure and an expansion; and if expansion, a decrease of temperature. Therefore we have palpably enough a connecting link here between the polar calms and the polar place of maximum cold. Thus we establish a relation between the pole of the winds and the pole of cold, with evident indications that there is also a physical connection between these and the magnetic pole. Here the outcroppings of the relation between magnetism and the circulation of the atmosphere again appear.

§ 383  
Relation  
between  
the poles

May we not find in such evidence as this threads, attenuated and almost air-drawn though they be when taken singly and alone, yet nevertheless proving, when brought together, to have a consistency sufficient, with the lights of reason, to guide us as we seek to trace the wind in his circuits? The winds approach these polar calms<sup>2</sup> by a circular or spiral motion, travelling in the northern hemisphere *against*, and in the southern *with*, the hands of a watch. The circular gales of the northern hemisphere are said also to revolve in like manner against the hands of a watch, while those in the southern hemisphere travel the other way. Now, should not this dis-

§ 384  
Evidence  
to guide  
us in  
tracing  
the wind.

Winds  
approach  
polar  
calms with  
a spiral  
motion.

<sup>1</sup> § 139.

<sup>2</sup> § 155.

CHAPTER  
VI.

Encouragement to look at magnetism as a cause.

covery of these three poles, this coincidence of revolving winds, with the other circumstances that have been brought to light, encourage us to look to the magnetism of the air for the key to these mysterious but striking coincidences?

§ 385 Indeed, so wide is the field for speculation presented by these discoveries, that we may in some respects regard this great globe itself, with its "cups" and spiral wires of air, earth, and water, as an immense "pile" and helix, which, being excited by the natural batteries in the sea and atmosphere of the tropics, excites in turn its oxygen, and imparts to atmospherical matter the properties of magnetism.

§ 386 With the lights which these discoveries cast, we see (Plate I.) why air, which has completed its circuit to the whirl\* about the Antarctic regions, should then, according to the laws of magnetism, be repelled from the south, and attracted by the opposite pole toward the north.

§ 387 And when the south-east and the north-east trade-winds meet in the equatorial calms of the Pacific, would not these magnetic forces be sufficient to determine the course of each current, bringing the former, with its vapours of the southern hemisphere, over into this, by the courses already suggested?

§ 388 This force, and the heat of the sun, would propel it to the north. The diurnal rotation of the earth propels it to the east; consequently its course, first through the upper regions of the atmosphere and then on the surface of the earth, after being conducted by this newly-discovered agent across the calms of Cancer, would be *from*

---

\* "It whirlleth about continually."—BIBLE.



the southward and westward to the northward and eastward.

These are the winds<sup>1</sup> which, on their way to the north from the South Pacific, would pass over the Mississippi Valley, and they appear<sup>2</sup> to be the rain winds there. Whence, then, if not from the trade-wind regions of the South Pacific, can the vapours for those rains come?

§ 389  
Rain  
winds in  
Mississippi  
Valley.

According to this view, and not taking into account any of the exceptions produced by the land and other circumstances upon the general circulation of the atmosphere over the ocean, the south-east trade-winds, which reach the shores of Brazil near the parallel of Rio, and which blow thence for the most part over the land, should be the winds which, in the general course of circulation, would be carried, after crossing the Andes and rising up in the belt of equatorial calms, toward Northern Africa, Spain, and the South of Europe.

§ 390  
South-east  
trade-wind

They might carry with them the infusoria of Ehrenberg,<sup>3</sup> but, according to this theory, they would be wanting in moisture. Now, are not those portions of the Old World, for the most part, dry countries, receiving but a small amount of precipitation?

§ 391

Hence the general rule. Those countries to the north of the calms of Cancer, which have large bodies of land situated to the southward and westward of them, in the south-east trade-wind region of the earth, should have a scanty supply of rain, and *vice versa*.

§ 392  
General  
rule.

Let us try this rule: The extra-tropical part of New Holland comprises a portion of land thus situated in the southern hemisphere. Tropical India is to the northward and westward of it; and tropical India is in the north-

§ 393  
Applica-  
tion of  
rule.

<sup>1</sup> § 181.

<sup>2</sup> § 364.

<sup>3</sup> § 273.



CHAPTER  
VI.

east trade-wind region, and should give extra-tropical New Holland a slender supply of rain. But what modifications the monsoons of the Indian Ocean may make to this rule, or what effect they may have upon the rains in New Holland, my investigations in that part of the ocean have not been carried far enough for final decision, though New Holland is a dry country. Referring back to page 80 for what has been already said concerning the "METEOROLOGICAL AGENCIES"<sup>1</sup> of the atmosphere, it will be observed that cases are there brought forward which afford trials for this rule, every one of which holds good.

§ 394

Great probability that magnetism is an agent in atmospheric circulation

Thus, though it be not proved as a mathematical truth that magnetism is the power which guides the storm from right to left and from left to right, which conducts the moist and the dry air each in its appointed paths, and which regulates the "wind in his circuits," yet that it is such a power is rendered very probable; for, under the supposition that there is such a crossing of the air at the five calm places, as Plate I. represents, we can reconcile a greater number of known facts and phenomena than we can under the supposition that there is no such crossing. The rules of scientific investigation always require us, when we enter the domains of conjecture, to adopt that hypothesis by which the greatest number of known facts and phenomena may be reconciled; and, therefore, we are entitled to assume, that this crossing probably does take place, and to hold fast to the theory so maintaining until it is shown not to be sound.<sup>2</sup>

§ 395

That the magnetism of the atmosphere is the agent which guides the air across the calm belts, and prevents

<sup>1</sup> § 159.<sup>2</sup> § 1003.

that which enters them from escaping on the side upon which it entered, we cannot, of our own knowledge, positively affirm. Suffice it to say, that we recognise in this property of the oxygen of air an agent that, for aught we as yet know to the contrary, may serve as such a guide; and we do not know of the existence of any other agent in the atmosphere that can perform the offices which the hypothesis requires. Hence the suspicion that magnetism and electricity are among the forces concerned in the circulation of the atmosphere.

CHAPTER

VI.

No other  
known  
agent can  
perform  
the same  
offices.

## CHAPTER VII.

## CURRENTS OF THE SEA.

Governed by Laws, § 396.—The Capacity of Water to convey Heat, 399.—The Red Sea Current, 404.—The per centum of Salt in Sea Water, 418.—The Mediterranean Current, 423.—Under Current from, 424.—Admiral Smyth's Soundings, 426.—Lyell's Views, 429.—Admiral Smyth's Views, 436.—Currents of the Indian Ocean, 439.—Gulf Stream of the Pacific, 441.—Its resemblance to that of the Atlantic, 442.—An ice-bearing Current between Africa and Australia, 449.—Currents of the Pacific, 451.—A Sargossa Sea in the Pacific, 452.—Drift-wood upon the Aleutian Islands, 453.—Cold Ochotsk, 454.—Humboldt's Current, 455.—Warm Current in the South Pacific, 456.—Equatorial Currents in the South Pacific, 458.—The Effect of Rain and Evaporation upon Currents, 459.—Under Currents of the Atlantic, 461.—Equilibrium of the Sea maintained by Currents, 467.—The Brazil Current, 469.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
§ 396  
Currents  
of the sea.

LET us, in this chapter, set out with the postulate that the sea, as well as the air, has its system of circulation, and that this system, whatever it be, and wherever its channels lie, whether in the waters at or below the surface, is in obedience to physical laws. The sea, by the circulation of its waters, doubtless has its offices to perform in the terrestrial economy; and when we see the currents in the ocean running hither and thither, we feel that they were not put in motion without a cause. On the contrary, reason assures us that they move in obedience to some law of nature, be it recorded down in the depths below, never so far beyond the reach of human ken; and being a law of nature, we know who gave it, and that neither chance nor accident had anything to do with its enactment.

They move  
in obedi-  
ence to the  
laws of  
nature.

§ 397 Nature grants us all that this postulate demands, repeating it to us in many forms of expression; she utters

it in the blade of green grass which she causes to grow in climates and soils made kind and genial by warmth and moisture that some current of the sea or air has conveyed far away from under a tropical sun. She murmurs it out in the cooling current of the north; the whales of the sea tell of it,<sup>1</sup> and all its inhabitants proclaim it.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
—  
Nature  
proclaims  
this.

The fauna and the flora of the sea are as much the creatures of climate,<sup>2</sup> and are as dependent for their well-being upon temperature as are the fauna and the flora of the dry land. Were it not so, we should find the fish and the algæ, the marine insect and the coral, distributed equally and alike in all parts of the ocean. The polar whale would delight in the torrid zone, and the habitat of the pearl oyster would be also under the iceberg, or in frigid waters colder than the melting ice.

§ 398  
The fauna  
and flora  
of the sea  
as depend-  
ent on tem-  
perature as  
those of  
the land.

Now water, while its capacities for heat are scarcely exceeded by those of any other substance, is one of the most complete of non-conductors. Heat does not permeate water as it does iron, for instance, or other good conductors. Heat the top of an iron plate, and the bottom becomes warm; but heat the top of a sheet of water, as in a pool or basin, and that at the bottom remains cool. The heat passes through iron by conduction, but to get through water it requires to be conveyed by a motion, which in fluids we call currents.

§ 399  
Water a  
non-con-  
ductor.

Therefore the study of the climates of the sea involves a knowledge of its currents, both cold and warm. They are the channels through which the waters circulate, and by means of which the harmonies of old ocean are preserved.

§ 400  
Know-  
ledge of its  
currents  
necessary  
for study-  
ing the  
climates of  
the sea.

Hence, in studying the system of oceanic circulation.

§ 401

<sup>1</sup> § 70.

<sup>2</sup> § 76

CHAPTER  
VII.

Assump-  
tion on  
which is  
based the  
system of  
currents.

we set out with the very simple assumption, namely, that from whatever part of the ocean a current is found to run, to the same part a current of equal volume is bound to return; for upon this principle is based the whole system of currents and counter-currents of the air as well as of the water.

§ 402  
Whirl-  
pools.

Currents of water, like currents of air, meeting from various directions, create gyrations, which in some parts of the sea, as on the coast of Norway, assume the appearance of whirlpools, as though the water were drawn into a chasm below. The celebrated Maelstrom is caused by such a conflict of tidal or other streams. Admiral Beechey, R.N.,\* has given diagrams illustrative of many "rotatory streams in the English Channel, a number of which occur between the outer extremities of the channel tide and the stream of the oceanic or parent wave." "They are clearly to be accounted for," says he, "by the streams acting obliquely upon each other."

Rotatory  
streams in  
English  
Channel.

§ 403  
Currents  
of the sea  
can run up  
hill.

It is not necessary to associate with oceanic currents the idea that they must of necessity, as on land, run from a higher to a lower level. So far from this being the case, some currents of the sea actually run up hill, while others run on a level.

Gulf  
Stream  
one of  
these.

The Gulf Stream is of the first class.<sup>1</sup>

§ 404  
Those run-  
ning into  
the Red  
Sea and  
Mediterranean  
are the reverse

The currents which run from the Atlantic into the Mediterranean, and from the Indian Ocean into the Red Sea, are the reverse of this. Here the bottom of the current is probably a water-level, and the top an inclined plane, running *down hill*. Take the Red Sea current as

\* See an interesting paper by him on Tidal Streams of the North Sea and English Channel, pp. 703; Phil. Transactions, Part ii., 1851.

an illustration. That sea lies, for the most part, within a rainless and riverless district. It may be compared to a long and narrow trough. Being in a rainless district, the evaporation from it is immense; none of the water thus taken up is returned to it either by rivers or rains. It is about one thousand miles long; it lies nearly north and south, and extends from latitude  $13^{\circ}$  to the parallel of  $30^{\circ}$  north.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
—  
Red Sea.

Its size and  
latitude.

From May to October, the water in the upper part of this sea is said to be two feet lower than it is near the mouth.\* This change or difference of level is ascribed to the effect of the wind, which, prevailing from the north at that season, is supposed to blow the water out.

§ 405  
Difference  
of level in  
it.

But from May to October is also the hot season; it is the season when evaporation is going on most rapidly; and when we consider how dry and how hot the winds are which blow upon this sea at this season of the year, we may suppose the daily evaporation to be immense; not less, certainly, than half an inch, and probably twice that amount. We know that the waste from canals by evaporation, in the summer time, is an element which the engineer, when taking the capacity of his feeders into calculation, has to consider. With him it is an important element; how much more so must the waste by evaporation from this sea be, when we consider the physical conditions under which it is placed. Its feeder, the Arabian Sea, is a thousand miles from its head; its shores are burning sands; the evaporation is *ceaseless*; and none of the vapours, which the scorching winds that blow over it carry away, are returned to it again in the shape of rains.

§ 406  
Immense  
evapora-  
tion.

Its physi-  
cal condi-  
tions.

\* Johnston's Physical Atlas.



CHAPTER  
VII.§ 407  
Cause of  
depression  
in its level.

The Red Sea vapours are carried off and precipitated elsewhere. The depression in the level of its head waters in the summer time, therefore, it appears, is owing to the effect of evaporation as well as to that of the wind blowing the waters back.

§ 408  
Supposed  
average  
evapora-  
tion.

The evaporation in certain parts of the Indian Ocean<sup>1</sup> is from three-fourths of an inch to an inch daily. Suppose it for the Red Sea in the summer time to average only half an inch a day.

§ 409  
Average  
velocity of  
current  
running  
into it.

Now, if we suppose the velocity of the current which runs into that sea to average, from mouth to head twenty miles a day, it would take the water fifty days to reach the head of it. If it lose half an inch from its surface by evaporation daily, it would, by the time it reaches the Isthmus of Suez, lose twenty-five inches from its surface.

§ 410  
Its waters  
lower at  
Suez than  
Babelman-  
deb.

Thus the waters of the Red Sea ought to be lower at the Isthmus of Suez than they are at the Straits of Babelmandeb. Independently of the waters forced out by the wind, they ought to be lower from two other causes, namely, evaporation and temperature, for the temperature of that sea is necessarily lower at Suez, in latitude 30°, than it is at Babelmandeb, in latitude 13°.

§ 411  
Illustra-  
tion.

To make it quite clear that the surface of the Red Sea is not a sea level, but is an inclined plane, suppose the channel of the Red Sea to have a perfectly smooth and level floor, with no water in it, and a wave ten feet high to enter the Straits of Babelmandeb, and to flow up the channel at the rate of twenty miles a day for fifty days, losing daily, by evaporation, half an inch; it is easy to perceive that, at the end of the fiftieth day, this wave

would not be so high, by two feet (twenty-five inches), as it was the first day it commenced to flow. CHAPTER  
VII.  
—

The top of that sea, therefore, may be regarded as an inclined plane, made so by evaporation. § 412

But the salt water, which has lost so much of its freshness by evaporation, becomes salter, and therefore heavier. § 413

The lighter water at the Straits cannot balance the heavier water at the Isthmus, and the colder and salter, and therefore heavier water, must either run out as an under current, or it must deposit its surplus salt in the shape of crystals, and thus gradually make the bottom of the Red Sea a salt-bed, or it must abstract all the salt from the ocean to make the Red Sea brine—and we know that neither the one process nor the other is going on. Hence we infer that there is from the Red Sea an under or outer current, as there is from the Mediterranean through the Straits of Gibraltar, and that the surface waters near Suez are salter than those near the mouth of the Red Sea.

Inference  
of an  
under  
current  
from the  
Red Sea.

And, to show why there should be an outer and under current from each of these two seas, let us suppose the case of a long trough, opening into a vat of oil, with a partition to keep the oil from running into the trough. § 414

Now suppose the trough to be filled up with wine on one side of the partition to the level of the oil on the other. The oil is introduced to represent the lighter water as it enters either of these seas from the ocean, and the wine the same water after it has lost some of its freshness by evaporation, and therefore has become salter and heavier. Now suppose the partition to be raised, what would take place? Why, the oil would run in as

Illustration  
of  
upper and  
under currents.

CHAPTER VII. an upper current, overflowing the wine, and the wine would run out as an under current.

§ 415 The rivers which discharge in the Mediterranean are not sufficient to supply the waste of evaporation, and it is by a process similar to this that the salt which is carried in from the ocean is returned to the ocean again; were it not so, the bed of that sea would be a mass of solid salt. The equilibrium of the seas is preserved, beyond a doubt, by a system of compensation as exquisitely adjusted as are those by which the "music of the spheres" is maintained.

§ 416 It is difficult to form an adequate conception of the immense quantities of solid matter, in solution, which the current from the Atlantic carries into the Mediterranean. In the abstract log for March 8th, 1855, Mr. William Grenville Temple, master of the United States ship *Levant*, homeward bound, has described the indraught there:

Extract from log of U.S. ship *Levant*. "Weather fine; made  $1\frac{1}{4}$  pt. lee-way. At noon, stood in to Almiria Bay, and anchored off the village of Roguetas. Found a great number of vessels waiting for a chance to get to the westward, and learned from them that at least a thousand sail are weather-bound between this and Gibraltar. Some of them have been so for six weeks, and have even got as far as Malaga, only to be swept back by the current. Indeed, no vessel has been able to get out into the Atlantic for three months past."

§ 417 Now, suppose this current, which baffled and beat back this fleet for so many days, ran no faster than two knots the hour. Assuming its depth to be 400 feet only, and its width seven miles, and that it carried in with it

Strong current in- to the Mediter- ranean.

the average proportion of solid matter—say one thirtieth—contained in sea water; and admitting these postulates into calculation as the basis of the computation, it appears that salts enough to make no less than 88 cubic miles of solid matter, of the density of water, were carried into the Mediterranean during these 90 days. Now, unless there were some escape for all this solid matter, which has been running into that sea, not for 90 days merely, but for ages, it is very clear that the Mediterranean would, ere this, have been a vat of very strong brine, or a bed of cubic crystals.

CHAPTER  
VII.

Computation as to amount of salt carried in by this current.

Let us see the results of actual observation upon the density of water in the Red Sea and the Mediterranean, and upon the under currents that run out from these seas.

§ 418

Density of water in Red Sea and Mediterranean.

Four or five years ago, Mr. Morris, chief engineer of the Oriental Company's steam-ship *Ajdaha*, collected specimens of Red Sea water all the way from Suez to the Straits of Babelmandeb, which were afterward examined by Dr. Giraud, who reported the following results:\*

§ 419

	Latitude. D grees.	Longitude. Degrees.	Spec. Grav.	Saline Cont. 1000 parts.	Results reported by Dr. Giraud.
No. 1. Sea at Suez	—	—	1027	41.0	
No. 2. Gulf of Suez	27.49	33.44	1026	40.0	
No. 3. Red Sea	24.29	36.	1024	39.2	
No. 4. do.	20.55	38.18	1026	40.5	
No. 5. do.	20.43	40.03	1024	39.8	
No. 6. do.	14.34	42.43	1024	39.9	
No. 7. do.	12.39	44.45	1023	39.2	

These observations agree with the theoretical deductions just announced, and show that the surface waters at the head are heavier and saltier than the surface waters at the mouth of the Red Sea.

§ 420

\* Transact. of the Bombay Geograph. Soc., vol. ix., May 1849 to August 1850.

CHAPTER  
VII.§ 421  
Temperature of air  
between  
Suez and  
Aden.Average  
evapora-  
tion.Assump-  
tion of Dr.  
Buist.

In the same paper, the temperature of the air between Suez and Aden often rises, it is said, to  $90^{\circ}$ , "and probably averages little less than  $75^{\circ}$  day and night all the year round. The surface of this sea varies in heat from  $65^{\circ}$  to  $85^{\circ}$ , and the difference between the wet and dry bulb thermometers often amounts to  $25^{\circ}$ —in the kamsin, or desert winds, to from  $30^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$ ; the average evaporation at Aden is about eight feet for the year." "Now, assuming," says Dr. Buist, "the evaporation of the Red Sea to be no greater than that of Aden, a sheet of water eight feet thick, equal in area to the whole expanse of that sea, will be carried off annually in vapour; or, assuming the Red Sea to be eight hundred feet in depth at an average—and this, most assuredly, is more than double the fact—the whole of it would be dried up, were no water to enter from the ocean, in one hundred years. The waters of the Red Sea, throughout, contain some four per cent. of salt by weight—or, as salt is a half heavier than water, some 2.7 per cent. in bulk—or, in round numbers, say three per cent. In the course of three thousand years, on the assumptions just made, the Red Sea ought to have been one mass of solid salt, if there were no current running out."

§ 422  
Red Sea is  
three  
thousand  
years old.

Now we know the Red Sea is more than three thousand years old, and that it is not filled with salt; and the reason is, that as fast as the upper currents bring the salt in at the top, the under currents carry it out at the bottom.

§ 423  
Mediterranean  
currents.

MEDITERRANEAN CURRENTS.—With regard to an under current from the Mediterranean, we may begin by remarking that we know that there is a current always setting

in at the surface from the Atlantic, and that this is a salt-water current, which carries an immense amount of salt into that sea. We know, moreover, that that sea is not salting up; and therefore, independently of the postulate,<sup>1</sup> and of observations, we might infer the existence of an under current, through which this salt finds its way out into the broad ocean again.\*

CHAPTER  
VII.

Existence  
of an  
under  
current  
inferred.

With regard to this outer and under current, we have observations telling of its existence as long ago as 1712.

Observations  
regarding it

“In the year 1712,” says Dr. Hudson, in a paper communicated to the Philosophical Society in 1724, “Monsieur du L’Aigle, that fortunate and generous commander of the privateer called the Phoenix, of Marseilles, giving chase near Ceuta Point to a Dutch ship bound to Holland, came up with her in the middle of the Gut between Tariffa and Tangier, and there gave her one broadside, which directly sunk her, all her men being saved by Monsieur du L’Aigle; and a few days after, the Dutch ship, with

§ 424

Extract  
from a  
paper by  
Dr. Hud-  
son.

---

\* Dr. Smith appears to have been the first to *conjecture* this explanation, which he did in 1683 (*vide* Philosophical Transactions). This continual indraught into the Mediterranean appears to have been a vexed question among the navigators and philosophers even of those times. Dr. Smith alludes to several hypotheses which had been invented to solve these phenomena, such as subterraneous vents, cavities, exhalation by the sun’s beams, &c., and then offers his *conjecture*, which, in his own words, is, “that there is an under current, by which as great a quantity of water is carried out as comes flowing in. To confirm which, besides what I have said above about the difference of tides in the offing and at the shore in the Downs, which necessarily supposes an under current, I shall present you with an instance of the like nature in the Baltic Sound, as I received it from an able seaman, who was at the making of the trial. He told me that, being there in one of the king’s frigates, they went with their pinnace into the mid stream, and were carried violently by the current; that, soon after this, they sunk a bucket with a heavy cannon ball to a certain depth of water, which gave a check to the boat’s motion; and, sinking it still lower and lower, the boat was driven ahead to the windward against the upper current: the current aloft, as he added, not being over four or five fathoms deep, and that the lower the bucket was let fall, they found the under current the stronger.”

<sup>1</sup> § 401.



CHAPTER  
VII.  
—

her cargo of brandy and oil, arose on the shore near Tanager, which is at least four leagues to the westward of the place where she sunk, and directly against the strength of the current, which has persuaded many men that there is a recurrency in the deep water in the middle of the Gut that sets outward to the grand ocean, which this accident very much demonstrates; and, possibly, a great part of the water which runs into the Straits returns that way, and along the two coasts before mentioned; otherwise, this ship must, of course, have been driven towards Ceuta, and so upward. The water in the Gut must be very deep, several of the commanders of our ships of war having attempted to sound it with the longest lines they could contrive, but could never find any bottom."

§ 425 In 1828, Dr. Wollaston, in a paper before the Philosophical Society, stated that he found the specific gravity of a specimen of sea water, from a depth of six hundred and seventy fathoms, fifty miles within the Straits, to have a "density exceeding that of distilled water by more than four times the usual excess, and accordingly leaves, upon evaporation, more than four times the usual quantity of saline residuum. Hence it is clear that an under current outward of such denser water, if of equal breadth and depth with the current inward near the surface, would carry out as much salt below as is brought in above, although it moved with less than one-fourth part of the velocity, and would thus prevent a perpetual increase of saltness in the Mediterranean Sea beyond that existing in the Atlantic."

Dr. Wollaston's observations on density.

§ 426 The doctor obtained this specimen of sea water from Captain, now Admiral Smyth, of the English navy, who



had collected it for Dr. Marcet. Dr. Marcet died before receiving it, and it had remained in the admiral's hands some time before it came into those of Wollaston.

CHAPTER  
VII.

It may, therefore, have lost something by evaporation; § 427 for it is difficult to conceive that all the river water, and three-fourths of the sea water which runs into the Mediterranean, is evaporated from it, leaving a brine for the under current having four times as much salt as the water at the surface of the sea usually contains. Very recently, M. Coupvent des Bois is said to have shown, by actual observation, the existence of an outer and under current from the Mediterranean.

Observation of M. Coupvent des Bois.

However that may be, these facts, and the statements § 428 of the Secretary of the Geographical Society of Bombay,<sup>1</sup> seem to leave no room to doubt as to the existence of an under current both from the Red Sea and Mediterranean, and as to the cause of the surface current which flows into them. I think it a matter of demonstration. It is accounted for<sup>2</sup> by the salts of the sea.

Facts leave no doubt as to the existence of an under current.

Writers whose opinions are entitled to great respect § 429 differ with me as to the conclusiveness of this demonstration. Among these writers are Admiral Smyth, of the British navy, and Sir Charles Lyell, who also differ with each other. In 1820, Dr. Marcet, being then engaged in studying the chemical composition of sea water, the admiral, with his usual alacrity for doing "a kind turn," undertook to collect for the doctor specimens of Mediterranean water from various depths, especially in and about the Straits of Gibraltar. Among these was the one<sup>3</sup> taken fifty miles within the Straits from the depth of six hundred and seventy fathoms (four thousand and twenty

Difference of opinion in regard to it.

Specimens of water collected by Admiral Smyth.

<sup>1</sup> § 421.

<sup>2</sup> § 413.

<sup>3</sup> § 425.

CHAPTER  
VII.

feet), which, being four times saltier than common sea water, left, as we have just seen,<sup>1</sup> no doubt in the mind of Dr. Wollaston as to the existence of this under current of brine.

§ 430  
Depth in  
the Straits.

But the indefatigable admiral, in the course of his celebrated survey of the Mediterranean, discovered that, while inside of the Straits the depth was upwards of nine hundred fathoms, yet in the Straits themselves the depth across the shoalest section is not more than one hundred and sixty\* fathoms.

Sir Charles  
Lyell's de-  
ductions.

“Such being the case, we can now prove,” exclaims Sir Charles Lyell, “that the vast amount of salt brought into the Mediterranean *does not* pass out again by the Straits; for it appears by Captain Smyth’s soundings, which Dr. Wollaston had not seen, that between the Capes of Trafalgar and Spartel, which are twenty-two miles apart, and where the Straits are shallowest, the deepest part, which is on the side of Cape Spartel, is only two hundred and twenty fathoms. † It is therefore evident, that if water sinks in certain parts of the Mediterranean, in consequence of the increase of its specific gravity, to greater depths than two hundred and twenty fathoms, it can never flow out again into the Atlantic, since it must be stopped by the submarine barrier which crosses the shallowest part of the Straits of Gibraltar.” ‡

§ 431  
His rea-  
soning not  
conclusive

According to this reasoning, all the cavities, the hollows and the valleys at the bottom of the sea, especially in the trade-wind region, where evaporation is so constant and great, ought to be salting up or filling up with brine.

\* “The Mediterranean.”

† One hundred and sixty. Smyth.

‡ Lyell. *Principles of Geology*, p. 334-5, ninth edition. London, 1853.<sup>1</sup> § 425.

Is it probable that such a process is actually going on? CHAPTER  
VII.  
No.

According to this reasoning, the water at the bottom § 432  
of the great American lakes ought to be salt, for the What  
would be  
the effects  
on the  
great  
American  
lakes if  
this rea-  
soning  
were cor-  
rect. rivers and the rains, it is admitted, bring salts from the  
land continually and empty them into the sea. It is  
also admitted that the great lakes would from this cause  
be salt, if they had no sea drainage. The Niagara river  
passes these river salts from the upper lakes into Ontario,  
and the St. Lawrence conveys them thence to the sea.  
Now the basins or bottoms of all these upper lakes are  
far below the *top* of the rock over which the Niagara  
pitches its flood. And, were the position assumed by  
this writer correct, namely, that if the water in any of  
these lakes should, in consequence of its specific gravity,  
once sink below the level of the shoals in the rivers and  
straits which connect them, it never could flow out again,  
and consequently must remain there for ever\*—were this  
principle physically correct, would not the water at the  
bottom of the lakes gradually have received salt sufficient,  
during the countless ages that they have been sending it  
off to the sea, to make this everlastingly pent-up water  
briny, or at least quite different in its constituents from  
that of the surface? We may presume that the water  
at the bottom of every extensive and quiet sheet of  
water, whether salt or fresh, is at the bottom by reason  
of specific gravity; but that it does not remain there for  
ever we have abundant proof. If so, the Niagara River  
would be fed by Lake Erie only from that layer of water  
which is above the level of the top of the rock at the

---

\* See paragraph quoted (p. 178) from "Lyell's Principles of Geology."

CHAPTER  
VII.

Falls. Consequently, wherever the breadth of that river is no greater than it is at the Falls, we should have a current as rapid as it is at the moment of passing the top of the rock to make the leap. To see that such is not the way of Nature, we have but to look at any common mill pond when the water is running over the dam. The current in the pond that feeds the overflow is scarcely perceptible, for "still water runs deep." Moreover, we know it is not such a skimming current as the geologist would make, which runs from one lake to another; for, wherever above the Niagara Falls the water is deep, there we are sure to find the current sluggish in comparison with the rate it assumes as it approaches the Falls; and it is sluggish in deep places, rapid in shallow ones, because it is fed from below. The common "wastes" in our canals teach us this fact.

Assumption on which Sir Charles Lyell's opinion was founded.

Rate at which the bar of the Mississippi travels out to sea.

§ 433 The reasoning of this celebrated geologist appears to be founded upon the assumption that when water, in consequence of its specific gravity, once sinks below the bottom of a current where it is shallowest, there is no force of traction in fluids, nor any other power, which can draw this heavy water up again. If such were the case, we could not have deep water immediately inside of the bars which obstruct the passage of the great rivers into the sea. Thus the bar at the mouth of the Mississippi, with only fifteen feet of water on it, is estimated to travel out to sea at rates varying from one hundred to twenty yards a year.

§ 434 In the place where that bar was when it was one thousand yards nearer to New Orleans than it now is, whether it were fifteen years ago or a century ago, with

only fifteen or sixteen feet of water on it, we have now four or five times that depth. As new bars were successively formed seaward from the old, what dug up the sediment which formed the old, and lifted it up from where specific gravity had placed it, and carried it out to sea over a barrier not more than a few feet from the surface? Indeed, Sir Charles himself makes this majestic stream to tear up its own bottom to depths far below the top of the bar at its mouth. He describes the Mississippi as a river having nearly a uniform breadth to the distance of two thousand miles from the sea.\* He makes it cut a bed for itself out of the soil, which is heavier than Admiral Smyth's deep sea water, to the depth of more than two hundred feet† below the top of the bar which obstructs its entrance into the sea. Could not the same power which scoops out this solid matter for the Mississippi, draw the brine up from the pool in the Mediterranean, and pass it out across the barrier in the Straits?

CHAPTER  
VII.  
New bars  
formed.

The *traction* of locomotives on rail-roads, and the force of that traction, is well understood. Now, have not currents in the deep sea power derived from some such force? Suppose this under current from the Mediterranean to extend one hundred and sixty fathoms down, so as to chafe the barrier across the Straits. Upon the bottom of this current, then, there is a pressure of more than fifty atmospheres. Have we not here a source of

§ 435  
Force of  
traction on  
rail-roads.  
May not  
deep-sea  
currents  
have  
power  
derived  
from a  
like force.

\* "From near its mouth at the Balize, a steamboat may ascend for two thousand miles with scarcely any perceptible difference in the width of the river."—*Lyell*, p. 263.

† "The Mississippi is continually shifting its course in the great alluvial plain, cutting frequently to the depth of one hundred, and even sometimes to the depth of two hundred and fifty feet."—*Lyell*, p. 273.

CHAPTER  
VII.

power that would be capable of drawing up, by almost an insensibly slow motion, water from almost any depth? At any rate, it appears that the effect of currents by *traction*, or friction, or whatever force, does extend far below the level of their beds in shallow places. Were it not so—were the brine not drawn out again—it would be easy to prove that this indraught into the Mediterranean has taken, even during the period assigned by Sir Charles to the formation of the Delta of the Mississippi—one of the newest formations—salt enough to fill up the whole basin of the Mediterranean with crystals. Admiral Smyth brought up bottom with his briny sample of deep sea water (six hundred and seventy fathoms), but no salt crystals.

§ 436 The gallant admiral—appearing to withhold his assent both from Dr. Wollaston in his conclusions as to this under current, and from the geologist in his inferences as to the effect of the barrier in the Straits—suggests the probability that, in sounding for the heavy specimen of sea water, he struck a brine spring. But the specimen, according to analysis, was of sea water, and how did a brine spring of sea water get under the sea but through the process of evaporation on the surface, or by parting with a portion of its fresh water in some other way?

§ 437 If we admit the principle assumed by Sir Charles Lyell, that water from the great pools and basins of the sea can never ascend to cross the ridges which form these pools and basins, then the harmonies of the sea are gone, and we are forced to conclude they never existed. Every particle of water that sinks below a submarine ridge is, *ipso facto*, by his reasoning, stricken from the channels

Admiral  
Smyth's  
suggestion

If Sir  
Charles  
Lyell's  
principle  
be admit-  
ted, the  
harmonies  
of the sea  
are gone.



of circulation, to become thenceforward for ever motionless matter. The consequence would be "cold obstruction" in the depths of the sea, and a system of circulation between different seas of the waters only that float above the shoalest reefs and barriers. I do not believe in the existence of any such imperfect terrestrial mechanism, or in any such failures of design. To my mind, the proofs—the theoretical proofs—the proofs derived exclusively from reason and analogy—are as clear in favour of this under current from the Mediterranean as they were in favour of the existence of Leverrier's planet before it was seen through the telescope at Berlin.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
—

Author's  
opinion.

Now suppose, as Sir Charles Lyell maintains, that none of these vast quantities of salt which this surface current takes into the Mediterranean find their way out again. It would not be difficult to show, even to the satisfaction of that eminent geologist, that this indraught conveys salt away from the Atlantic faster than all the *fresh-water* rivers empty fresh supplies of salt into the ocean. Now, besides this drain, vast quantities of salts are extracted from sea water for madrepores, coral reefs, shell banks, and marl beds; and by such reasoning as this, which is perfectly sound and good, we establish the existence of this under current, or else we are forced to the very unphilosophical conclusion that the sea must be losing its salts, and becoming less and less briny.

Salt is  
extracted  
from sea-  
water for  
the forma-  
tion of  
shells,  
corals, &c

THE CURRENTS OF THE INDIAN OCEAN.—By carefully examining the physical features of this sea,<sup>1</sup> and studying its conditions, we are led to look for warm currents that have their genesis in this ocean, and that carry from it volumes of overheated water, probably exceeding in

Warm cur-  
rents in  
Indian  
Ocean.

<sup>1</sup> Plates VIII and IX.

CHAPTER  
VII.

quantity many times that which is discharged by the Gulf Stream from its fountains (Plate VI.).

§ 440 The Atlantic Ocean is open at the north, but tropical countries bound the Indian Ocean in that direction. The waters of this ocean are hotter than those of the Caribbean Sea, and the evaporating force there<sup>1</sup> is much greater. That it is greater we might, without observation, infer<sup>2</sup> from the fact of a higher temperature and a greater amount of precipitation on the neighbouring shores.<sup>2</sup> These two facts, taken together, tend, it would seem, to show that large currents of warm water have their genesis in the Indian Ocean. One of them is the well-known Mozambique current, called at the Cape of Good Hope the Lagullas current.

Mozambique current.

§ 441 Another of these currents makes its escape through the Straits of Malacca, and, being joined by other warm streams from the Java and China Seas, flows out into the Pacific, like another Gulf Stream, between the Philippines and the shores of Asia. Thence it attempts the great circle route<sup>3</sup> for the Aleutian Islands, tempering climates, and losing itself in the sea on its route toward the north-west coast of America.

Another current escapes through the Straits of Malacca

§ 442 Between the physical features of this current and the Gulf Stream of the Atlantic there are several points of resemblance. Sumatra and Malacca correspond to Florida and Cuba; Borneo to the Bahammas, with the Old Providence Channel to the south, and the Florida pass to the west. The coasts of China answer to those of the United States, the Philippines to the Bermudas, the Japan Islands to Newfoundland. As with the Gulf Stream, so also here with this China current, there is a counter-current

Points of resemblance between this current and the Gulf Stream.

<sup>1</sup> § 210.

<sup>2</sup> § 202.

<sup>3</sup> § 53.

of cold water between it and the shore. The climates of the Asiatic coast correspond with those of America along the Atlantic, and those of Columbia, Washington, and Vancouver, are duplicates of those of Western Europe and the British Islands; the climate of California (State) resembling that of Spain; the sandy plains and rainless regions of Lower California reminding one of Africa, with its deserts between the same parallels, &c.

CHAPTER  
VII.

Moreover, the North Pacific, like the North Atlantic, is enveloped, where these warm waters go, with mists and fogs, and streaked with *lightning*. The Aleutian Islands are almost as renowned for fogs and mists as are the Grand Banks of Newfoundland.

§ 443  
Fogs and  
mists.

A surface current flows north through Behring's Strait into the Arctic Sea; but in the Atlantic the current is from, not into the Arctic Sea: it flows south on the surface, north below; Behring's Strait being too shallow to admit of mighty under currents, or to permit the introduction from the polar basin of any large icebergs into the Pacific.

§ 444  
Current  
through  
Behring's  
Strait.

Behring's Strait, in geographical position, answers to Davis's Strait in the Atlantic; and Alaska, with its Aleutian chain of islands, to Greenland. But instead of there being to the east of Alaska, as there is to the east of Greenland, an escape into the polar basin for these warm waters of the Pacific, a shore-line intervenes, and turns them down through a sort of North Sea along the western coast of the continent toward Mexico. They appear here as a cold current. The effect of this body of cool water upon the littoral climate of California is very marked. Being cool, it gives freshness and strength

§ 445  
Behring's  
Strait and  
currents  
compared  
with those  
of Davis's  
Strait.

CHAPTER VII. to the sea-breeze of that coast in summer time, when the  
 "cooling sea-breeze" is most grateful.

§ 446 These contrasts show the principal points of resemblance and of difference between the currents and aqueous circulation in the two oceans. The ice-bearing currents of the North Atlantic are not repeated as to volume in the North Pacific, for there is no nursery for icebergs like the frozen ocean and its arms. The seas of Okotsk and Kamschatka alone, and not the frozen seas of the Arctic, cradle the icebergs for the North Pacific.

§ 447 There is, at times at least, another current of warm water from the Indian Ocean. It finds its way south midway between Africa and Australia, and appears to lose itself in a sort of Sargasso Sea, thinly strewed with patches of weed. The whales also<sup>1</sup> give indications of it. Nor need we be surprised at such a vast flow of warm water as these three currents indicate from the Indian Ocean, when we recollect that this ocean<sup>2</sup> is land-locked on the north, and that the temperature of its waters is frequently as high as 90° Fahr.

§ 448 There must, therefore, be immense volumes of water flowing into the Indian Ocean to supply the waste created by these warm currents, and the fifteen or twenty feet of water that observations<sup>3</sup> tell us are yearly carried off from this ocean by evaporation.

§ 449 On either side of this warm current that escapes from the inter-tropical parts of the Indian Ocean,<sup>4</sup> midway between Africa and Australia, an ice-bearing current<sup>5</sup> is found wending its way from the Antarctic regions with supplies of cold water to modify climates, and restore the aqueous equilibrium in that part of the world. The cur-

<sup>1</sup> Plate IX.    <sup>2</sup> § 439.    <sup>3</sup> § 33.    <sup>4</sup> § 447.    <sup>5</sup> Plate IX.

rent that flows up to the west of this weedy sea is the greatest ice-bearer. Its bergs occasionally interfere with vessels bound to Australia by the new route; those of the other seldom. The former sometimes drifts its ice as far north as the parallel of  $40^{\circ}$  south. The Gulf Stream seldom permits them to get so near the equator as that in the North Atlantic, but I have known the ice-bearing current which passes east of Cape Horn into the South Atlantic to convey its bergs as far as the parallel of  $37^{\circ}$  south latitude. This is the nearest approach of icebergs to the equator.

CHAPTER  
VII.Nearest  
approach  
of icebergs  
to equator.

These currents which run out from the inter-tropical basin of that immense sea—Indian Ocean—are active currents. They convey along immense volumes of water containing vast quantities of salt, and we know that sea water enough to convey back equal quantities of salt, and salt to keep up supplies for the outgoing currents, must flow into or return to the inter-tropical regions of the same sea; therefore, if observations were silent upon the subject, reason would teach us to look for currents here that keep in motion immense volumes of water.

§ 450

Indian  
Ocean  
currents.

THE CURRENTS OF THE PACIFIC.—The contrast has been drawn<sup>1</sup> between the China or “Gulf Stream” of the North Pacific, and the Gulf Stream of the North Atlantic. The course of the China Stream has never been satisfactorily traced out. There is<sup>2</sup> along the coast of California and Mexico, a southwardly movement of waters, as there is along the west coast of Africa toward the Cape de Verd Islands.

§ 451

Currents  
of the  
Pacific.China  
Stream.

In the open space west of this southwardly set along § 452

<sup>1</sup> § 442.<sup>2</sup> Plate IX.

CHAPTER  
VII.Pool in  
Pacific  
similar to  
Sargasso  
Sea.

the African coast, there is the famous Sargasso Sea,<sup>1</sup> which is the general receptacle of the drift-wood and sea-weed of the Atlantic. So, in like manner, to the west from California of this other southwardly set, lies the pool into which the drift-wood and sea-weed of the North Pacific are generally gathered, but in small quantities.

§ 453 The natives of the Aleutian Islands, where no trees grow, depend upon the drift-wood cast ashore there for all the timber used in the construction of their boats, fishing-tackle, and household gear. Among this timber, the camphor-tree, and other woods of China and Japan, are said to be often recognised. In this fact we have additional evidence touching this China Stream, as to which<sup>2</sup> but little at best is known. "The Japanese," says Lieutenant Bent,<sup>3</sup> in a paper read before the American Geographical Society, January, 1856, "are well aware of its existence, and have given it the name of 'Kuro-Siwo,' or Black Stream, which is undoubtedly derived from the deep blue colour of its water, when compared with that of the adjacent ocean." From this we may infer<sup>3</sup> that the blue waters of this China Stream also contain more salt than the neighbouring waters of the sea.

Evidence  
regarding  
the China  
Stream.

§ 454 THE COLD CURRENT OF OKOTSK.—Inshore of, but counter to the China current, along the eastern shores of Asia, is found<sup>4</sup> a streak, or layer, or current of cold water answering to that between the Gulf Stream and the American coast. This current, like its fellow in the Atlantic, is not strong enough at all times sensibly to affect the course of navigation; but, like that in the Atlantic, it is the nur-

Cold cur-  
rent of  
Okotsk.

\* Lieutenant Bent was in the Japan Expedition with Commodore Perry, and used the opportunities thus afforded to study the phenomena of this stream.

<sup>1</sup> Plate IX.

<sup>2</sup> § 451.

<sup>3</sup> § 4.

<sup>4</sup> § 442.



sery<sup>1</sup> of most valuable fisheries. The fisheries of Japan are quite as extensive as those of Newfoundland, and the people of each country are indebted for their valuable supplies of excellent fish to the cold waters which the currents of the sea bring down to their shores.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Fisheries  
of Japan.

HUMBOLDT'S CURRENT.—The currents of the Pacific are but little understood. Among those about which most is thought to be known is the Humboldt Current of Peru, which the great man whose name it bears was the first to discover. It has been traced on Plate IX. according to the best information—defective at best—upon the subject. This current is felt as far as the equator, mitigating the rainless climate of Peru as it goes, and making it delightful. The Andes, with their snow-caps, on one side of the narrow Pacific slopes of this inter-tropical republic, and the current from the Antarctic regions on the other, make its climate one of the most remarkable in the world; for, though torrid as to latitude, it is such as to temperature that cloth clothes are seldom felt as oppressive during any time of the year, especially after nightfall.

§ 455  
Humboldt's  
current.

Between Humboldt's Current and the great equatorial flow there is an area which may be called the "desolate region."<sup>2</sup> It was observed that this part of the ocean was rarely visited by the whale, either sperm or right; why, it did not appear; but observations asserted the fact. Formerly, this part of the ocean was seldom whitened by the sails of a ship, or enlivened by the presence of man. Neither the industrial pursuits of the sea nor the highways of commerce called him into it. Now and then a roving cruiser or an enterprising whaleman passed that way; but to all else it was an unfrequented part of the

§ 456  
The  
'desolate  
region.'

<sup>1</sup> § 70.

<sup>2</sup> Plate IX.

CHAPTER  
VII.Sea-birds  
follow  
ship,

ocean, and so remained until the gold-fields of Australia and the guano islands of Peru made it a thoroughfare. All vessels bound from Australia to South America now pass through it, and in the journals of some of them it is described as a region almost void of the signs of life in both sea and air. In the South Pacific Ocean especially, where there is such a wide expanse of water, sea-birds often exhibit a companionship with a vessel, and will follow and keep company with it through storm and calm for weeks together. Even those kinds, as the albatross and Cape pigeon, that delight in the stormy regions of Cape Horn and the inhospitable climates of the Antarctic regions, not unfrequently accompany vessels into the perpetual summer of the tropics.

But not in  
this region

The sea-birds that join the ship as she clears Australia will, it is said, follow her to this region, and then disappear. Even the chirp of the stormy-petrel ceases to be heard here, and the sea itself is said to be singularly barren of "moving creatures that have life."

§ 457

A warm  
current  
discovered  
flowing  
from the  
inter-tro-  
pical re-  
gions of  
the Pacific.

I have, I believe, discovered the existence of a warm current from the inter-tropical regions of the Pacific, midway between the American coast and the shore-lines of Australia. This region affords an immense surface for evaporation. No rivers empty into it; the annual fall of rain, except in the "Equatorial Doldrums," is small, and the evaporation is all that both the north-east and the south-east trade-winds can take up and carry off. I have marked on Plate IX. the direction of the supposed warm water current which conducts these overheated and briny waters from the tropics in mid ocean to the extra-tropical regions where precipitation is in excess. Here, being cooled, and agitated, and mixed up with waters that are less salt, these over-heated and over-salted

waters from the tropics may be replenished and restored to their rounds in the wonderful system of oceanic circulation.

CHAPTER  
VII.

There are also about the equator in this ocean some curious currents which I do not understand, and as to which observations are not sufficient yet to afford the proper explanation or description. There are many of them, some of which, at times, run with great force. On a voyage from the Society to the Sandwich Islands, I encountered one running at the rate of ninety-six miles a day.

§ 458  
Curious  
currents,  
not under-  
stood.

And what else should we expect in this ocean but a system of currents and counter-currents apparently the most uncertain and complicated? The Pacific Ocean and the Indian Ocean may, in the view we are about to take, be considered as one sheet of water. This sheet of water covers an area quite equal in extent to one half of that embraced by the whole surface of the earth; and, according to Alexander Keith Johnston, who has thus stated it in the new edition of his splendid Physical Atlas, the total annual fall of rain on the earth's surface is one hundred and eighty-six thousand, two hundred and forty cubic imperial miles. Not less than three-fourths of the vapour which makes this rain comes from this waste of waters; but supposing that only half of this quantity, *i. e.*, ninety-three thousand, one hundred and twenty cubic miles of rain falls upon this sea, and that that much, at least, is taken up from it again as vapour, this would give two hundred and fifty-five cubic miles as the quantity of water which is daily lifted up and poured back again into this expanse. It is taken up at one place and rained down at another, and in this place, therefore, we have

§ 459  
Complicated  
system  
of currents

Causes of  
such.

CHAPTER VII. agencies for multitudes of partial and conflicting currents, all, in their set and strength, apparently as uncertain as the winds.

§ 460 The better to appreciate the operation of such agencies in producing currents in the sea, now here, now there, first this way, and then that, let us, by way of illustration, imagine a district of two hundred and fifty-five square miles in extent to be set apart, in the midst of the Pacific Ocean, as the scene of operations for one day. We must now conceive a machine capable of pumping up, in the twenty-four hours, all the water to the depth of one mile in this district. The machine must not only pump up and bear off this immense quantity of water, but it must discharge it again into the sea on the same day, but at some other place. Now here is a force for creating currents that is equivalent in its results to the effects that would be produced by bailing up, in twenty-four hours, two hundred and fifty-five cubic miles of water from one part of the Pacific Ocean, and emptying it out again upon another part. The currents that would be created by such an operation would overwhelm navigation, and desolate the sea; and, happily for the human race, the great atmospherical machine which actually does perform every day, on the average, all this lifting up, transporting, and letting down of water upon the face of the grand ocean, does not confine itself to an area of two hundred and fifty-five square miles, but to an area three hundred thousand times as great; yet, nevertheless, the same quantity of water is kept in motion, and the currents, in the aggregate, transport as much water to restore the equilibrium as they would

Atmospherical agency.

have to do were all the disturbance to take place upon our hypothetical area of one mile deep over the space of two hundred and fifty-five square miles. Now, when we come to recollect that evaporation is lifting up, that the winds are transporting, and that the clouds are letting down every day actually such a body of water, we are reminded that it is done by little and little at a place, and by hair's breadths at a time, not by parallelopipedons one mile thick—that the evaporation is most rapid and the rains most copious, not always at the same place, but now here, now there. We thus see actually existing in nature a force perhaps quite sufficient to give rise to just such a system of currents as that which mariners find in the Pacific—currents which appear to rise in mid ocean, run at unequal rates, sometimes east, sometimes west, but which always lose themselves where they rise, namely, in mid ocean.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
—Conclud-  
ing obser-  
vations.

UNDER CURRENTS.—Lieutenant J. C. Walsh, in the U. S. schooner "Taney," and Lieutenant S. P. Lee, in the U. S. brig "Dolphin," both, while they were carrying on a system of observations in connection with the WIND AND CURRENT CHARTS, had their attention directed to the subject of submarine currents.

§ 461

Under  
currents.

They made some interesting experiments upon the subject. A block of wood was loaded to sinking, and, by means of a fishing-line or a bit of twine, let down to the depth of one hundred or five hundred fathoms, at the will of the experimenter. A small barrel as a float, just sufficient to keep the block from sinking farther, was then tied to the line, and the whole let go from the boat.

§ 462

Experi-  
ment.

CHAPTER  
VII.§ 463  
Surprising  
result.

To use their own expressions, "It was wonderful, indeed, to see this *barrega* move off, against wind, and sea, and surface current, at the rate of over one knot an hour, as was generally the case, and on one occasion as much as  $1\frac{3}{4}$  knots. The men in the boat could not repress exclamations of surprise, for it really appeared as if some monster of the deep had hold of the weight below, and was walking off with it."\* Both officers and men were amazed at the sight.

§ 464  
Experiments in  
deep-sea  
soundings.

The experiments in deep-sea soundings have also thrown much light upon the subject of under currents. There is reason to believe that they exist in all, or almost all parts of the deep sea, for never in any instance yet has the deep-sea line ceased to run out, even after the plummet had reached the bottom.

§ 465  
Sounding-  
lines  
broken.

If the line be held fast in the boat, it invariably parts, showing, when two or three miles of it are out, that the under-currents are sweeping against the bight of it with what seamen call a *swigging force*, that no sounding twine has yet proved strong enough to withstand.

§ 466  
Lieutenant Park-  
er's ex-  
periment.

Lieutenant J. P. Parker of the United States frigate "Congress," attempted, in 1852, a deep-sea sounding off the coast of South America. He was engaged with the experiment eight or nine hours, during which time a line nearly ten miles long was paid out. Night coming on, he had to part the line (which he did simply by attempting to haul it in) and return on board. Examination proved that the ocean there, instead of being over ten miles in depth, was not over three, and that the line was swept out by the force of one or more under currents.

\* Lieutenant Walsh.



But in what direction these currents were running is not known.

CHAPTER  
VII.

It may, therefore, without doing any violence to the rules of philosophical investigation, be conjectured, that the equilibrium of all the seas is preserved, to a greater or less extent, by this system of currents and counter-currents at and below the surface.

§ 467

Conjecture regarding equilibrium of all seas.

If we except the tides, and the partial currents of the sea, such as those that may be created by the wind, we may lay it down as a rule<sup>1</sup> that all the currents of the ocean owe their origin to the difference of specific gravity between sea water at one place and sea water at another; for wherever there is such a difference, whether it be owing to difference of temperature or to difference of saltness, &c., it is a difference that disturbs equilibrium, and currents are the consequence. The heavier water goes toward the lighter, and the lighter whence the heavier comes; for two fluids differing in specific gravity,<sup>2</sup> and standing at the same level, can no more balance each other than unequal weights in opposite scales. It is immaterial, as before stated, whether this difference of specific gravity be caused by temperature, by the matter held in solution, or by any other thing; the effect is the same, namely, a current.

Rule laid down, that ocean currents owe their origin to difference of specific gravity of sea-water at different places.

That the sea, in all parts, holds in solution the same kind of solid matter; that its waters in this place, where it never rains, are not salter than the strongest brine; and that in another place, where the rain is incessant, they are not entirely without salt, may be taken as evidence in proof of a system of currents or of circulation in the sea, by which its waters are shaken up and kept

§ 468

Proofs that waters of the sea are shaken up and mixed

<sup>1</sup> § 31.

<sup>2</sup> § 36.

CHAPTER  
VII.

Every  
current  
has its  
counter  
current.

mixed together as though they were in a phial. Moreover, we may lay it down as a law in the system of oceanic circulation, that every current in the sea has its counter current; in other words, that the currents of the sea are, like the nerves of the human system, arranged in pairs; for wherever one current is found carrying off water from this or that part of the sea, to the same part must some other current convey an equal volume of water, or else the first would, in the course of time, cease for the want of water to supply it.

## § 469

Currents  
of Atlantic

Equatorial  
current.

Brazil  
current.

CURRENTS OF THE ATLANTIC.—The principal currents of the Atlantic have been described in the chapter on the Gulf Stream. Besides this, its eddies and its offsets, are the equatorial current (Plate VI.), and the St. Roque or Brazil current. Their fountain-head is the same. It is in the warm waters about the equator, between Africa and America. The former, receiving the Amazon and the Oronoco as tributaries by the way, flows into the Caribbean Sea, and becomes, with the waters<sup>1</sup> in which the vapours of the trade-winds leave their salts, the feeder of the Gulf Stream. The Brazil current, coming from the same fountain, is supposed to be divided by Cape St. Roque, one branch going to the south under this name,<sup>2</sup> the other to the westward. This last has been a great bugbear to navigators, principally on account of the difficulties which a few dull vessels falling to leeward of St. Roque have found in beating up against it. It was said to have caused the loss of some English transports in the last century, which fell to leeward of the Cape on a voyage to the other hemisphere; and navigators, accordingly, were advised to shun it as a danger.

<sup>1</sup> § 34.

<sup>2</sup> Plate IX.

This current has been an object of special investigation during my researches connected with the Wind and Current Charts, and the result has satisfied me that it is neither a dangerous nor a constant current, notwithstanding older writers. Horsburgh, in his East India Directory, cautions navigators against it; and Keith Johnston, in his grand Physical Atlas, published in 1848, thus speaks of it:—

“This current greatly impedes the progress of those vessels which cross the equator west of 23° west longitude, impelling them beyond Cape St. Roque, when they are drawn toward the northern coast of Brazil, and cannot regain their course till after weeks or months of delay and exertion.”

So far from this being the case, my researches abundantly prove that vessels which cross the equator five hundred miles to the west of longitude 23° have no difficulty on account of this current in clearing that cape. I receive almost daily the abstract logs of vessels that cross the equator west of 30° west, and in three days from that crossing they are generally clear of that cape. A few of them report the current in their favour; most of them experience no current at all; but, now and then, some do find a current setting to the northward and westward, and operating against them at the rate of twenty miles a day. The intertropical regions of the Atlantic, like those of the other oceans,<sup>1</sup> abound with conflicting currents, which no researches yet have enabled the mariner to unravel so that he may at all times know where they are and tell how they run, in order that he may be certain of their help when favourable, or sure of avoiding them if adverse.

CHAPTER  
VII.§ 470  
This current specially investigatedExtract  
from Physical Atlas

§ 471

Author's opinion in regard to it.

Currents in the inter-tropical regions of Atlantic

<sup>1</sup> § 455.

CHAPTER  
VII.§ 472  
Under  
currents  
probably  
help to  
preserve  
equili-  
brium of  
Atlantic.

I may here remark, that there seems to be a larger flow of Polar waters into the Atlantic than of other waters from it, and I cannot account for the preservation of the equilibrium of this ocean by any other hypothesis than that which calls in the aid of under currents. They, I have no doubt, bear an important part in the system of oceanic circulation.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE OPEN SEA IN THE ARCTIC OCEAN.

The Habit of Whalemen, § 473.—Right Whales cannot cross the Equator, 475.  
 —An Under Current into the Polar Basin, 478.—Indications of a Warm Climate, 481.—De Haven's Water Sky, 482.—The open Sea of Dr. Kane, 484.—Drift of an abandoned Ship, 487.

It is the custom among whalers to have their harpoons marked with date and the name of the ship; and Dr. Scoresby, in his work on Arctic voyages, mentions several instances of whales that have been taken near the Behring's Strait side with harpoons in them bearing the stamp of ships that were known to cruise on the Baffin's Bay side of the American continent; and as, in one or two instances, a very short time had elapsed between the date of capture in the Pacific and the date when the fish must have been struck on the Atlantic side, it was argued, therefore, that there was a north-west passage by which the whales passed from one side to the other, since the stricken animal could not have had the harpoon in him long enough to admit of a passage around either Cape Horn or the Cape of Good Hope.

CHAPTER  
VIII.

§ 473

Custom  
among  
whales.Whales, it  
is argued,  
have proved  
existence of a  
north-west  
passage.

The whale-fishing is, among the industrial pursuits of the sea, one of no little importance; and when the system of investigation out of which the "wind and current charts" have grown was commenced, the haunts of this animal did not escape attention or examination. The log-books of whalers were collected in great numbers, and patiently examined, co-ordinated, and discussed, in order to find out what parts of the ocean are frequented

§ 474

Whale-  
fishing  
subser-  
vient to  
scientific  
investiga-  
tion of the  
sea.

CHAPTER VIII. by this kind of whale, what parts by that, and what parts  
 --- by neither.<sup>1</sup>

§ 475 Log-books containing the records by different ships for  
 hundreds of thousands of days were examined, and the  
 observations in them co-ordinated for this chart. And  
 this investigation, as Plate IX. shows, led to the discovery  
 that the tropical regions of the ocean are to the right  
 whale as a sea of fire, through which he cannot pass, and  
 into which he never enters. The fact was also brought  
 out that the same kind of whale that is found off the  
 shores of Greenland, in Baffin's Bay, &c., is found also in  
 the North Pacific, and about Behring's Strait, and that  
 the right whale of the northern hemisphere is a different  
 animal from that of the southern.

Facts dis-  
 covered  
 concern-  
 ing whales

Proof of  
 existence  
 of open  
 water, at  
 times,  
 through  
 the Arctic  
 Sea;

§ 476 Thus the fact was established that the harpooned whales  
 did not pass around Cape Horn or the Cape of Good  
 Hope, for they were of the class that could not cross the  
 equator. In this way we were furnished with circum-  
 stantial evidence affording the most irrefragable proof that  
 there is, at times at least, open water communication  
 through the Arctic Sea from one side of the continent to  
 the other, for it is known that the whales cannot travel  
 under the ice for such a great distance as is that from  
 one side of this continent to the other.

§ 477 But this did not prove the existence of an open sea  
 there; it only established the existence—the occasional  
 existence, if you please—of a channel through which  
 whales had passed. Therefore we felt bound to introduce  
 other evidence before we could expect the reader to admit  
 our proof, and to believe with us in the existence of an  
 open sea in the Arctic Ocean.

But not a  
 sufficient  
 proof of an  
 open sea.

<sup>1</sup> See Plate IX.



There is an under current setting from the Atlantic through Davis's Strait into the Arctic Ocean, and there is a surface current setting out. Observations have pointed out the existence of this under current there, for navigators tell of immense icebergs which they have seen drifting rapidly to the north, and against a strong surface current. These icebergs were high above the water, and their depth below, supposing them to be parallelopipeds, was seven times greater than their height above. No doubt they were drifted by a powerful under current.

Now this under current comes from the south, where it is warm, and the temperature of its waters is perhaps not below  $32^{\circ}$ ; at any rate, they are comparatively warm. There must be a place somewhere in the Arctic seas where this under current ceases to flow north, and begins to flow south as a surface current; for the surface current, though its waters are mixed with the fresh waters of the rivers and of precipitation in the Polar basin, nevertheless bears out vast quantities of salt, which is furnished neither by the rivers nor the rains.

These salts are supplied by the under current; for as much salt as one current brings in, other currents must take out, else the Polar basin would become a basin of salt; and where the under current transfers its waters to the surface, there is, it is supposed, a basin in which the waters, as they rise to the surface, are at  $30^{\circ}$ , or whatever be the temperature of the under current, which we know must be above the freezing point, for the current is of water in a fluid, not in a solid state.

An arrangement in nature, by which a basin of considerable area in the frozen ocean could be supplied by

CHAPTER  
VIII.§ 478  
Currents  
through  
Davis's  
Strait.

§ 479

Place in  
Arctic seas  
where  
under cur-  
rent ceases  
to flow.Salt sup-  
plied by  
under  
current.

§ 480

CHAPTER  
VIII.

—

water coming in at the bottom and rising up at the top, with a temperature not below 30°, or even 28°—the freezing point of sea water—would go far to mitigate the climate in the regions round about.

§ 481 And that there is a warmer climate somewhere in that inhospitable sea, the observations of many of the explorers who have visited it indicate. Its existence may be inferred also from the well known fact that the birds and animals are found at certain seasons migrating to the north, evidently in search of milder climates. The instincts of these dumb creatures are unerring, and we can imagine no mitigation of the climate in that direction, unless it arise from the proximity or the presence there of a large body of open water. It is another furnace<sup>1</sup> in the beautiful economy of Nature for tempering climates there.

A warm climate exists somewhere in Arctic Ocean.

Proved by birds.

§ 482 Relying upon a process of reasoning like this, and the deductions flowing therefrom, Lieutenant De Haven, when he went in command of the American expedition in search of Sir John Franklin and his companions, was told, in his letter of instructions, to look, when he should get well up into Wellington Channel, for an open sea to the northward and westward. He looked, and saw in that direction a "water sky." Captain Penny afterward went there, found open water, and sailed upon it.

Instructions to Lieutenant De Haven.

§ 483 The open sea in the Arctic Ocean is probably not always in the same place, as the Gulf Stream<sup>2</sup> is not always in one place. It probably is always where the waters of the under current are brought to the surface; and this, we may imagine, would depend upon the freedom of ingress for the under current. Its course may,

Open sea in Arctic Ocean not always in same place

<sup>1</sup> § 62.

<sup>2</sup> § 56.

perhaps, be modified more or less by the ice on the surface, by changes, from whatever cause, in the course or velocity of the surface current, for obviously the under current could not bring more water into the frozen ocean than the surface current would carry out again, either as ice or water.

Every winter, an example of how very close warm water in the sea and a very severe climate on the land or the ice may be to each other, is afforded to us in the case of the Gulf Stream and the Labrador-like climate of New England, Nova Scotia, and Newfoundland. In these countries, in winter, the thermometer frequently sinks far below zero, notwithstanding that the tepid waters of the Gulf Stream may be found with their summer temperature within one good day's sail of these very, very cold places.

Dr. Kane reports an open sea north of the parallel of 82°. To reach it, his party crossed a barrier of ice 80 or 100 miles broad. Before gaining this open water, he found the thermometer to show the extreme temperature of—60°. Passing this ice-bound region by travelling north, he stood on the shores of an iceless sea, extending in an unbroken sheet of water as far as the eye could reach toward the pole. Its waves were dashing on the beach with the swell of a boundless ocean. The tides ebbed and flowed in it, and I apprehend that the tidal wave from the Atlantic can no more pass under this icy barrier to be propagated in seas beyond, than the vibrations of a musical string can pass with its notes a fret upon which the musician has placed his finger. The swell of the sea cannot pass wide fields or extensive barriers of

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
—

Close proximity of warm water in the sea and a cold climate on land.

§ 484

Dr. Kane's report of open sea.

Swell of sea cannot pass wide fields of ice.

CHAPTER  
VIII.Inference:  
that most  
of regions  
about the  
pole are  
covered  
with deep  
water.Conjectured  
nursery  
of the  
whale.Character-  
istics of  
Dr. Kane's  
open sea.

ice, for De Haven, during his long imprisonment and drift,<sup>1</sup> found the ice so firm that he observed regularly from an artificial horizon placed upon it, and found the mercury always "perfectly steady." These tides, therefore, must have been born in that cold sea, having their cradle about the North Pole. If these statements and deductions be correct, then we infer that most, if not all the unexplored regions about the pole are covered with deep water; for, were this unexpected area mostly land or shallow water, it could not give birth to regular tides. Indeed, the existence of these tides, with the immense flow and drift which annually take place from the Polar Seas into the Atlantic, suggests many conjectures concerning the condition of these unexplored regions. Whalers have always been puzzled as to the place of breeding for the right whale. It is a cold-water animal, and, following up this train of thought, the question is prompted, Is the nursery for the great whale in this Polar sea, which has been so set about and hemmed in with a hedge of ice, that man may not trespass there? This providential economy is still farther suggestive, prompting us to ask, Whence comes the food for the young whales there? Do the teeming waters of the Gulf Stream<sup>2</sup> convey it there also, and in channels so far down in the depths of the sea that no enemy may waylay and spoil it on the long journey?

§ 485 Seals were sporting and water-fowl feeding in this open sea of Dr. Kane's. Its waves came rolling in at his feet, and dashed with measured tread, like the majestic billows of old ocean, against the shore. Solitude, the cold and boundless expanse, and the mysterious heav-

<sup>1</sup> 530.<sup>2</sup> § 74.

ings of its green waters, lent their charm to the scene. They suggested fancied myths, and kindled in the ardent imagination of the daring mariners many longings.

CHAPTER  
VIII.

The temperature of its waters was only 36°! Such warm water could get there from the south only as a current far down in the depths below. The bottom of the ice of this eighty miles of barrier was no doubt many—perhaps hundreds of feet below the surface level. Under this ice there was also doubtless water above the freezing point.

§ 486  
Its tem-  
perature.

Nor need the presence of warm water within the Arctic circle excite surprise, when we recollect that the cold waters of the frigid zone are transferred to the torrid without changing their temperature perhaps more than 7° or 8° by the way. This transfer of cold waters for a part of the way may take place on the surface, and until the Polar flow<sup>1</sup> dips down and becomes submarine. At any rate, Professor Bache reports that his assistants on the Coast Survey have found water at the bottom of the Gulf Stream, in latitude 25° 30' N., as low in temperature, as 35°. Now, if water flowing out of the Polar basin at the temperature of 28° may, by passing along the secret paths of the sea, reach the Gulf of Mexico in summer at a temperature of only 3° above the freezing point, why may not water, leaving the torrid zone at a temperature of 85°, and travelling by the same hidden ways, reach the frigid zone at the temperature of 36°?

Warm wa-  
ter within  
the Arctic  
circle need  
not excite  
surprise.

Professor  
Bache.

At the very time that the doctor was gazing with longing eyes upon these strange, green waters, there is known to have been a powerful drift setting out from another part of this Polar sea, and carrying with it from

§ 487  
Drift set-  
ting out  
from Arc-  
tic Sea.

<sup>1</sup> § 14.

CHAPTER  
VIII.Effects of  
drift.

its mooring the English exploring ship *Resolute*, which Captain Kellett had abandoned fast bound in the ice several winters before. This drift carried a field of ice, that covered an area not less than 300,000 square miles, through a distance of a thousand miles to the south. The drift of this ship was a repetition of De Haven's celebrated drift;<sup>1</sup> for in each case the ice in which the vessel was fastened floated out and carried the vessel along with it: by which I mean to be understood as wishing to convey the idea that the vessel was not drifted through a line or an opening in the ice, but, remaining fast in the ice, she was carried along with the whole icy field or waste.

§ 488 This field of ice averaged a thickness of not less than seven feet; at least that was the case with De Haven. A field of ice covering to the depth of seven feet an area of 300,000 square miles, would weigh not less than 18,000,000,000 tons. This, then, is the quantity of *solid* matter that is drifted out of the Polar Seas through one opening—Davis' Straits alone—and during a part of the year only. The quantity of water which was required to float and drive this solid matter out was probably many times greater than this. A quantity of water equal in weight to these two masses had to go in. The basin to receive these inflowing waters—that is, the unexplored basin about the North Pole—includes an area of a million and a half square miles; and as the outflowing ice and water are at the surface, the return current must be submarine. A part of the water that it bears probably flows in beneath Dr. Kane's barrier of ice.<sup>2</sup>

Immense  
magnitude  
of currents  
between  
Temperate  
and Polar  
Regions.

These two currents, therefore, it may be perceived, keep in motion between the Temperate and Polar Regions



of the earth a volume of water, in comparison with which CHAPTER  
the mighty Mississippi, in its greatest floods, sinks down VIII. —  
to a mere rill.

On the borders of this ice-bound sea Dr. Kane found § 489  
subsistence for his party—another proof of the high tem- Dr. Kane.  
perature and comparative mildness of its climate.

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE SALTS OF THE SEA.

Why is the Sea Salt? § 491.—An Hypothesis, 494.—The Adaptations of the Sea, 498.—Components of Sea Water everywhere alike, 500.—Proportion of Solid Contents, 502.—The Influence of Wind upon the Circulation of the Sea, 508.—The Influence of Heat, 511.—The Influence of Evaporation, 517.—The Influence of Precipitation, 519.—Under Current from the Mediterranean and Red Sea due to the Salts of, 523.—Space that the Salts of the Sea would occupy in a Solid State, 527.—De Haven's Drift from the Arctic Ocean, 530.—An Under Current flowing into it, 534.—The Water Sky, 540.—Sea Shells, 545.—Their Agency in the System of Oceanic Circulation, 548.—They assist to regulate Climate, 557.—Compensation in the Sea, 563.—Insects of the Sea, 565.—Geological Records concerning the Salts of the Sea, 568.—Light from the Bible, 571.—Whence come the Salts of the Sea? 574.—Professor Chapman's Experiments, 579.

CHAPTER  
IX.

## § 490

Effect of  
the salts of  
the sea  
on equi-  
librium of  
its waters.

IN order to comprehend aright the currents of the sea, and to study with advantage its physical adaptations, it is necessary to understand the effects produced by the salts of the sea upon the equilibrium of its waters; for wherever equilibrium be destroyed, whether in the air or water, it is restored by motion, and motion among fluid particles gives rise to currents, which, in turn, constitute circulation.

This chapter is therefore added as a sort of supplement, which will assist us in elucidating what has been advanced concerning the currents of the sea.

§ 491 The question is often asked, "Why is the sea salt?"

Circulation of  
ocean depends on  
salts of  
sea-water.

I think it can be shown that the circulation of the ocean depends, in a great measure, upon the salts of sea-water; certainly its influences upon climate are greatly extended by reason of its saltiness.

§ 492 As a general rule, the sea is nearly of a uniform degree

of saltness, and the constituents of sea water are as constant in their proportions as are the components of the atmosphere. It is true that we sometimes come across arms of the sea, or places in the ocean, where we find the water more salt or less salt than sea water is generally; but this circumstance is due to local causes of easy explanation. For instance: when we come to an arm of the sea, as the Red Sea,<sup>1</sup> upon which it never rains, and from which the atmosphere is continually abstracting, by evaporation, fresh water from the salt, we may naturally expect to find a greater proportion of salt in the sea water that remains than we do near the mouth of some great river, as the Amazon, or in the regions of constant precipitation, or other parts where it rains more than it evaporates. Therefore we do not find sea water from all parts of the ocean actually of the same degree of saltness; yet we do find, as in the case of the Red Sea, sea water that is continually giving off to evaporation fresh water in large quantities; nevertheless, for such water there is a degree, and a very moderate degree, of saltness which is a maximum; and we moreover find that, though the constituents of sea water, like those of the atmosphere, are not for every place invariably the same as to their proportions, yet they are the same, or nearly the same, as to their character.

When, therefore, we take into consideration the fact that, as a general rule, sea water is, with the exceptions above stated, everywhere and always the same, and that it can only be made so by being well shaken together, we find grounds on which to base the conjecture that the ocean has its system of circulation, which is probably as

## CHAPTER IX.

As a general rule the sea is uniformly salt

Exceptions.

§ 493

Grounds for believing that the ocean has a system of circulation.

<sup>1</sup> § 404.

CHAPTER complete, and not less wonderful, than is the circulation of  
IX. blood through the human system.

§ 494 In order to investigate the currents of the sea, and to  
Hypothe- catch a glimpse of the laws by which the circulation of  
sis neces- its waters is governed, hypothesis, in the present meagre  
sary to progress state of absolute knowledge with regard to the subject,  
in investi- seems to be as necessary to progress as is a corner-stone  
gation. to a building. To make progress with such investiga-  
tions, we want something to build upon. In the absence  
of facts, we are sometimes permitted to suppose them :  
only, in supposing them, we should take not only the  
possible, but the probable ; and in making the selection  
of the various hypotheses which are suggested, we are  
bound to prefer that one by which the greatest number  
of phenomena can be reconciled. When we have found,  
tried, and offered such an one, we are entitled to claim  
for it a respectful consideration at least, until we discover  
it leading us into some palpable absurdity, or until some  
other hypothesis be suggested which will account equally  
as well, but for a greater number of phenomena. Then,  
as honest searchers after truth, we should be ready to give  
up the former, adopt the latter, and hold it until some  
other better than either of the two be offered.

§ 495 With this understanding, I venture to offer an hypo-  
thesis with regard to the agency of the salts or solid  
Hypothe- matter of the sea in imparting dynamical force to the  
sis with re- waters of the ocean, and to suggest that one of the pur-  
gard to the poses which, in the grand design, it was probably intended  
salts of sea to accomplish by having the sea salt, and not fresh, was  
imparting dynamical force to its to impart to its waters the forces and powers necessary to  
waters. make their circulation complete.

In the first place, we do but conjecture when we say that there is a set of currents in the sea by which its waters are conveyed from place to place with regularity, certainty, and order. But this conjecture appears to be founded on reason; for if we take a sample of water which shall fairly represent, in the proportion of its constituents, the average water of the Pacific Ocean, and analyze it, and if we do the same by a similar sample from the Atlantic, we shall find the analysis of the one to resemble that of the other as closely as though the two samples had been taken from the same bottle after having been well shaken. How, then, shall we account for this, unless upon the supposition that sea water from one part of the world is, in the process of time, brought into contact and mixed up with sea water from all other parts of the world? Agents, therefore, it would seem, are at work, which shake up the waters of the sea as though they were in a bottle, and which, in the course of time, mingle those that are in one part of the ocean with those that are in another as thoroughly and completely as it is possible for man to do in a vessel of his own construction.

This fact, as to uniformity of components, appears to call for the hypothesis that sea water, which to-day is in one part of the ocean, will, in the process of time, be found in another part the most remote. It must, therefore, be carried about by currents; and as these currents have their offices to perform in the terrestrial economy, they probably do not flow by chance, but in obedience to physical laws; they no doubt, therefore, maintain the order and preserve the harmony which characterize every department of God's handiwork, upon the threshold of

CHAPTER  
IX.

§ 496

Conjectured currents, having regularity, certainty, and order.

Waters in all parts of the sea mixed together.

§ 497

Sea-water carried about by currents.

CHAPTER IX. which man has as yet been permitted to stand, to observe,  
 — or to comprehend.

§ 498 Nay, having reached this threshold, and taken a survey of the surrounding ocean, we are ready to assert, with all the confidence of knowledge, that the sea has a system of circulation for its waters. We rest this assertion upon our faith in the physical adaptations with which the sea is invested. Take, for example, the coral islands, reefs, beds, and atolls, with which the Pacific Ocean is studded and garnished. They were built up of materials which a certain kind of insect quarried from the sea water. The currents of the sea ministered to this little insect—they were its *hod carriers*. When fresh supplies of solid matter were wanted for the coral rock upon which the foundations of the Polynesian Islands were laid, these *hod carriers* brought them in unfailling streams of sea water, loaded with food and building materials for the coralline. The obedient currents thread the widest and the deepest seas. They never fail to come at the right time, nor refuse to go; for, unless the currents of the sea were employed to carry off from this insect the waters that have been emptied by it of their lime, and to bring to it others charged with more, it is evident the little creature would have perished for want of food long before its task was half completed. But for currents, it would have been impaled in a nook of the very drop of water in which it was spawned; for it would soon have secreted the lime contained in this drop of water, and then, without the ministering aid of currents to bring it more, it would have perished for the want of food for itself and materials for its edifice: and thus, but for the benign

The sea has a system of circulation.

Coral islands.

Effects of currents in conveying lime.



currents which took this exhausted water away, there we perceive this emptied drop would have remained, not only as the grave of the little architect, but as a monument in attestation of the shocking monstrosity that there had been a failure in the sublime system of terrestrial adaptations—that the sea had not been adapted by its Creator to the well-being of all its inhabitants. Now we do know that its adaptations are suited to all the wants of every one of its inhabitants—to the wants of the coral insect as well as to those of the whale. Hence we say *we know* that the sea has its system of circulation, for it transports materials for the coral rock from one part of the world to another ; its currents receive them from the rivers, and hand them over to the little mason for the structure of the most stupendous works of solid masonry that man has ever seen—the coral islands of the sea.

Thus, by a process of reasoning which is perfectly philosophical, we are irresistibly led to conjecture that there are regular and certain, if not appointed channels, through which the water travels from one part of the ocean to another ; and that those channels belong to an arrangement which may make, and, for aught we know to the contrary, which does make, the system of oceanic circulation as complete, as perfect, and as harmonious, as is that of the atmosphere or the blood. Every drop of water in the sea is as obedient to law and order as are the members of the heavenly host in the remotest regions of space. For when the morning stars sang together in the almighty anthem, “the waves, also, lifted up their voice ;” and doubtless, therefore, the harmony in the depths of the ocean is in tune with that which comes from the spheres

§ 499  
Irresistible conclusion.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—  
Author's  
opinion.

above. We cannot doubt it: for, were it not so, were there no channels of circulation from one ocean to another, and if, accordingly, the waters of the Atlantic were confined to the Atlantic, or if the waters of the arms and seas of the Atlantic were confined to those arms and seas, and had no channels of circulation by which they could pass out into the ocean, and traverse different latitudes and climates—if this were so, then the machinery of the ocean would be as incomplete as that of a watch without a balance-wheel; for the waters of these arms and seas would, as to their constituents, become, in the process of time, very different from the sea waters in other parts of the world, and their inhabitants would perish for the want of brine of the right strength, or of water of the right temperature.

§ 500  
Illustra-  
tion of the  
Red Sea.

For instance, take the Red Sea and the Mediterranean by way of illustration. Upon the Red Sea there is no precipitation; it is a rainless region; not a river runs down to it, not a brook empties into it: therefore there is no process by which the salts and washings of the earth, which are taken up and held in solution by rain or river water, can be brought down into the Red Sea. Its salts come from the ocean, and the air takes up from it, in the process of evaporation, fresh water, leaving behind, for the currents to carry away, the solid matter which, as sea water, it held in solution.

§ 501  
Illustra-  
tion of the  
Mediterranean.

On the other hand, numerous rivers discharge themselves into the Mediterranean, some of which are filtered through soils and among minerals which yield one kind of salt or soluble matter; another river runs through a limestone or volcanic region of country, and brings down

in solution solid matter—it may be common salt, sulphate or carbonate of lime, magnesia, soda, potash, or iron—either or all may be in its waters. Still, the constituents of sea water from the Mediterranean, and of sea water from the Red Sea, are quite the same. But the waters of the Dead Sea have no connection with those of the ocean; they are cut off from its channels of circulation, and are, therefore, quite different, as to their components, from any arm, frith, or gulf of the broad ocean. Its inhabitants are also different from those of the high seas.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—

“The solid constituents of sea water amount to about three and a half per cent. of its weight, or nearly half an ounce to the pound. Its saltness may be considered as a necessary result of the present order of things. Rivers which are constantly flowing into the ocean contain salts, varying from ten to fifty, and even one hundred grains per gallon. They are chiefly common salt, sulphate and carbonate of lime, magnesia,\* soda, potash, and iron; and these are found to constitute the distinguishing characteristics of sea water. The water which evaporates from the sea is nearly pure, containing but very minute traces of salts. Falling as rain upon the land, it washes the soil, percolates through the rocky layers, and becomes charged with saline substances, which are borne sea-ward by the returning currents. The ocean, therefore, is the great depository of everything that water can dissolve and carry down from the surface of the continents; and, as there is no channel for their escape, they, of course,

§ 502

Solid constituents of sea-water.

Water evaporated from sea nearly pure.

---

\* It is the chloride of magnesium which gives that damp, sticky feeling to the clothes of sailors that are washed or wetted with salt water.

CHAPTER  
IX.

consequently accumulate.\* They would constantly accumulate, as this very shrewd author remarks, were it not for the shells and insects of the sea and other agents mentioned.

§ 503 “The case of the sea,” says Fownier, “is but a magnified representation of what occurs in every lake into which rivers flow, but from which there is no outlet except by evaporation. Such a lake is invariably a salt lake. It is impossible that it can be otherwise; and it is curious to observe that this condition disappears when an artificial outlet is produced for the waters.”

Fownier's  
Remarks  
on the sea.

§ 504 How, therefore, shall we account for this sameness of compound, this structure of coral,<sup>1</sup> this stability as to animal life in the sea, but upon the supposition of a general system of circulation in the ocean, by which, in process of time, water from one part is conveyed to another part the most remote, and by which a general interchange and commingling of the waters take place? In like manner, the constituents of the atmosphere, whether it be analyzed at the equator or the poles, are the same. By cutting off and shutting up from the general channels of circulation any portion of sea water, as in the Dead Sea; or of atmospheric air, as in mines or wells; we can easily fill either with gases or other matter that shall very much affect its character, or alter the proportion of its ingredients, and affect the health of its inhabitants: but in the open sea or open air, no.

Constitu-  
ents of at-  
mosphere  
the same  
every-  
where.

§ 505 The principal agents that are supposed to be concerned in giving circulation to the atmosphere, and in preserving the ratio among its components, are, light, heat, electricity,

Agents  
concerned  
in giving  
circulation  
to the at-  
mosphere.

\* Youman's Chemistry.

<sup>1</sup> § 493.

and magnetism. But with regard to the sea, it is not known what office is performed by electricity and magnetism, in giving dynamical force to its waters in their system of circulation. The chief motive power from which marine currents derive their velocity has been ascribed to heat; but a close study of the agents concerned has suggested that an important, nay, a powerful and active agency, in the system of oceanic circulation, is derived from the salts of the sea water, through the instrumentality of the winds, of marine plants and animals. These give the ocean great dynamical force.

CHAPTER  
IX.

Salts, through instrumentality of winds, marine animals, and plants, give dynamical force to the ocean.

Let us, for the sake of illustrating and explaining this force, suppose the sea in all its parts—in its depths and at the surface, at the equator and about the poles—to be of one uniform temperature, and to be all of fresh water; and, moreover, that there be neither wind to disturb its surface, nor tides nor rains to raise the level in this part, or to depress it in that. In this case, there would be nothing of heat to disturb its equilibrium, and there would be no motive power<sup>1</sup> to beget currents, or to set the water in motion by reason of the difference of level or of specific gravity due to water at different densities and temperatures.

§ 506

Illustration.

Now let us suppose the winds, for the first time since the creation, to commence to blow upon this quiescent sea, and to ruffle its surface; they, by their force, would create partial surface currents, and thus agitating the waters, as they do, but only for a little way below the surface, would give rise to a feeble and partial aqueous circulation in the supposed sea of fresh water.

§ 507

Winds.

This, then, is one of the sources whence power is given § 508

---

<sup>1</sup> § 490.

CHAPTER IX. to the system of oceanic circulation ; but though a feeble  
 — one, it is one which exists in reality, and, therefore, need  
 not be regarded as hypothetical.

§ 509 Let us next call in evaporation and precipitation,  
 Evapora- with heat and cold—more powerful agents. Suppose  
 tion and precipitation—heat the evaporation to commence from this imaginary fresh  
 and cold. water ocean, and to go on as it does from the seas as  
 they are. In those regions, as in the trade-wind  
 regions, where evaporation is in excess of precipitation,<sup>1</sup>  
 the general level of this supposed sea would be altered,  
 and, immediately, as much water as is carried off by  
 evaporation would commence to flow in from north and  
 south toward the trade-wind or evaporating region, to  
 restore the level.

§ 510 On the other hand, the winds have taken this vapour,  
 Evapora- borne it off to the extra-tropical regions, and precipitated  
 tion. it, we will suppose, where precipitation is in excess of  
 evaporation. Here is another alteration of sea level  
 by elevation instead of by depression ; and hence we  
 have the motive power for a surface-current from each  
 pole toward the equator, the object of which is only  
 to supply the demand for evaporation in the trade-wind  
 regions—demand for evaporation being taken here to  
 mean the difference between evaporation and precipi-  
 tation for any part of the sea.

§ 511 Now, imagine this sea of uniform temperature<sup>2</sup> to be  
 Heat and suddenly stricken with the invisible wand of heat and  
 cold. cold, and its waters brought to the various temperatures  
 at which they at this instant are standing. This change  
 of temperature would make a change of specific gravity  
 in the waters, which would destroy the equilibrium of

<sup>1</sup> § 178.

<sup>2</sup> § 506.



the whole ocean, upon which a set of currents would immediately commence to flow, namely, a current of cold and heavy water to the warm, and a current of warm and lighter to the cold.

CHAPTER  
IX.

The motive power of these would be difference of specific gravity due to difference of temperature in fresh water.

Motive  
power.

We have now traced<sup>1</sup> the effect of two agents, which, § 512 in a sea of fresh water, would tend to create currents, and to beget a system of aqueous circulation; but a set of currents and a system of circulation which, it is readily perceived, would be quite feeble in comparison with those which we find in the salt sea. One of these agents would be employed<sup>2</sup> in restoring, by means of one or more Polar currents, the water that is taken from one part of the ocean by evaporation, and deposited in another by precipitation. The other agent would be employed in restoring, by the force's due difference of specific gravity,<sup>3</sup> the equilibrium, which has been disturbed by heating, and of course expanding, the waters of the torrid zone on the one hand, and by cooling, and consequently contracting, those of the frigid zone on the other. This agency would, if it were not modified by others, find expression in a system of currents and counter currents, or rather in a set of surface currents, of warm and light water, from the equator toward the poles; and in another set of under currents of cooler, dense, and heavy water, from the poles toward the equator.

Employment of the two agents tending to create currents, if the water were fresh.

Such, keeping out of view the influence of the winds, § 513 which we may suppose would be the same whether the sea were salt or fresh, would be the system of oceanic

<sup>1</sup> § 507 and § 511.

<sup>2</sup> 509.

<sup>3</sup> § 511.

CHAPTER IX. circulation were the sea all of fresh water. But fresh water, in cooling, begins to expand near the temperature of  $40^{\circ}$ , and expands more and more till it reaches the freezing point, and ceases to be fluid. This law of expansion by cooling would impart a peculiar feature to the system of oceanic circulation were the waters all fresh, which it is not necessary to notice further than to say it cannot exist in seas of salt water, for salt water<sup>1</sup> contracts as its temperature is lowered to its freezing point. Hence, in consequence of its salts, changes of temperature derive increased power to disturb the equilibrium of the ocean.

§ 514 If this train of reasoning be good, we may infer that, in a system of oceanic circulation, the dynamical force to be derived from difference of temperature, where the waters are all fresh, would be quite feeble; and that, were the sea not salt, we should probably have no such current in it as the Gulf Stream.

§ 515 So far we have been reasoning hypothetically, to show what would be the chief agents, exclusive of the winds, in disturbing the equilibrium of the ocean, were its waters fresh, and not salt. And whatever disturbs equilibrium there may be regarded as the *primum mobile* in any system of marine currents.

§ 516 Let us now proceed another step in the process of explaining and illustrating the effect of the salts of the sea in the system of oceanic circulation. To this end, let us suppose the imaginary ocean of fresh water suddenly to become that which we have, namely, an ocean of salt water, which contracts as its temperature is lowered<sup>2</sup> till it reaches  $28^{\circ}$  or thereabout.

<sup>1</sup> § 31.

<sup>2</sup> § 513.

Let evaporation now commence in the trade-wind region, as it was supposed to do<sup>1</sup> in the case of the fresh water seas, and as it actually goes on in nature—and what takes place? Why, a lowering of the sea-level, as before. But as the vapour of salt water is fresh, or nearly so, fresh water only is taken up from the ocean; that which remains behind is therefore more salt. Thus, while the level is lowered in the *salt* sea, the equilibrium is destroyed because of the saltiness of the water; for the water that remains after the evaporation takes place is, on account of the solid matter held in solution, specifically heavier than it was before any portion of it was converted into vapour.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
§ 517

Evapora-  
tion of salt  
water.

The vapour is taken from the surface water; the surface water thereby becomes more salt, and, under certain conditions, heavier. When it becomes heavier, it sinks; and hence we have, due to the salts of the sea, a vertical circulation, namely, a descent of heavier—because saltier and cooler—water from the surface, and an ascent of water that is lighter—because it is not so salt—from the depths below.

§ 518  
Effect.

This vapour, then, which is taken up from the evaporating regions,<sup>2</sup> is carried by the winds through their channels of circulation, and poured back into the ocean where the regions of precipitation are; and by the regions of precipitation I mean those parts of the ocean, as in the Polar basins, where the ocean receives more fresh water, in the shape of rain, snow, &c., than it returns to the atmosphere in the shape of vapour.

§ 519  
Vapour  
carried  
away by  
winds, and  
poured  
back into  
other parts  
of the sea.

In the precipitating regions, therefore, the level is destroyed, as before explained, by elevation; and in the

§ 520  
Cause of  
surface  
currents

<sup>1</sup> § 509.

<sup>2</sup> § 179.

CHAPTER IX. evaporating regions, by depression; which, as already stated,<sup>1</sup> gives rise to a system of surface currents, moved by gravity alone, from the poles toward the equator.

§ 521 But we are now considering the effects of evaporation and precipitation in giving impulse to the circulation of the ocean where its waters are *salt*. The fresh water that has been taken from the evaporating regions is deposited upon those of precipitation; which, for illustration merely, we will locate in the north Polar basin. Among the sources of supply of fresh water for this basin, we must include not only the precipitation which takes place over the basin itself, but also the amount of fresh water discharged into it by the rivers of the great hydrographical basins of Arctic Europe, Asia, and America.

§ 522 This fresh water, being emptied into the Polar Sea and agitated by the winds, becomes mixed with the salt; but as the agitation of the sea by the winds is supposed to extend to no great depth,<sup>2</sup> it is only the upper layer of salt water, and that to a moderate depth, which becomes mixed with the fresh. The specific gravity of this upper layer, therefore, is diminished just as much as the specific gravity of the sea water in the evaporating regions was increased. And thus we have a surface current of saltish water from the poles toward the equator, and an under current of water salter and heavier from the equator to the poles. This under current supplies, in a great measure, the salt which the upper current, freighted with fresh water from the clouds and rivers, carries back.

§ 523 Thus it is to the salts of the sea that we owe that feature in the system of oceanic circulation which causes an under current to flow from the Mediterranean into

Currents of Mediterranean and Red Seas.

<sup>1</sup> § 509.

<sup>2</sup> § 507.

the Atlantic,<sup>1</sup> and another<sup>2</sup> from the Red Sea into the Indian Ocean. And it is evident, since neither of these seas is filling up, that just as much, or nearly just as much salt as the under current brings out, just so much the upper currents carry in.

CHAPTER  
IX.

We now begin to perceive what a powerful impulse is derived from the salts of the sea in giving effective and active circulation to its waters. § 524

Hence we infer that the currents of the sea, by reason of its saltness, attain their maximum of volume and velocity. Hence, too, we infer that the transportation of warm water from the equator toward the frozen regions of the poles, and of cold water from the frigid toward the torrid zone, is facilitated; and consequently here, in the saltness of the sea, have we not an agent by which climates are mitigated—by which they are softened and rendered much more salubrious than it would be possible for them to be were the waters of the ocean deprived of their property of saltness? Inferences, § 525

This property of saltness imparts to the waters of the ocean another peculiarity, by which the sea is still better adapted for the regulation of climates, and it is this: By evaporating fresh water from the salt in the tropics, the surface water becomes heavier than the average of sea water.<sup>3</sup> This heavy water is also warm water; it sinks, and being a good retainer, but a bad conductor of heat, this warm water is employed in transporting through under currents heat for the mitigation of climates in far-distant regions. Now this also is a property which a sea of fresh water could not have. Let the winds take up their vapour from a sheet of fresh water, and that at

Another peculiarity imparted to the waters of the sea by their salts. § 526

<sup>1</sup> § 425.

<sup>2</sup> § 413.

<sup>3</sup> § 181.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
Specific  
gravity.

the bottom is not disturbed, for there is no change in the specific gravity of that at the surface, by which that at the bottom may be brought to the top; but let evaporation go on, though never so gently, from salt water, and the specific gravity of that at the top will soon be so changed as to bring that from the very lowest depths of the sea to the top.

§ 527

Quantity  
of salt in  
the sea.

If all the salts of the sea were precipitated and spread out equally over the northern half of this continent, it would, it has been computed, cover the ground one mile deep. What force could move such a mass of matter on the dry land? Yet the machinery of the ocean, of which it forms a part, is so wisely, marvellously, and wonderfully compensated, that the most gentle breeze that plays on its bosom, the tiniest insect that secretes solid matter for its sea-shell, is capable of putting it instantly in motion. Still, when solidified and placed in a heap, all the mechanical contrivances of man, aided by the tremendous forces of all the steam and water power of the world, could not move even so much as an inch in centuries of time this matter, which the sunbeam, the zephyr, and the infusorial insect, keep in perpetual motion and activity.

Remarks  
on the in-  
significant  
power of  
man.

§ 528

Further in-  
ference.

If these inferences as to the influence of the salts upon the currents of the sea be correct, the same cause which produces an under current from the Mediterranean and an under current from the Red Sea into the ocean, should produce an under current from the ocean into the north Polar basin. In each case, the hypothesis with regard to the part performed by the salt, in giving vigour to the system of oceanic circulation, requires that, counter to the



surface current of water with less salt, there should be an under current of water with more salt in it. CHAPTER  
IX.

That such is the case with regard both to the Mediterranean and the Red Sea has been amply shown in other parts of this work,<sup>1</sup> and abundantly proved by other observers. § 529

That there is a constant current setting out of the Arctic Ocean through Davis' and other straits thereabout, which connect it with the Atlantic Ocean, is generally admitted. Lieutenant De Haven, United States navy, when in command of the American expedition in search of Sir John Franklin, was frozen up with his vessels in mid-channel near Wellington Straits; and during the nine months that he was so frozen, his vessels, like H. B. M. ship Resolute,<sup>2</sup> each holding its place in the ice, were drifted with it bodily for more than a thousand miles toward the south. § 530  
A constant  
current  
setting out  
of the  
Arctic  
Ocean.

The ice in which they were bound was of sea water, and the currents by which they were drifted were of sea water; only, it may be supposed, the latter were not quite so salt as the sea water generally is. The same phenomenon is repeated in the Baltic, where<sup>3</sup> an under current of salt water runs in, and an upper current of brackish water<sup>4</sup> runs out. § 531  
Ice.  
  
Currents  
in the  
Baltic.

Then, since there is salt always flowing out of the Polar basin, we infer that there must be salt always flowing into it, else it would either become fresh, or the whole Atlantic Ocean would be finally filled up with salt. § 532  
Inference

It might be supposed, were there no evidence to the contrary, that this salt was supplied to the Polar Seas from the Atlantic around North Cape, and from the § 533

<sup>1</sup> § 523.<sup>2</sup> § 487.<sup>3</sup> § 423.<sup>4</sup> § 37.

CHAPTER  
IX.

Pacific through Behring's Straits, and through no other channels.

§ 534 But, fortunately, Arctic voyagers, who have cruised in the direction of Davis' Straits, have afforded us, by their observations,<sup>1</sup> proof positive as to the fact of this other source for supplying the Polar Seas with salt. They tell us of an under current setting from the Atlantic toward the Polar basin. They describe huge icebergs, with tops high up in the air, and of course the bases of which extend far down into the depths of the ocean, ripping and tearing their way with terrific force and awful violence through the surface ice, or against a surface current, on their way into the Polar basin.

Proof af-  
forded by  
Arctic  
voyagers.

§ 535 Passed Midshipman S. P. Griffin, who commanded the brig Rescue in the American searching expedition after Sir John Franklin, informs me that, on one occasion the two vessels were endeavouring, when in Baffin's Bay, to warp up to the northward against a strong surface current, which of course was setting to the south; and that while so engaged, an iceberg, with its top many feet above the water, came "drifting up" from the south, and passed by them "like a shot." Although they were stemming a surface current against both the berg and themselves, such was the force and velocity of the under current, that it carried the berg to the northward faster than the crew could warp the vessel against a surface but counter current.

Midship-  
man  
Griffin.

Iceberg  
drifting  
against the  
current.

§ 536 Captain Duncan, master of the English whale-ship Dundee, says, at page 76 of his interesting little narrative:—\*

\* Arctic Regions; Voyage to Davis' Straits, by Dorea Duncan, Master of the Ship Dundee, 1826, 1827.

<sup>1</sup> § 473.

“ *Dec. 18th* [1826]. It was awful to behold the immense icebergs working their way to the north-east from us, and not one drop of water to be seen; they were working themselves right through the middle of the ice.”

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—  
Captain  
Duncan's  
remarks  
on ice-  
bergs.

And again, at page 92, &c. :—

“ *Feb. 23d.* Latitude  $68^{\circ} 37'$  north, longitude about  $63^{\circ}$  west.

“ The dreadful apprehensions that assailed us yesterday, by the near approach of the iceberg, were this day most awfully verified. About three P.M. the iceberg came in contact with our floe, and in less than one minute it broke the ice. We were frozen in quite close to the shore; the floe was shivered to pieces for several miles, causing an explosion like an earthquake, or one hundred pieces of heavy ordnance fired at the same moment. The iceberg, with awful but majestic grandeur (in height and dimensions resembling a vast mountain) came almost up to our stern, and every one expected it would have run over the ship. . . .

Continued

“ The iceberg, as before observed, came up very near to the stern of our ship; the intermediate space between the berg and the vessel was filled with heavy masses of ice, which, though they had been previously broken by the immense weight of the berg, were again formed into a compact body by its pressure. The berg was drifting at the rate of about four knots, and by its force on the mass of ice, was pushing the ship before it, as it appeared, to inevitable destruction.

Continued

“ *Feb. 24th.* The iceberg still in sight, but driving away fast to the north-east.

“ *Feb 25th.* The iceberg that so lately threatened our

CHAPTER  
IX.

destruction had driven completely out of sight to the north-east from us."

§ 537 Author's opinion. Now, then, whence, unless from the difference of specific gravity due sea water of different degrees of saltness and temperature, can we derive a motive power with force sufficient to give such tremendous masses of ice such a velocity?

§ 538 Temperature of under current. What is the temperature of this under current? Be that what it may, it is probably above the freezing point of sea water. Suppose it to be at 32°. Break through the ice in the northern seas, and the temperature of the surface water is always 28°; at least Lieutenant De Haven so found it in his long imprisonment, and it may be supposed that, as it was with him, so it generally is. Assuming, then, the water of the surface current which runs out with the ice to be all at 28°, we observe that it is not unreasonable to suppose that the water of the under current, inasmuch as it comes from the south, and therefore from warmer latitudes, is probably not so cold; and if it be not so cold, its temperature, before it comes out again, must be reduced to 28°, or whatever be the average temperature of the outer but surface current. Dr. Kane found the temperature of the open sea in the Arctic Ocean<sup>1</sup> as high as 36°. Can water flow in the depths below from the mild climate of the temperate zones to the severe climate of the frigid zones without falling below 36°? To what, in the depths of the sea, can a warm current of large volume impart its heat?

Temperature of Arctic Ocean.

§ 539 Moreover, if it be true, as some philosophers have suggested, that there is in the depths of the ocean a floor or plane from the equator to the poles along which the water

<sup>1</sup> § 486.

is of the same temperature all the way, then the question may be asked, Should we not have in the depths of the ocean a sort of isothermal floor, as it were, on the upper side of which all the changes of temperature are due to agents acting from above, and on the lower side of which, the changes, if any, are due to agents acting from below?

CHAPTER  
IX.

Isothermal  
floor in the  
ocean.

This under Polar current water, then, as it rises to the top, and is brought to the surface by the agitation of the sea in the Arctic Regions, gives out its surplus heat and warms the atmosphere there till the temperature of this warm under current water is lowered to the requisite degree for going out on the surface. Hence the water-sky of those regions.

§ 540

Cause of  
the water-  
sky of  
Polar  
regions.

And the heat that it loses in falling from its normal temperature, be that what it may, till it reaches the temperature of  $28^{\circ}$ , is so much caloric set free in the Polar Regions, to temper the air and mitigate the climate there. Now, is not this one of those modifications of climate which may be fairly traced back to the effect of the saltiness of the sea in giving energy to its circulation?

§ 541

Cause of  
modifica-  
tion of  
Polar  
climate.

Moreover, if there be a deep sea in the Polar basin, which serves as a receptacle for the waters brought into it by this under current, which, because it comes from toward the equatorial regions, comes from a milder climate, and is therefore warmer, we can easily imagine why there might be an open sea in the Polar Regions; why Lieutenant De Haven, in his instructions,<sup>1</sup> was directed to look for it; and why both he and Captain Penny, of one of the English searching vessels, and afterward Dr. Kane, found it there.

§ 542

Easy to  
imagine  
why there  
might be  
an open  
sea in  
Polar  
regions.

And in accounting for this polynia, we see that its

§ 543

<sup>1</sup> § 432.

CHAPTER  
IX.

Effects  
produced  
by the  
salts of sea  
on mobili-  
ty and cir-  
culation of  
its waters

existence is not only consistent with the hypothesis with which we set out, touching a perfect system of oceanic circulation, but that it may be ascribed, in a great degree at least, if not wholly, to the effect produced by the salts of the sea upon the mobility and circulation of its waters.

## § 544

Conclud-  
ing re-  
marks.

Here, then, is an office which the sea performs in the economy of the universe by virtue of its saltness, and which it could not perform were its waters altogether fresh. And thus philosophers have a clew placed in their hands which will probably guide them to one of the many hidden reasons that are embraced in the true answer to the question, "Why is the sea salt?"

## § 545

Sea shells.  
Lime em-  
ployed in  
their for-  
mation.

SEA SHELLS.—We find in sea water other matter besides common salt. Lime is dissolved by the rains and the rivers, and emptied in vast quantities into the ocean. Out of it, coral islands and coral reefs of great extent, marl-beds, shell-banks, and infusorial deposits of enormous magnitude, have been constructed by the inhabitants of the deep. These creatures are endowed with the power of secreting, apparently for their own purposes only, solid matter, which the waters of the sea hold in solution. But this power was given to them that they also might fulfil the part assigned them in the economy of the universe. For to them, probably, has been allotted the important office of assisting in giving circulation to the ocean, of helping to regulate the climates of the earth, and of preserving the purity of the sea.

Office of  
the in-  
habitants  
of the  
deep.

## § 546

The better to comprehend how such creatures may influence currents and climates, let us suppose the ocean to be perfectly at rest; that throughout, it is in a state of



complete equilibrium; that, with the exception of those tenants of the deep which have the power of extracting from it the solid matter held in solution, there is no agent in nature capable of disturbing that equilibrium; and that all these fish, &c., have suspended their secretions, in order that this state of a perfect aqueous equilibrium and repose throughout the sea might be attained.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—  
Supposi-  
tion.

In this state of things—the waters of the sea being in perfect equilibrium—a single mollusc or coralline, we will suppose, commences his secretions, and abstracts from the sea water<sup>1</sup> solid matter for his cell. In that act, this animal has destroyed the equilibrium of the whole ocean; for the specific gravity of that portion of water from which this solid matter has been abstracted is altered. Having lost a portion of its solid contents, it has become specifically lighter than it was before; it must, therefore, give place to the pressure which the heavier water exerts to push it aside and to occupy its place, and it must consequently travel about and mingle with the waters of the other parts of the ocean until its proportion of solid matter is returned to it, and until it attains the exact degree of specific gravity due sea water generally.

§ 547  
Effect of  
the opera-  
tions of a  
single  
coralline.

How much solid matter does the whole host of marine plants and animals abstract from sea water daily? Is it a thousand pounds, or a thousand millions of tons? No one can say. But, whatever be its weight, it is so much of the power of gravity applied to the dynamical forces of the ocean. And this power is derived from the salts of the sea, through the agency of sea shells and other marine animals, that of themselves scarcely possess the power of locomotion. Yet they have power to put the

§ 548  
Solid  
matter ab-  
stracted  
from sea  
by marine  
animals.

<sup>1</sup> § 498.

CHAPTER  
IX.

whole sea in motion, from the equator to the poles, and from top to bottom.

Probable  
cause of  
currents in  
the Pacific.

§ 549 Those powerful and strange equatorial currents<sup>1</sup> which navigators tell us they encounter in the Pacific Ocean, to what are they due? Coming from sources unknown, they are lost in the midst of the ocean. They are due, no doubt, to some extent, to the effects of precipitation and evaporation, and the change of heat produced thereby. But we have yet to inquire how far they may be due to the derangement of equilibrium arising from the change of specific gravity caused by the secretions of the myriads of marine animals that are continually at work in those parts of the ocean. These abstract from sea water solid matter enough to build continents of. And also we have to inquire as to the extent to which equilibrium in the sea is disturbed by the salts which evaporation leaves behind.

Principles  
of antago-  
nistic  
forces.

§ 550 Thus, when we consider the salts of the sea in one point of view, we see the winds and the marine animals operating upon the waters, and, in certain parts of the ocean, deriving from the solid contents of the same those very principles of antagonistic forces which hold the earth in its orbit, and preserve the harmonies of the universe.

Dynamical  
forces.

§ 551 In another point of view, we see the sea breeze and the sea shell, in performing their appointed offices, acting so as to give rise to a reciprocating motion in the waters; and thus they impart to the ocean dynamical forces also for its circulation.

The sea  
breeze.

§ 552 The sea breeze plays upon the surface; it converts only fresh water into vapour, and leaves the solid matter behind. The surface water thus becomes specifically heavier,

<sup>1</sup> § 453.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
Its effects  
and counter  
effects

and sinks. On the other hand, the little marine architect below, as he works upon his coral edifice at the bottom, abstracts from the water there a portion of its solid contents; it therefore becomes specifically lighter, and up it goes, ascending to the top with increased velocity, to take the place of the descending column, which, by the action of the winds, has been sent down loaded with fresh food and materials for the busy little mason in the depths below.

Seeing, then, that the inhabitants of the sea, with their powers of secretion, are competent to exercise at least some degree of influence in disturbing equilibrium, are not these creatures entitled to be regarded as agents which have their offices to perform in the system of oceanic circulation, and do not they belong to its physical geography? It is immaterial how great or how small that influence may be supposed to be; for, be it great or small, we may rest assured it is not a chance influence, but it is an influence exercised—if exercised at all—by design, and according to the commandment of Him whose “voice the winds and the sea obey.” Thus God speaks through sea shells to the ocean.

§ 552  
Position  
assigned  
to inhabit-  
ants of the  
sea.

God speaks  
to ocean  
through  
its shells.

It may therefore be supposed that the arrangements in the economy of nature are such as to require that the various kinds of marine animals, whose secretions are calculated to alter the specific gravity of sea water, to destroy its equilibrium, to beget currents in the ocean, and to control its circulation, should be distributed according to order.

§ 553  
Marine  
animals  
distributed  
according  
to order.

Upon this supposition—the like of which nature war- rants throughout her whole domain—we may conceive

§ 554

CHAPTER  
IX.

Marine animals may impress other features on the physical relations of the sea.

how the marine animals of which we have been speaking may impress other features upon the physical relations of the sea, by assisting also to regulate climates and to adjust the temperature of certain latitudes. For instance, let us suppose the waters in a certain part of the torrid zone to be  $90^{\circ}$ , but, by reason of the fresh water which has been taken from them in a state of vapour, and consequently by reason of the proportionate increase of salts, these waters are heavier than waters that may be cooler, but not so salt.<sup>1</sup> This being the case, the tendency would be for this warm, but salt and heavy water, to flow off as an under current towards the Polar or some other regions of lighter water.

## § 555

No coral islands if sea were not salt.

Now, if the sea were not salt, there would be no coral islands to beautify its landscape and give variety to its features; sea shells and marine insects could not operate upon the specific gravity of its waters, nor give diversity to its climates; neither could evaporation give dynamical force to its circulation, and its waters, ceasing to contract as their temperature falls below  $39^{\circ}$ , would give but little impulse to its currents, and thus its circulation would be torpid, and its bosom lack animation.

## § 556

Under current freighted with heat.

This under current may be freighted with heat to temper some hyperborean region or to soften some extra-tropical climate, for we know that such is among the effects of marine currents. At starting, it might have been, if you please, so loaded with solid matter, that, though its temperature were  $90^{\circ}$ , yet, by reason of the quantity of such matter held in solution, its specific gravity might have been greater even than that of extra-tropical sea water generally at  $28^{\circ}$ .

Notwithstanding this, it may be brought into contact, by the way, with those kinds and quantities of marine organisms that shall abstract solid matter enough to reduce its specific gravity, and, instead of leaving it greater than common sea water at  $28^{\circ}$ , make it less than common sea water at  $39^{\circ}$ ; consequently, in such a case, this warm sea water, when it comes to the cold latitudes, would be brought to the surface through the instrumentality of shell-fish, and various other tribes that dwell far down in the depths of the ocean. Thus we perceive that these creatures, though they are regarded as being so low in the scale of creation, may nevertheless be regarded as agents of much importance in the terrestrial economy; for we now comprehend how they are capable of spreading over certain parts of the ocean those benign mantles of warmth which temper the winds, and modify, more or less, all the marine climates of the earth.

The makers of nice astronomical instruments, when they have put the different parts of their machinery together, and set it to work, find, as in the chronometer, for instance, that it is subject in its performance to many irregularities and imperfections; that in one state of things there is expansion, and in another state contraction, among cogs, springs, and wheels, with an increase or diminution of rate. This defect the makers have sought to overcome; and, with a beautiful display of ingenuity, they have attached to the works of the instrument a contrivance which has had the effect of correcting these irregularities, by counteracting the tendency of the instrument to change its performance with the changing influences of temperature.

CHAPTER  
IX.

§ 557

This warm water, when it reaches cold latitudes, would be brought to the surface by shell-fish.

§ 558

Beautiful and simple contrivance to regulate chronometers.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—  
§ 559  
Compen-  
sation.

This contrivance is called a *compensation*; and a chronometer that is well regulated and properly compensated will perform its office with certainty, and preserve its rate under all the vicissitudes of heat and cold to which it may be exposed.

Analogy  
in the  
machinery  
of the uni-  
verse.

§ 560 In the clock-work of the ocean and the machinery of the universe, order and regularity are maintained by a system of compensations. A celestial body, as it revolves around its sun, flies off under the influence of centrifugal force; but immediately the forces of compensation begin to act; the planet is brought back to its elliptical path, and held in the orbit for which its mass, its motions, and its distance, were adjusted. Its compensation is perfect.

Also in the  
machinery  
of the  
ocean.

§ 561 So, too, with the salts and the shells of the sea in the machinery of the ocean; from them are derived principles of compensation the most perfect; through their agency the undue effects of heat and cold, of storm and rain, in disturbing the equilibrium, and producing thereby currents in the sea, are compensated, regulated, and controlled.

Result if  
there were  
no com-  
pensation.

§ 562 The dews, the rains, and the rivers, are continually dissolving certain minerals of the earth, and carrying them off to the sea. This is an accumulative process; and if it were not *compensated*, the sea would finally become, as the Dead Sea is, saturated with salt, and therefore unsuitable for the habitation of many fish of the sea.

Compen-  
sation  
found in  
sea shells  
and the  
works of  
marine in-  
sects.

§ 563 The sea shells and marine insects afford the required *compensation*. They are the conservators of the ocean. As the salts are emptied into the sea, these creatures secrete them again, and pile them up in solid masses, to



serve as the bases of islands and continents, to be in the process of ages upheaved into dry land, and then again dissolved by the dews and rains, and washed by the rivers away into the sea.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—

The question as to whence the salts of the sea were originally derived, of course has not escaped the attention of philosophers.

§ 564  
Sea salts,  
whence  
derived.

I once thought with Darwin and those other philosophers who hold that the sea derived its salts originally from the washings of the rains and rivers. I now question that opinion; for, in the course of the researches connected with the "Wind and Current Charts," I have found evidence, from the sea and in the Bible, which seems to cast doubt upon it. The account given in the first chapter of Genesis, and that contained in the hieroglyphics which are traced by the hand of Nature on the geological column as to the order of creation, are marvelously accordant. The Christian man of science regards them both as true; and he never overlooks the fact that, while they differ in the mode and manner as well as in the things they teach, yet they never conflict; and they contain no evidence going to show that the sea was ever fresh; on the contrary, they both afford circumstantial evidence sufficient for the belief that the sea was salt as far back as the morning of creation, or at least as the evening and the morning of the day when the dry land appeared.

Darwin's  
opinion.

The Bible

The sea  
was salt  
from the  
beginning.

That the rains and the rivers do dissolve salts of various kinds from the rocks and soil, and empty them into the sea, there is no doubt. These salts cannot be evaporated, we know; and we also know that many of the

§ 565  
Salts cannot be  
evaporated.

CHAPTER  
IX.Solids of  
the sea ex-  
tracted by  
other pro-  
cesses than  
evapora-  
tion.

lakes, as the Dead Sea, which receive rivers and have no outlet, are salt. Hence the inference by some philosophers<sup>1</sup> that these inland water-basins received their salts from the washings of the soil; and consequently the conjecture arose that the great sea derived its salts from the same source and by the same process. But, and per contra, though these solid ingredients cannot be taken out of the sea by evaporation, they can be extracted by other processes. We know that the insects of the sea do take out a portion of them; and that the salt ponds and arms which, from time to time in the geological calendar, have been separated from the sea, afford an escape by which the quantity of chloride of sodium in its waters—the most abundant of its solid ingredients—is regulated. The insects of the sea cannot build their structures of this salt, for it would dissolve again, and as fast as they could separate it. But here the ever-ready atmosphere comes into play, and assists the insects in regulating the salts. It cannot take them up from the sea, it is true, but it can take the sea away from them; for it pumps up the water from these pools that have been barred off, transfers it to the clouds, and they deliver it back to the sea as fresh water, leaving the salts it contained in a solid state behind.

§ 566 These are operations that have been going on for ages :  
proof that they are still going on is continually before  
our eyes; for the “hard water” of our fountains, the  
marl-banks of the valleys, the salt-beds of the plains,  
Albion’s chalky cliffs, and the coral islands of the sea, are  
monuments in attestation.

§ 567 There is no proof, nor is there any reason for the belief.

that the sea is growing salter or fresher. Hence we infer that the operations of addition and extraction are reciprocal and equal,—that the effect of rains and rivers in washing down is compensated by the processes of evaporation and secretion in taking out.

If the sea derived its salts originally from the rivers, the geological records of the past would show that river beds were scored out in the crust of our planet before the sea had deposited any of its fossil shells and infusorial remains upon it. If, therefore, we admit the Darwin theory, we must also admit that there was a period when the sea was without salt, and consequently without shells or animals either of the silicious or calcareous kind. If ever there were such a time, it must have been when the rivers were collecting and pouring in the salts which now make the brine of the ocean. But while the palæontological records of the earth, on one hand, afford no evidence of any such fresh-water period, the Mosaic account is far from being negative with its testimony on the other. According to it, we infer that the sea was salt as early, at least, as the fifth day; for it was on that day of creation that the waters were commanded to “bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life.” It is in obedience to that command that the sea now teems with organisms; and it is marvellous how abundantly the obedient waters do bring forth, and how wonderful for variety as well as multitude their progeny is. All who pause to look are astonished to see how the prolific ocean teems and swarms with life. The moving creatures in the sea constitute in their myriads of multitudes one of the “wonders of the deep.”

CHAPTER  
IX.Sea grows  
neither  
salter nor  
fresher.

§ 568

Inference.  
Objections  
to the  
Darwin  
theoryDeductions  
from  
Mosaic ac-  
count.

CHAPTER

IX.

§ 569

Captain  
Foster's  
observa-  
tions.

It is the custom of Captain Foster, of the American ship Garrick, who is one of my most patient of observers, to amuse himself by making drawings in his abstract log of the curious animalculæ which, with the microscope, he finds in the surface water alongside; and though he has been following the sea for many years, he never fails to express his wonder and amazement at the immense numbers of living creatures that the microscope reveals to him in sea water. Hitherto his examinations related only to the surface waters, but in the log now before me he went into the depths, and he was more amazed than ever to see how abundantly the waters even there bring forth.

"Wonders  
of the  
deep."

Animal-  
cule.

"*Jan. 28th, 1855.*—In examining animalculæ in sea water, I have," says he, "heretofore used surface water. This afternoon, after pumping for some time from the stern pump seven feet below the surface, I examined the water, and was surprised to find that the fluid was literally alive with animated matter, embracing beautiful varieties." Of some he says, "Numerous heads, purple, red, and variegated."

§ 570 There is wonderful meaning in that word ABUNDANTLY, as it stands recorded in that Book, and as it is even at this day repeated by the great waters.

§ 571 So far the two records agree; and the evidence is clear that the sea was salt when it received this command. Do they afford any testimony as to its condition previously? Let us examine.

The two  
records  
agree.

On the third day of creation the waters were gathered together unto one place, and the dry land appeared. Before that period, therefore, there were no rivers, and

consequently no washings of brine, by mists, nor dew, nor rains, from the valleys among the hills. The water covered the earth. This is the account of Revelation; and the account which Nature has written, in her own peculiar characters, on the mountain and in the plain, on the rock and in the sea, as to the early condition of our planet, indicates the same. The inscriptions on the geological column tell that there was a period when the solid parts of the earth's crust, which now stand high in the air, were covered by water. The geological evidence that it was so, with perhaps the exception of a solitary mountain peak here and there, is conclusive; and when we come to examine the fossil remains that are buried in the mountains and scattered over the plains, we have as much reason to say that the sea was salt when it covered, or nearly covered, the earth, as the naturalist, when he sees a skull or bone whitening on the wayside, has to say that it was once covered with flesh.

Therefore we have reason for the conjecture, that the sea was salt "in the beginning," when "the waters under heaven were gathered together unto one place," and the dry land first appeared. For, go back as far as we may in the dim records which young Nature has left inscribed upon the geological column of her early processes, and there we find the fossil shell and the remains of marine organisms to inform us that, when the foundations of our mountains were laid with granite, and immediately succeeding that remote period when the primary formations were completed, the sea was, as it is now, salt: for, had it not been salt, whence could those creeping things which fashioned the sea shells that cover the

§ 572  
Conjecture that the sea was salt from the beginning.

Reasons for this.

CHAPTER  
IX.Effects of  
marine  
salts on  
cultiva-  
tion.

tops of the Andes, or those madrepores that strew the earth with solid matter that has been secreted from briny waters, or those infusorial deposits which astound the geologist with their magnitude and extent, or those fossil remains of the sea which have astonished, puzzled, and bewildered man in all ages; whence, had not the sea been salt when its metes and bounds were set, could these creatures have obtained solid matter for their edifices and structures? Much of that part of the earth's crust which man stirs up in cultivation, and which yields him bread, has been made fruitful by these "salts," which all manner of marine insects, aqueous organisms, and sea shells, have secreted from the ocean. Much of this portion of our planet has been filtered through the sea; and its insects and creeping things are doing now precisely what they were set about when the dry land appeared,—namely, preserving the purity of the ocean, and regulating it in the due performance of its great offices. As fast as the rains dissolve the salts of the earth, and send them down through the rivers to the sea, these faithful and everlasting agents of the Creator elaborate them into pearls, shells, corals, and precious things; and so, while they are preserving the sea, they are also embellishing the land, by imparting new adaptations to its soil, fresh beauty and variety to its landscapes.

§ 573 In every department of nature there is to be found this self-adjusting principle, this beautiful and exquisite system of *compensation*, by which the operations of the grand machinery of the universe are maintained in the most perfect order.

Self-ad-  
justing  
principle  
of nature.

§ 574 Whence came the salts of the sea originally, is a ques-



tion which, perhaps, never will be settled satisfactorily to every philosophic mind ; but it is sufficient for the Christian philosopher to recollect that the salts of the sea, like its waters and the granite of the hills, are composed of substances which, when reduced to their simple state, are found, for the most part, to be mere gaseous or volatile matter of some kind or other. Thus we say that granite is generally composed of felspar, mica, and quartz ; yet these three minerals are made of substances more or less volatile in combination with oxygen gas. Iron, of which there is merely a trace, is the only ingredient which, in its uncombined and simple state, is not gaseous or volatile. Now, was the felspar of the granite originally formed in one heap, the mica in another, and the quartz in a third, and then the three brought together by some mighty power, and welded into the granitic rock for the everlasting hills to stand upon ; or were they made into rock as they were formed of the chaotic matter ?

Sea water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen ; and its salts, like the granite, also consist of gases and volatile matters. But whether the constituents of sea water, like those of the primitive rocks, were brought together in the process of formation, and united in combination as we now find them in the ocean, or whether the sea was fresh “ in the beginning,” and became salt by some subsequent process, is not material to our present purpose. Some geologists suppose that in the chalk period, when the ammonites, with their huge chambered shells, lived in the sea, the carbonaceous material required by these creatures for their habitations must have been more abundant in its waters than it now is ; but, though the con-

CHAPTER

IX.

---

 Composition of the salts of the sea.

Supposition regarding the chalk period.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—

stituents of sea water may have varied as to proportions, they probably were never, at least since "its waters commenced to bring forth," widely different from what they now are.

§ 576 It is true, the strange cuttle-fish, with its shell twelve feet in circumference, is no longer found alive in the sea; it died out with the chalk period: but then its companion, the tiny nautilus, remains to tell us that even in that remote period the proportion of salt in sea water was not unsuited to its health; for it and the coral insect have lived through all the changes that our planet has undergone since the sea was inhabited, and they tell us that its waters were salt as far back, at least, as their records extend, for they now build their edifices and make their habitations of the same materials, collected in the same way, that they did then; and had the sea been fresh in the interim, they too would have perished, and their family would have become extinct, like that of the great ammonite, which perhaps ceased to find the climates of the sea, not the proportion of its salts, suited to its well-being.

The cuttle-fish.

The nautilus and coral insect.

§ 577 Did any one, who maintains that the salts of the sea were originally washed down into it by the rivers and the rains, ever take the trouble to compute the quantity of solid matter that the sea holds in solution as salts? Taking the average depth of the ocean at two miles, and its average saltiness at  $3\frac{1}{2}$  per cent., it appears that there is salt enough in the sea to cover to the thickness of one mile an area of seven millions of square miles. Admit a transfer of such a quantity of matter from an average of half a mile above to one below the sea level, and astro-

Computation of solid matter held in solution as salts.

nomers will show, by calculation, that it would alter the length of the day.

CHAPTER  
IX.

These seven millions of cubic miles of crystal salt have not made the sea any fuller. All this solid matter has been received into the interstices of sea water without swelling the mass; for chemists tell us that water is not increased in volume by the salt it dissolves. Here is, therefore, started up before us an economy of space calculated to surprise even the learned author himself of the "Plurality of Worlds."

This does not increase the volume of water.

There has been another question raised which bears upon what has already been said concerning the offices which, in the sublime system of terrestrial arrangements, have been assigned to the salts of the sea.

§ 578

On the 20th of January, 1855, Professor Chapman, of the University College, Toronto, communicated to the Canadian Institute a paper on the "Object of the Salt Condition of the Sea;" which, he maintains, is "*mainly intended to regulate evaporation.*" To establish this hypothesis, he shows, by a simple but carefully conducted set of experiments, that the salter the water, the slower the evaporation from it; and that the evaporation which takes place in twenty-four hours from water about as salt as the average of sea water, is 0.54 per cent. less in quantity than from fresh water.

§ 579

Professor Chapman's theory on the object of the saltiness of the sea.

"This suggestion, and these experiments, give additional interest to our investigations into the manifold and marvellous offices which, in the economy of our planet, have been assigned by the Creator to the salts of the sea. It is difficult to say what, in the divine arrangement, was the *main* object of making the sea salt, and not fresh.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
—

Whether it was to assist in the regulation of climates, or in the circulation of the ocean, or in re-adapting the earth for new conditions, by transferring solid portions of its crust from one part to another, and giving employment to the corallines and insects of the sea in collecting this solid matter into new forms, and presenting it under different climates and conditions; or whether the *main* object was, as the distinguished Professor suggests, to regulate evaporation, it is not necessary now or here to discuss. I think we may regard all the objects of the salts of the sea as *main* objects.

Thoughts  
suggested  
by the Pro-  
fessor's  
theory.

“But we see in the Professor's experiments the dawn of more new beauties, and the appearance of other exquisite compensations, which, in studying the ‘wonders of the deep,’ we have so often paused to contemplate and admire. As the trade-wind region feeds the air with the vapour of fresh water, the process of evaporation is checked, for the water which remains, being salter, parts with its vapour less readily; and thus, by the salts of the sea, floods may be prevented. But again; if the evaporating surface were to grow salter and salter, whence would the winds derive vapour duly to replenish the earth with showers? for the salter the surface, the more scanty the evaporation. Here is compensation, again, the most exquisite; and we perceive how, by reason of the salts of the sea, drought and famine, if not prevented, may be, and probably are, regulated and controlled: for that compensation which assists to regulate the amount of evaporation, is surely concerned in adjusting also the quantity of rain. Were the salts of the sea lighter instead of heavier than the water, they would, as they feed

the winds with moisture for the cloud and the rain, remain at its surface, and become more niggardly in their supplies, and finally, the winds would howl over the sea in very emptiness; and instead of cool and refreshing sea breezes to fan the invalid and nourish the plants, we should have the gentle trade-wind coming from the sea in frightful blasts of parched, and thirsty, and blighting air. But the salts, with their manifold and marvellous adaptations, come in here as a counterpoise, and, as the waters attain a certain degree of saltness, they become too heavy to remain longer in contact with the thirsty trade-winds, and are carried down, because of their salts, into the depths of the ocean; and thus the winds are *dieted* with vapour in due and wholesome quantities.

“In this view of the subject, and for the purpose of carrying on the investigations which Professor Chapman’s interesting paper suggests, observations upon the specific gravity of sea water become still more interesting. It is to be hoped, therefore, that my fellow-labourers at sea will not slight the specific gravity column of the man-of-war abstract log.”—MAURY’S *Sailing Directions*, 7th ed., p. 857.

Value of observations on the specific gravity of sea water.

Thus we behold sea shells and animalculæ in a new light. May we not now cease to regard them as beings which have little or nothing to do in maintaining the harmonies of creation? On the contrary, do we not see in them the principles of the most admirable compensation in the system of oceanic circulation? We may even regard them as regulators, to some extent, of climates in parts of the earth far removed from their presence. There is something suggestive both of the grand and the beau-

§ 580

Uses of shells and animalculæ.

tiful, in the idea that, while the insects of the sea are building up their coral islands in the perpetual summer of the tropics, they are also engaged in dispensing warmth to distant parts of the earth, and in mitigating the severe cold of the Polar winter.

§ 581 Surely an hypothesis which, being followed out, suggests so much design, such perfect order and arrangement, and so many beauties for contemplation and admiration, as does this, which, for the want of a better, I have ventured to offer with regard to the solid matter of the sea water, its salts and its shells—surely such an hypothesis, though it be not based entirely on the results of actual observation, cannot be regarded as wholly vain, or as altogether profitless.



## CHAPTER X.

## THE EQUATORIAL CLOUD-RING.

The "Doldrums," § 583.—Oppressive Weather, 586.—Offices of the Clouds, 587.—Weight for the Wind, 589.—Galileo and the Pump-maker, 590.—Temperature and Pressure under the Cloud-ring, 591.—Its effect upon Climate, 596.—Its Offices, 599.—Whence come the Vapours that form the Cloud-ring? 602.—Its appearance, 605.

SEAFARING people have, as if by common consent, divided the ocean off into regions, and characterized them according to the winds: *e. g.*, there are the "trade-wind regions," the "variables," the "horse latitudes," the "doldrums," &c. The "horse latitudes" are the belts of calms and light airs<sup>1</sup> which border the Polar edge of the north-east trades. They were so called from the circumstance that vessels formerly bound from New England to the West Indies, with a deck-load of horses, were often so delayed in this calm belt of Cancer, that, for the want of water for their animals, they were compelled to throw a portion of them overboard.

CHAPTER

X.

§ 582

The horse latitudes.

The "equatorial doldrums" is another of these calm places.<sup>2</sup> Besides being a region of calms and baffling winds, it is a region noted for its rains and clouds, which make it one of the most oppressive and disagreeable places at sea. The emigrant ships from Europe for Australia have to cross it. They are often baffled in it for two or three weeks; then the children, and the passengers who are of delicate health, suffer most. It is a frightful graveyard on the way-side to that golden land.

§ 583

The doldrums.

Its bad climate.

<sup>1</sup> § 131.<sup>2</sup> § 135.

CHAPTER  
X.  
§ 584

A vessel bound into the southern hemisphere from Europe or America, after clearing the region of variable winds and crossing the "horse latitudes," enters the north-east trades. Here the mariner finds the sky sometimes mottled with clouds, but for the most part clear.

Rise and fall of barometer in the north-east trades.

Here, too, he finds his barometer rising and falling under the ebb and flow of a regular atmospherical tide, which gives a high and low barometer every day with such regularity, that the hour, within a few minutes, may be told by it. The rise and fall of this tide, measured by the barometer, amounts to about one-tenth (0.1) of an inch, and it occurs daily, and everywhere between the tropics; the maximum about 10h. 30m. A.M., the minimum between 4h. and 5h. P.M., with a second maximum and minimum about 10 P.M. and 5 A.M.\* The diurnal variation of the needle changes also with the turning of these invisible tides. Continuing his course toward the equinoctial line, the navigator observes his thermometer to rise higher and higher as he approaches it; at last, entering the region of equatorial calms and rains, he feels

Rise of thermometer on approaching the equator.

Oppressive weather in the doldrums.

the weather to become singularly close and oppressive; he discovers here that the elasticity of feeling which he breathed from the trade-wind air has forsaken him; he has entered the doldrums, and is under the "cloud-ring."

§ 585 Escaping from this gloomy region, and entering the south-east trades beyond, his spirits revive, and he turns to his log-book to see what changes are recorded there. He is surprised to find that, notwithstanding the oppressive weather of the rainy latitudes, both his thermometer

---

\* See paper on Meteorological Observations in India, by Colonel Sykes, Philosophical Transactions for 1850, part ii., page 297.

and barometer stood, while in them, lower than in the clear weather on either side of them; that just before entering, and just before leaving the rainy parallels, the mercury of the thermometer and barometer invariably stands higher than it does when within them, even though they include the equator. In crossing the equatorial doldrums, he has passed a ring of clouds that encircles the earth.

I find in the journal of the late Commodore Arthur Sinclair, kept on board the United States frigate Congress, during a cruise to South America in 1817-18, a picture of the weather under this *cloud-ring* that is singularly graphic and striking. He encountered it in the month of January 1818, between the parallel of 4° north and the equator, and between the meridians of 19° and 23° west. He says of it:—

“This is certainly one of the most unpleasant regions in our globe. A dense, close atmosphere, except for a few hours after a thunder-storm, during which time torrents of rain fall, when the air becomes a little refreshed; but a hot, glowing sun soon heats it again, and but for your awnings, and the little air put in circulation by the continual flapping of the ship’s sails, it would be almost insufferable. No person who has not crossed this region can form an adequate idea of its unpleasant effects. You feel a degree of lassitude unconquerable, which not even the sea-bathing, which everywhere else proves so salutary and renovating, can dispel. Except when in actual danger of shipwreck, I never spent twelve more disagreeable days in the professional part of my life than in these calm latitudes.

CHAPTER  
X.

“I crossed the line on the 17th of January, at eight A.M., in longitude  $21^{\circ} 20'$ , and soon found I had surmounted all the difficulties consequent to that event; that the breeze continued to freshen and draw round to the south south-east, bringing with it a clear sky and most heavenly temperature, renovating and refreshing beyond description. Nothing was now to be seen but cheerful countenances, exchanged as by enchantment from that sleepy sluggishness which had borne us all down for the last two weeks.”

§ 587

Various  
offices per-  
formed by  
clouds.

One need not go to sea to perceive the grand work which the clouds perform in collecting moisture from the crystal vaults of the sky, in sprinkling it upon the fields, and making the hills glad with showers of rain. Winter and summer, “the clouds drop fatness upon the earth.” This part of their office is obvious to all, and I do not propose to consider it now. But the sailor at sea observes phenomena and witnesses operations in the terrestrial economy which tell him that, in the beautiful and exquisite adjustments of the grand machinery of the atmosphere, the clouds have other important offices to perform besides those merely of dispensing showers, of producing the rains, and of weaving mantles of snow for the protection of our fields in winter. As important as are these offices, the philosophical mariner, as he changes his sky, is reminded that the clouds have commandments to fulfil, which, though less obvious, are not therefore the less benign in their influences, or the less worthy of his notice. He beholds them at work in moderating the extremes of heat and cold, and in mitigating climates. At one time they spread themselves out; they cover the earth as with

They moderate extremes of heat and cold.

a mantle ; they prevent radiation from its crust, and keep it warm. At another time, they interpose between it and the sun ; they screen it from his scorching rays, and protect the tender plants from his heat, the land from the drought ; or, like a garment, they overshadow the sea, defending its waters from the intense forces of evaporation. Having performed these offices for one place, they are evaporated, and given up to the sunbeam and the winds again, to be borne on their wings away to other places which stand in need of like offices.

CHAPTER  
X.

Familiar with clouds and sunshine, the storm and the calm, and all the phenomena which find expression in the physical geography of the sea, the right-minded mariner, as he contemplates "the cloud without rain," ceases to regard it as an empty thing ; he perceives that it performs many important offices ; he regards it as a great moderator of heat and cold—as a "compensation" in the atmospherical mechanism which makes the performance of the grand machine perfect.

§ 588

Marvellous are the offices, and wonderful is the constitution, of the atmosphere. Indeed, I know of no subject more fit for profitable thought on the part of the truth-loving, knowledge-seeking student, be he seaman or landsman, than that afforded by the atmosphere and its offices. Of all parts of the physical machinery, of all the contrivances in the mechanism of the universe, the atmosphere, with its offices and its adaptations, appears to me to be the most wonderful, sublime, and beautiful. In its construction, the perfection of knowledge is involved. The perfect man of Uz, in a moment of inspiration, thus bursts forth in laudation of this part of God's handiwork,

§ 589

Wonderful  
constitu-  
tion of the  
atmo-  
sphere.

demanding of his comforters: "But where shall wisdom be found? and where is the place of understanding? The depth saith, It is not in me; and the sea saith, It is not with me. It cannot be gotten for gold, neither shall silver be weighed for the price thereof. No mention shall be made of coral, or of pearls: for the price of wisdom is above rubies. Whence then cometh wisdom? and where is the place of understanding? Destruction and death say, We have heard the fame thereof with our ears. God understandeth the way thereof, and he knoweth the place thereof. For he looketh to the ends of the earth, and seeth under the whole heaven; *to make the weight for the winds*; and he weigheth the waters by measure. When he made a decree for the rain, and a way for the lightning of the thunder; then did he see it, and declare it; he prepared it, yea, and searched it out."\*

Galileo  
and the  
pump-  
maker.

§ 590 When the pump-maker came to ask Galileo to explain how it was that his pump would not lift water higher than thirty-two feet, the philosopher thought, but was afraid to say, it was owing to "weight of the winds;" and though the fact that the air has weight is here so distinctly announced, philosophers never recognised the fact until within comparatively a recent period, and then it was proclaimed by them as a great discovery. Nevertheless, the fact was set forth as distinctly in the book of nature as it is in the book of revelation; for the infant, in availing itself of atmospherical pressure to draw milk from its mother's breast, unconsciously proclaimed it.

§ 591 Both the thermometer and the barometer<sup>1</sup> stand lower

\* Job, chap. xxviii.

<sup>1</sup> § 535.



under this cloud-ring than they do on either side of it. After having crossed it, and referred to the log-book to refresh his mind as to the observations there entered with regard to it, the attentive navigator may perceive how this belt of clouds, by screening the parallels over which he may have found it to hang from the sun's rays, not only promotes the precipitation which takes place within these parallels at certain periods, but how, also, the rains are made to change the places upon which they are to fall; and how, by travelling with the calm belt of the equator up and down the earth, this cloud-ring shifts the surface from which the heating rays of the sun are to be excluded; and how, by this operation, tone is given to the atmospherical circulation of the world, and vigour to its vegetation.

Having travelled with the calm belt to the north or south, the cloud-ring leaves the sky about the equator clear; the rays of the torrid sun pour down upon the crust of the earth there, and raise its temperature to a scorching heat. The atmosphere dances,<sup>1</sup> and the air is seen trembling in ascending and descending columns, with busy eagerness to conduct the heat off, and deliver it to the regions aloft, where it is required to give momentum to the air in its general channels of circulation. The dry season continues; the sun is vertical; and finally the earth becomes parched and dry; the heat accumulates faster than the air can carry it away; the plants begin to wither, and the animals to perish. Then comes the mitigating cloud-ring. The burning rays of the sun are intercepted by it: the place for the absorption and reflection, and the delivery to the atmosphere of the solar heat,

§ 592

Tempera-  
ture under  
the cloud-  
ring.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 352.



CHAPTER X. is changed ; it is transferred from the upper surface of the earth to the upper surface of the clouds.

§ 593 Radiation. Radiation from land and sea below the cloud-belt is thus interrupted, and the excess of heat in the earth is delivered to the air, and by absorption carried up to the clouds, and there transferred to their vapours to prevent excess of precipitation.

§ 594 Operations of the trade-winds in this cloud-belt. In the meantime, the trade-winds, north and south, are pouring into this cloud-covered receiver, as the calm and rain-belt of the equator may be called, fresh supplies in the shape of ceaseless volumes of heated air, which, loaded to saturation with vapour, has to rise above and get clear of the clouds before it can commence the process of cooling by radiation. In the meantime, also, the vapours which the trade-winds bring from the north and the south, expanding and growing cooler as they ascend, are being condensed on the lower side of the cloud stratum, and their latent heat is set free, to check precipitation and prevent a flood.

§ 595 Process on the upper side. While this process and these operations are going on upon the nether side of the cloud-ring, one not less important is, we may imagine, going on upon the upper side. There, from sunrise to sunset, the rays of the sun are pouring down without intermission. Every day, and all day long, they play with ceaseless activity upon the upper surface of the cloud stratum. When they become too powerful, and convey more heat to the cloud vapours than the cloud vapours can reflect and give off to the air above them, then, with a beautiful elasticity of character, the clouds absorb the surplus heat. They melt away, become invisible, and retain, in a latent and harm-

less state, until it is wanted at some other place, and on some other occasion, the heat thus imparted.

CHAPTER  
X.

We thus have an insight into the operations which are going on in the equatorial belt of precipitation, and this insight is sufficient to enable us to perceive that exquisite indeed are the arrangements which Nature has provided for supplying this calm belt with heat, and for pushing the snow-line there high up above the clouds, in order that the atmosphere may have room to expand, to rise up, overflow, and course back into its channels of healthful circulation. As the vapour is condensed and formed into drops of rain, a twofold object is accomplished: coming from the cooler regions of the clouds, the rain-drops are cooler than the air and earth below; they descend, and by absorption take up the heat which has been accumulating in the earth's crust during the dry season, and which cannot now escape by radiation. Thus this cloud-ring modifies the climate of all places beneath it; overshadowing, at different seasons, all parallels from  $5^{\circ}$  south to  $15^{\circ}$  north.

§ 596

Beautiful arrangements of nature for supplying this calm belt with heat.

It modifies climate.

In the process of condensation, these rain-drops, on the other hand, have set free a vast quantity of latent heat, which has been gathered up with the vapour from the sea by the trade-winds and brought hither. The caloric thus liberated is taken by the air and carried up aloft still farther, to keep, at the proper distance from the earth, the line of perpetual congelation. Were it possible to trace a thermal curve in the upper regions of the air to represent this line, we should no doubt find it mounting sometimes at the equator, sometimes on this side, and sometimes on that of it, but always so mounting as to

§ 597

Supposed thermal curve.

CHAPTER X.  
Its course. overleap this cloud-ring. This thermal line would not ascend always over the same parallels: it would ascend over those between which this ring happens to be: and the distance of this ring from the equator, north or south, is regulated according to the seasons.

§ 598 If we imagine the atmospherical equator to be always where the calm belt is, which separates the north-east from the south-east trade-winds, then the loop in the thermal curve, which should represent the line of perpetual congelation in the air, would be always found to stride this equator; and it may be supposed that a thermometer, kept sliding on the surface of the earth so as always to be in the middle of this rain-belt, would show very nearly the same temperature all the year round; and so, too, would a barometer the same pressure.

Contem-  
plation of  
the offices  
of the  
cloud-belt.  
§ 599 Returning and taking up the train of contemplation as to the office which this belt of clouds, as it encircles the earth, performs in the system of oceanic adaptations, we may see how the cloud-ring and calm zone which it overshadows perform the office both of ventricle and auricle in the immense atmospherical heart, where the heat and the forces which give vitality and power to the system are brought into play—where dynamical strength is gathered, and an impulse given to the air sufficient to send it thence through its long and tortuous channels of circulation.

It regu-  
lates heat  
and ad-  
justs the  
winds.  
§ 600 Thus this ring, or band, or belt of clouds, is stretched around our planet to regulate the quantity of precipitation in the rain-belt beneath it; to preserve the due quantum of heat on the face of the earth; to adjust the winds, and send out for distribution to the four corners,

vapours in proper quantities to make up to each river-basin, climate, and season, its quota of sunshine, cloud, and moisture. Like the balance-wheel of a well constructed chronometer, this cloud-ring affords the grand atmospherical machine the most exquisitely-arranged *self-compensation*. If the sun fail in his supply of heat to this region, more of its vapours are condensed, and heat is discharged from its latent store-houses in quantities just sufficient to keep the machine in the most perfect compensation. If, on the other hand, too much heat be found to accompany the rays of the sun as they impinge upon the upper circumference of this belt, then again on that side the means of self-compensation are ready at hand; so much of the cloud-surface as may be requisite is then resolved into invisible vapour—for of invisible vapour are made the vessels wherein the surplus heat from the sun is stored away and held in the latent state until it is called for, when instantly it is set free, and becomes a palpable and active agent in the grand design.

That the thermometer stands *invariably* lower<sup>1</sup> beneath this cloud-belt than it does on either side of it, has not, so far as my researches are concerned, been made to appear by actual observation, for the observations in my possession have not yet been *fully* discussed concerning the temperature of the air. But that the temperature of the air at the surface under this cloud-ring is lower, is a theoretical deduction as susceptible of demonstration as is the rotation of the earth on its axis. Indeed, Nature herself has hung a thermometer under this cloud-belt that is more perfect than any that man can construct, and its indications are not to be mistaken.

CHAPTER  
X.

It affords self-compensation to the great atmospherical machine.

§ 601

Nature has hung a thermometer under the cloud-belt.

<sup>1</sup> § 501.

CHAPTER  
X.§ 602  
Whence  
come the  
vapours  
forming  
this cloud-  
ring?

Where do the vapours which form this cloud-ring, and which are here condensed and poured down into the sea as rain, come from? They come from the trade-wind regions;<sup>1</sup> under the cloud-ring they rise up; as they rise up they expand; and as they expand they grow cool, form clouds, and then are condensed into rains; moreover, it requires no mercurial instrument of human device to satisfy us that the air which brings the vapour for these clouds cannot take it up and let it down at the same temperature. Precipitation and evaporation are the converse of each other, and the same air cannot precipitate and evaporate, take up and let down water, at one and the same temperature. As the temperature of the air is raised, its capacity for receiving and retaining water in the state of vapour is increased; as the temperature of the air is lessened, its capacity for retaining that moisture is diminished. These are physical laws, and therefore, when we see water dripping from the atmosphere, we need no instrument to tell us that the elasticity of the vapour so condensed, and falling in drops, is less than was its elasticity when it was taken up from the surface of the ocean as water, and went up into the clouds as vapour.

§ 603  
Constant  
precipita-  
tion under  
it.

Hence we infer, that when the vapours of sea water are condensed, the heat which was necessary to sustain them in the vapour state, and which was borrowed from the ocean, is parted with, and that therefore they were subjected, in the act of condensation, to a lower temperature than they were in the act of evaporation. Ceaseless precipitation goes on under this cloud-ring. Evaporation under it is suspended almost entirely. We know that

the trade-winds encircle the earth; that they blow perpetually; that they come from the north and the south, and meet each other near the equator; therefore we infer that this line of meeting extends around the world. By the rainy seasons of the torrid zone, except where it may be broken by the continents, we can trace the declination of this cloud-ring, stretched like a girdle around our planet, up and down the earth; it travels up and down the ocean, as from north to south and back.

CHAPTER  
X.  
The cloud-  
ring forms  
a girdle  
round the  
earth.

It is broader than the belt of calms out of which it rises. As the air, with its vapours, rises up in this calm belt and ascends, these vapours are condensed into clouds,<sup>1</sup> and this condensation is followed by a turgid intumescence, which causes the clouds to overflow the calm belt, as it were, both to the north and the south. The air flowing off in the same direction assumes the character of winds that form the upper currents that are counter (Plate I.) to the trade-winds. These currents carry the clouds still farther to the north and south, and thus make the cloud-ring broader; at least we infer such to be the case, for the rains are found to extend out into the trade-winds, and often to a considerable distance both to the north and the south of the calm belt.

§ 604  
Condensa-  
tion.

Were this cloud-ring luminous, and could it be seen by an observer from one of the planets, it would present to him an appearance not unlike the rings of Saturn to us. Such an observer would remark that this cloud-ring of the earth has a motion contrary to that of the axis of our planet itself—that while the earth was revolving rapidly from west to east, he would observe the cloud-ring to go slowly, but only relatively, from east to west.

§ 605  
Supposed  
appear-  
ance of the  
cloud-ring

<sup>1</sup> § 602.



CHAPTER  
X.  
ITS MOTION.

As the winds which bring this cloud-vapour to this region of calms rise up with it, the earth is slipping from under them; and thus the cloud-ring, though really moving from west to east with the earth, goes relatively slower than the earth, and would therefore appear to require a longer time to complete a revolution.

§ 606 But, unlike the rings of Saturn through the telescope, the outer surface, or the upper side to us, of this cloud-ring, would appear exceedingly jagged, rough, and uneven.

§ 607 The rays of the sun, playing upon this peak and then upon that of the upper cloud-surface, melt away one set of elevations, and create another set of depressions. The whole stratum is, it may be imagined, in the most turgid state; it is in continued throes when viewed from above; the heat which is liberated from below in the process of condensation, the currents of warm air ascending from the earth, and of cool descending from the sky, all, we may well conceive, tend to keep the upper cloud-surface in a perpetual state of agitation, upheaval, and depression.

§ 608 Imagine in such a cloud-stratum an electrical discharge to take place; the report, being caught up by the cloud-ridges above, is passed from peak to peak, and repeated from valley to valley, until the last echo dies away in the mutterings of the distant thunder. How often do we hear the voice of the loud thunder rumbling and rolling away above the cloud-surface, like the echo of artillery discharged among the hills!

§ 609 Hence we perceive or infer that the clouds intercept the progress of sound, as well as of light and heat, through the atmosphere, and that this upper surface is often like



Alpine regions, which echo back and roll along with rumbling noise the mutterings of the distant thunder. CHAPTER  
X.

It is by trains of reasoning like this that we are continually reminded of the interest which attaches to the observations which the mariner is called on to make. § 610  
Importance of observing physical facts. There is no expression uttered by nature which is unworthy of our most attentive consideration—for no physical fact is too bald for observation—and mariners, by registering in their logs the kind of lightning, whether sheet, forked, or streaked, and the kind of thunder, whether rolling, muttering, or sharp, may be furnishing facts which will throw much light on the features and character of the clouds in different latitudes and seasons. Physical facts are the language of Nature, and every expression uttered by her is worthy of our most attentive consideration, for it is the voice of WISDOM.

## CHAPTER XI.

## ON THE GEOLOGICAL AGENCY OF THE WINDS.

Nature regarded as a Whole, § 611.—The Dead Sea, 614.—Annual fall of Rain upon, less now than formerly, 615.—The Caspian, 617.—The great American Lakes, 622.—Gulf of Mexico, its Depth, 624.—The Effect of cutting off the Gulf Stream, 625.—Uprising of Continents, 627.—The Causes that change the Water-level of a country, 633.—Foot-prints of the Clouds, 633.—Andes rising from the Sea, 640.—Rains for Europe, 651.—Terrestrial Adaptations, 655.—Evaporating Force in the Mediterranean, 661.—Display of Harmony, 663.—The Age of the Andes and Dead Sea compared, 671.

## CHAPTER

## XI.

## § 611

How to regard nature.

PROPERLY to appreciate the various offices which the winds and the waves perform, we must regard nature as a whole, for all the departments thereof are intimately connected. If we attempt to study in one of them, we often find ourselves tracing clews which lead us off insensibly into others, and, before we are aware, we discover ourselves exploring the chambers of some other department.

## § 612

Connection of geology with navigation, &c

The study of drift takes the geologist out to sea, and reminds him that a knowledge of waves, winds, and currents, of navigation and hydrography, are closely and intimately connected with his favourite pursuit.

## § 613

Astronomy.

The astronomer directs his telescope to the most remote star, or to the nearest planet in the sky, and makes an observation upon it. He cannot reduce this observation, nor make any use of it, until he has availed himself of certain principles of optics; until he has consulted the thermometer, gauged the atmosphere, and considered the effect of heat in changing its powers of refraction. In order to adjust the pendulum of his clock to the right

length, he has to measure the water of the sea and weigh the earth. He, too, must therefore go into the study of the tides; he must examine the earth's crust, and consider the matter of which it is composed, from pole to pole, circumference to centre: and in doing this, he finds himself, in his researches, right alongside of the navigator, the geologist, and the meteorologist, with a host of other good fellows, each one holding by the same thread, and following it up into the same labyrinth—all, it may be, with different objects in view, but nevertheless each thread will be sure to lead them where there are stores of knowledge for all, and instruction for each one in particular. And thus, in undertaking to explore the physical geography of the sea, I have found myself standing side by side with the geologist on the land, and with him, far away from the sea-shore, engaged in considering some of the phenomena which the inland basins of the earth—those immense indentations on its surface that have no sea drainage—present for contemplation and study.

CHAPTER  
 XI.  
 Connection of one  
 science  
 with  
 another

Among the most interesting of these is that of the Dead Sea. Lieutenant Lynch, of the United States Navy, has run a level from that sea to the Mediterranean, and finds the former to be about one thousand three hundred feet below the general sea-level of the earth. In seeking to account for this great difference of water-level, the geologist examines the neighbouring region, and calls to his aid the forces of elevation and depression which are supposed to have resided in the neighbourhood; he then points to them as the agents which did the work. Truly they are mighty agents, and they have diversified the surface of the earth with the most towering monuments

§ 614  
 The Dead  
 Sea.  
 Difference  
 of level  
 from the  
 Mediter-  
 ranean.  
 Causes.

CHAPTER

XI.

Author's  
suggestion.

of their power. But is it necessary to suppose that they resided in the vicinity of this region? May they not have come from the sea, and been, if not in this case, at least in the case of other inland basins, as far removed as the other hemisphere? This is a question which I do not pretend to answer definitely. But the inquiry as to the geological agency of the winds in such cases is a question which my investigations have suggested. It has its seat in the sea, and therefore I propound it as one which, in accounting for the formation of this or that inland basin, is worthy, at least, of consideration.

§ 615 Is there any evidence that the annual amount of precipitation upon the water-shed of the Dead Sea, at some former period, was greater than the annual amount of evaporation from it now is? If yea, from what part of the sea did the vapour that supplied the excess of that precipitation come, and what has cut off that supply? The mere elevation of the rim and depression of the lake basin<sup>1</sup> would not cut it off.

Was the precipitation on it greater at a former period than now?

§ 616 If we establish the fact that the Dead Sea at a former period did send a river to the ocean, we carry along with this fact the admission that when that sea overflowed into that river, then the water that fell from the clouds over the Dead Sea basin was more than the winds could convert into vapour and carry away again; the river carried off the excess to the ocean whence it came.<sup>2</sup>

§ 617 In the basin of the Dead Sea, in the basin of the Caspian, of the Sea of Aral, and in the other inland basins of Asia, we are entitled to infer that the precipitation and evaporation are at this time exactly equal. Were it not so, the level of these seas would be rising or

Precipitation and evaporation equal now.

<sup>1</sup> § 614.

<sup>2</sup> § 165.

sinking. If the precipitation were in excess, these seas would be gradually becoming fuller ; and if the evaporation were in excess, they would be gradually drying up ; but observation does not show, nor history tell us, that either is the case. As far as we know, the level of these seas is as permanent as that of the ocean, and it is difficult to realize the existence of subterranean channels between them and the great ocean. Were there such a channel, the Dead Sea being the lower, it would be the recipient of ocean waters ; and we cannot conceive how it should be such a recipient without ultimately rising to the level of its feeder.

CHAPTER  
 XI.  
 —  
 Proofs of  
 this.

It may be that the question suggested by my researches has no bearing upon the Dead Sea ; that local elevations and subsidences alone were concerned in placing the level of its waters where it is. But is it probable that, throughout all the geological periods, during all the changes that have taken place in the distribution of land and water surface over the earth, the winds which, in the general channels of circulation, pass over the Dead Sea have alone been unchanged? Throughout all ages, periods, and formations, is it probable that the winds have brought just as much moisture to that sea as they now bring, and have just taken up as much water from it as they now carry off? Obviously and clearly not. The salt-beds, the water-marks, the geological formations, and other facts traced by Nature's own hand upon the tablets of the rock, all indicate plainly enough that not only the Dead Sea, but the Caspian also, had upon them, in former periods, more abundant rains than they now have. Where did the vapour for those rains come from?

§ 618  
 Prob-  
 ability that  
 there were  
 more  
 abundant  
 rains at a  
 former  
 period.

Whence  
 came the  
 vapour for  
 them ?

CHAPTER and what has stopped the supply? Surely not the ele-  
 XI. vation or depression of the Dead Sea basin.

§ 619 My researches with regard to the winds have sug-  
 South- west trades the rain- winds for Europe. gested the probability<sup>1</sup> that the vapour which is condensed into rains for the lake valley, and which the St. Lawrence carries off to the Atlantic Ocean, is taken up by the south-east trade-winds of the Pacific Ocean. Suppose this to be the case, and that the winds which bring this vapour arrive with it in the lake country at a mean dew-point of  $50^{\circ}$ . This would make the south-west winds the rain winds for the lakes generally, as well as for the Mississippi Valley; they are also, speaking generally, the rain winds of Europe, and, I have no doubt, of extra-tropical Asia also.

§ 620 Now, suppose a certain mountain range, hundreds of  
 Author's theory. miles to the south-west of the lakes, but across the path of these winds, were to be suddenly elevated, and its crest pushed into the regions of snow, having a mean temperature at its summit of  $30^{\circ}$  Fahrenheit. The winds, in passing that range, would be subjected to a mean dew-point of  $30^{\circ}$ ; and, not meeting<sup>2</sup> with any more evaporating surface between such range and the lakes, they would have no longer any moisture to deposit at the supposed lake temperature of  $50^{\circ}$ ; for they could not yield their moisture to anything above  $30^{\circ}$ . Consequently, the amount of precipitation in the lake country would fall off; the winds which feed the lakes would cease to bring as much water as the lakes now give to the St. Lawrence. In such a case, that river and the Niagara would drain them to the level of their bed; evaporation would be increased by reason of the dryness of the atmosphere

<sup>1</sup> § 172.

<sup>2</sup> § 196.

and the want of rain, and the lakes would sink to that level at which, as in the case of the Caspian Sea, the precipitation and evaporation would finally become equal.

There is a self-regulating principle that would bring about this equality ; for as the water in the lakes becomes lower, the area of its surface would be diminished, and the amount of vapour taken from it would consequently become less and less as the surface was lowered, until the amount of water evaporated would become equal to the amount rained down again, precisely in the same way that the amount of water evaporated from the sea is exactly equal to the whole amount poured back into it by the rains, the fogs, and the dews.\* Thus the great lakes of this continent would remain inland seas at a permanent level ; the salt brought from the soil by the washings of the rivers and rains would cease to be taken off to the ocean as it now is ; and finally, too, the great American lakes, in the process of ages, would become first brackish, and then briny.

Now, suppose the water-basins which hold the lakes to be over a thousand fathoms (six thousand feet) deep. We know they are not more than four hundred and twenty feet deep ; but suppose them to be six thousand feet deep. The process of evaporation, after the St. Lawrence had gone dry, might go on until one or two thousand feet or more were lost from the surface ; and we should then have another instance of the level of an inland water-basin being far below the sea-level, as in the case of the Dead Sea ; or it would become a rainless district, when the lakes themselves would go dry.

CHAPTER  
XI.

§ 621

Continued

§ 622

Illustration.

\* The quantity of dew in England is about five inches during a year.—*Glaisher*.



CHAPTER  
XI.§ 623  
Supposed  
obstruction of the  
Gulf  
Stream.

Or let us take another case for illustration. Corallines are at work about the Gulf Stream ; they have built up the Florida Reefs on one side, and the Bahama Banks on the other. Suppose they should build up a dam across the Florida Pass, and obstruct the Gulf Stream ; and that, in like manner, they were to connect Cuba with Yucatan by damming up the Yucatan Pass, so that the waters of the Atlantic should cease to flow into the Gulf of Mexico. What should we have ?

§ 624 The depth of the marine basin which holds the waters of that Gulf is, in the deepest part, about three quarters of a mile. The officers of the United States ship Albany have run a line of deep-sea soundings from west to east across the Gulf ; the greatest depth they reported was about six thousand feet. Subsequent experiments, however, induce the belief that the depth is not quite so great.

§ 625 We should therefore have, by stopping up the channels between the Gulf and the Atlantic, not a sea level in the Gulf, but we should have a mean level between evaporation and precipitation. If the former were in excess, the level of the Gulf waters would sink down until the surface exposed to the air would be just sufficient to return to the atmosphere, as vapour, the amount of water discharged by the rivers, the Mississippi and others, into the Gulf. As the waters were lowered, the extent of evaporating surface would grow less and less, until Nature should establish the proper ratio between the ability of the air to take up and the capacity of the clouds to let down. Thus we might have a sea whose level would be much farther below the water-level of the ocean than is the Dead Sea.

Its probable effects

There is still another process, besides the two already alluded to, by which the drainage of these inland basins may, through the agency of the winds, have been cut off from the great salt seas; and that is by the elevation of continents from the bottom of the sea in distant regions of the earth, and the substitution caused thereby of dry land instead of water for the winds to blow upon.

§ 626  
Another process by which inland basins may have been cut off from the seas.

Now suppose that a continent should rise up in that part of the ocean, wherever it may be, that supplies the clouds with the vapour that makes the rain for the hydrographic basin of the great American lakes. What would be the result? Why, surely, fewer clouds and less rain, which would involve a change of climate in the lake country; an increase of evaporation from it, because a decrease of precipitation upon it; and consequently, a diminution of cloudy screens to protect the waters of the lakes from being sucked up by the rays of the sun; and consequently, too, there would follow a low stage for water-courses, and a lowering of the lake-level would ensue.

§ 627  
Supposed result of a continent rising up in the ocean.

So far, I have instanced these cases only hypothetically; but, both in regard to the hydrographical basins of the Mexican Gulf and American lakes, I have confined myself strictly to analogies. Mountain ranges have been upheaved across the course of the winds, and continents have been raised from the bottom of the sea; and, no doubt, the influence of such upheavals has been felt in remote regions by means of the winds, and the effects which a greater or less amount of moisture brought by them would produce.

§ 628

In the case of the Salt Lake of Utah we have an

§ 629

CHAPTER  
XI.

Salt lake of Utah an illustration of how nature equalizes evaporation and precipitation.

Former connection between the great American lakes and the Gulf of Mexico.

example of drainage that has been cut off, and an illustration of the process by which Nature equalizes the evaporation and precipitation. To do this, in this instance, she is salting up the basin which received the drainage of this inland water-shed. Here we have the appearance, I am told, of an old channel by which the water used to flow from this basin to the sea. Supposing there was such a time and such a water-course, the water returned through it to the ocean was the amount by which the precipitation used to exceed the evaporation over the whole extent of country drained through this now dry bed of a river. The winds have had something to do with this; they are the agents which used to bring more moisture from the sea to this water-shed than they carried away; and they are the agents which now carry off from that valley more moisture than is brought to it, and which, therefore, are making a salt-bed of places that used to be covered by water. In like manner, there is evidence that the great American lakes formerly had a drainage with the Gulf of Mexico, for boats or canoes have been actually known, in former years, and in times of freshets, to pass from the Mississippi River over into the lakes. At low water, the bed of a dry river can be traced between them. Now the Salt Lake of Utah is to the southward and westward of our northern lake basin; that is the quarter<sup>1</sup> whence the rain-winds have been supposed to come. May not the same cause which lessened the precipitation, or increased the evaporation in the Salt Lake water-shed, have done the same for the water-shed of the great American system of lakes?

§ 630 If the mountains to the west—the Sierra Nevada, for

<sup>1</sup> § 364.

instance—stand higher now than they formerly did; and if the winds which fed the Salt Lake valley with precipitation had, as<sup>1</sup> I suppose they have, to pass the summits of the mountains; it is easy to perceive why the winds should not convey as much vapour across them now as they did when the summit of the range was lower and not so cool.

CHAPTER  
XI.  
How mountains intercept the winds.

The Andes, in the trade-wind region of South America, stand up so high, that the wind, in order to cross them, has to part with all its moisture;<sup>2</sup> and consequently there is, on the west side, a rainless region. Now, suppose a range of such mountains as these to be elevated across the track of the winds which supply the lake country with rains; it is easy to perceive how the whole country to the leeward of such range, and now watered by the vapour which such winds bring, would be converted into a rainless region.

§ 631  
The Andes.

I have used these hypothetical cases to illustrate a position which any philosopher, who considers the geological agency of the winds, may with propriety consult, when he is told of an inland basin, the water-level of which, it is evident, was once higher than it now is; and that position is, that, though the evidences of a higher water-level be unmistakable and conclusive, it does not follow, therefore, that there has been a subsidence of the lake basin itself, or an upheaval of the water-shed drained by it.

§ 632  
Position which may be consulted when an inland basin shows a former high level.

The cause which has produced this change in the water-level, instead of being local and near, may be remote; it may have its seat in the obstructions to “the wind in his circuits,” which have been interposed in some other

§ 633  
The cause of the change may be remote.

<sup>1</sup> § 361.      <sup>2</sup> § 196.

CHAPTER  
XI.

quarter of the world; which obstructions may prevent the winds from taking up, or from bearing off, their wonted supplies of moisture for the region whose water-level has been lowered.

§ 634  
Has the elevation of the South American continent any effect on the level of the Dead Sea and Caspian?

Having therefore, I hope, made clear the meaning of the question proposed, by showing the manner in which winds may become important geological agents; and having explained how the upheaving of a mountain range in one part of the world may, through the winds, bear upon the physical geography of the sea, affect climates, and produce geological phenomena in another; I return to the Dead Sea and the great inland basins of Asia, and ask, How far is it possible for the elevation of the South American continent, and the upheaval of its mountains, to have had any effect upon the water-level of those seas?

They once had a higher level.

There are indications<sup>1</sup> that they all once had a higher water-level than they now have, and that formerly the amount of precipitation was greater than it now is; then what has become of the sources of vapour? what has diminished its supply? Its supply would be diminished<sup>2</sup> either by the substitution of dry land for water-surface in those parts of the ocean which used to supply that vapour; or the quantity of vapour deposited in the hydrographical basins of those seas would have been lessened if a snow-capped range of mountains<sup>3</sup> had been elevated across the path of these winds, between the places where they were supplied with vapour and these basins.

§ 635  
Evidence contained in previous chapters.

A chain of evidence which it would be difficult to set aside is contained in the chapters beginning severally at p. 62, 135, and 249, going to show that the vapour which supplies the extra-tropical regions of the north

<sup>1</sup> § 618.

<sup>2</sup> § 627.

<sup>3</sup> § 620.

with rains comes, in all probability, from the trade-wind regions of the southern hemisphere.

CHAPTER  
XI.

Now, if it be true that the trade-winds from that part of the world take up there the water which is to be rained in the extra-tropical north, the path ascribed to the south-east trades of Africa and America, after they descend and become the prevailing south-west winds of the northern hemisphere, should pass over a region of less precipitation generally than they would do if, while performing the office of south-east trades, they had blown over water instead of land. The south-east trade-winds, with their load of vapour, whether great or small, take, after ascending in the equatorial calms, a north-easterly direction; they continue to flow in the upper regions of the air in that direction until they cross the tropic of Cancer. The places of least rain, then, between this tropic and the pole, should be precisely those places which depend for their rains upon the vapour which the winds that blow over south-east trade-wind Africa and America convey.

§ 636

Course of  
trade-  
winds.

Theory.

Now, if we could trace the path of the winds through the extra-tropical regions of the northern hemisphere, we should be able to identify the track of these Andean winds by the foot-prints of the clouds; for the path of the winds which depend for their moisture upon such sources of supply as the dry land of Central South America and Africa cannot lie through a country that is watered well.

§ 637

Track of  
these  
winds  
identified.

It is a remarkable coincidence, at least, that the countries in the extra-tropical regions of the north that are situated to the north-east of the south-east trade-winds

§ 638

Remark-  
able coin-  
cidence  
confirming  
theory.



CHAPTER  
XI.  
—

of South Africa and America—that these countries, over which theory makes these winds to blow, include all the great deserts of Asia, and the districts of least precipitation in Europe. A line from the Galapagos Islands through Florence in Italy, another from the mouth of the Amazon through Aleppo in the Holy Land (Plate VII), would, after passing the tropic of Cancer, mark upon the surface of the earth the route of these winds; this is that “lee country”<sup>1</sup> which, if such be the system of atmospherical circulation, ought to be scantily supplied with rains. Now, the hyetographic map of Europe, in Johnston’s beautiful *Physical Atlas*, places the region of least precipitation between these two lines. (Plate VII.)

“Lee  
country.”

§ 639 It would seem that nature, as if to reclaim this “lee” land from the desert, had stationed by the wayside of these winds a succession of inland seas, to serve them as relays for supplying them with moisture. There is the Mediterranean, with its arms, the Caspian Sea, and the Sea of Aral, all of which are situated exactly in this direction, as though these sheets of water were designed, in the grand system of aqueous arrangements, to supply with fresh vapour, winds that had already left rain enough behind them to make an Amazon and an Oronoco of.

Its supply  
of mois-  
ture.

§ 640 Now, that there has been such an elevation of land out of the water, we infer from the fact that the Andes were once covered by the sea, for their tops are now crowned with the remains of marine animals. When they and their continent were submerged—admitting that Europe in general outline was then as it now is—it cannot be supposed, if the circulation of vapour were

The Andes  
once co-  
vered by  
the sea.



then such as it is supposed now to be, that the climates of that part of the Old World which is under the lee of those mountains were then as scantily supplied with moisture as they now are. When the sea covered South America, the winds had nearly all the waters which now make the Amazon to bring away with them, and to distribute among the countries situated along the route (Plate VII.) ascribed to them.

CHAPTER XI.

Supposed effect of this on the countries now scantily supplied with water.

If ever the Caspian Sea exposed a larger surface for evaporation than it now does—and no doubt it did; if the precipitation in that valley ever exceeded the evaporation from it, as it does in all valleys drained into the open sea; then there must have been a change of hygrometrical conditions there. And admitting the vapour springs for that valley to be situated in the direction supposed, the rising up of a continent from the bottom of the sea, or the upheaval of a range of mountains in certain parts of America, Africa, or Spain, across the route of the winds which brought the rain for the Caspian water-shed, might have been sufficient to rob them of the moisture which they were wont to carry away and precipitate upon this great inland basin. See how the Andes have made Atacama a desert, and of Western Peru a rainless country; these regions have been made rainless simply by the rising up of a mountain range between them and the vapour springs in the ocean which feed with moisture the winds that blow over those now rainless regions.

§ 641

Change in the valley of the Caspian Sea.

Climate modified by mountain ranges.

Instance.

That part of Asia, then, which is under the lee of southern trade-wind Africa, lies to the north of the tropic of Cancer, and between two lines, the one passing

§ 642

Lines representing "lee country."

CHAPTER  
XI.

through Cape Palmas and Medina, the other through Aden and Delhi. Being extended to the equator, they will include that part of it which is crossed by the continental south-east trade-winds of Africa, after they have traversed the greatest extent of land surface. (Plate VII.)

§ 643

Reference  
to Plate II.

The range which lies between the two lines that represent the course of the American winds with their vapours, and the two lines which represent the course of the African winds with their vapours, is the range which is under the lee of winds that have, for the most part, traversed water surface, or the ocean, in their circuit as south-east trade-winds. But a bare inspection of Plate VII. will show that the south-east trade-winds which cross the equator between longitude  $15^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ}$  west, and which are supposed to blow over into this hemisphere between these two ranges, have traversed land as well as water; and the Trade-wind Chart\* shows that it is precisely those winds which, in summer and autumn, are converted into south-west monsoons for supplying the whole extent of Guinea with rains to make rivers of. Those winds, therefore, it would seem, leave much of their moisture behind them, and pass along to their channels in the grand system of circulation, for the most part, as dry winds. Moreover, it is not to be supposed that the channels through which the winds blow that cross the equator at the several places named are as sharply defined in nature as the lines suggested, or as Plate VII. would represent them to be.

§ 644

The whole region of the extra-tropical Old World that is included within the ranges marked, is the region which

---

\* Series of Maury's Wind and Current Charts.

has most land to windward of it in the southern hemisphere. Now it is a curious *coincidence*, at least, that all the great extra-tropical deserts of the earth, with those regions in Europe and Asia which have the least amount of precipitation upon them, should lie within this range. That they are situated under the lee of the southern continents, and have but little rain, may be a coincidence, I admit; but that these deserts of the Old World are placed where they are is no coincidence—no accident: they are placed where they are, and as they are, by design; and in being so placed, it was intended that they should subserve some grand purpose in the terrestrial economy. Let us see, therefore, if we can discover any other marks of that design—any of the purposes to be subserved by such an arrangement—and trace any connection between that arrangement and the supposition which I maintain as to the place where the winds that blow over these regions derive their vapours.

CHAPTER

XI.

Curious coincidence.

Design in situation of the deserts.

Endeavour to trace it.

It will be remarked at once that all the inland seas of Asia, and all those of Europe except the semi-fresh-water gulfs of the north, are within this range. The Persian Gulf and the Red Sea, the Mediterranean, the Black, and the Caspian, all fall within it. And why are they planted there? Why are they arranged to the north-east and south-west under this lee, and in the very direction in which theory makes this breadth of thirsty winds to prevail? Clearly and obviously, one of the purposes in the divine economy was, that they might replenish with vapour the winds which are almost vapourless when they arrive at these regions in the general system of circulation. And why should these winds be

§ 645

Arrangement of the inland seas.

Their use.

CHAPTER  
XI.

almost vapourless? They are almost vapourless because their route, in the general system of circulation, is such, that they are not brought into contact with a water-surface from which the needful supplies of vapour are to be had; or, being obtained, the supplies have since been taken away by the cool tops of mountain ranges over which these winds have had to pass.

§ 646 In the Mediterranean, the evaporation is greater than the precipitation. Upon the Red Sea there never falls a drop of rain; it is all evaporation. Are we not, therefore, entitled to regard the Red Sea as a make-weight, thrown in to regulate the proportion of cloud and sunshine, and to dispense rain to certain parts of the earth in due season and in proper quantities? Have we not, in these two facts, evidence conclusive that the winds which blow over these two seas come, for the most part, from a dry country—from regions which contain few or no pools to furnish supplies of vapour?

§ 647 Indeed, so scantily supplied with vapour are the winds which pass in the general channels of circulation over the water-shed and sea-basin of the Mediterranean, that they take up there more water as vapour than they deposit. But, throwing out of the question what is taken up from the surface of the Mediterranean itself, these winds deposit more water on the water-shed whose drainage leads into that sea than they take up from it again. The excess is to be found in the rivers which discharge themselves into the Mediterranean; but so thirsty are the winds which blow across the bosom of that sea, that they not only take up again all the water that those rivers pour into it, but they are supposed by philosophers to

Mediterranean and Red Sea.

Winds which blow over them come from a dry country.

Evaporation exceeds precipitation in the Mediterranean.

create a demand for an immense current from the Atlantic to supply the waste.

CHAPTER  
XI.

It is estimated that three\* times as much water as the Mediterranean receives from its rivers is evaporated from its surface. This may be an over-estimate, but the fact that evaporation from it is in excess of the precipitation, is made obvious by the current which the Atlantic sends into it through the Straits of Gibraltar; and the difference, we may rest assured, whether it be much or little, is carried off to modify climate elsewhere—to refresh with showers and make fruitful some other parts of the earth.

§ 648  
Estimate

The great inland basin of Asia, in which are Aral and the Caspian Seas, is situated on the route which this hypothesis requires these thirsty winds from south-east trade-wind Africa and America to take: and so scant of vapour are these winds when they arrive in this basin, that they have no moisture to leave behind; just as much as they pour down they take up again and carry off. We know<sup>1</sup> that the volume of water returned by the rivers, the rains, and the dews, into the whole ocean, is exactly equal to the volume which the whole ocean gives back to the atmosphere. As far as our knowledge extends, the level of each of these two seas is as permanent as that of the great ocean itself; therefore, the volume of water discharged by rivers, the rains, and the dews, into these two seas, is exactly equal to the volume which these two seas give back as vapour to the atmosphere.

§ 649  
Aral and  
the Cas-  
pian Seas

These winds, therefore, do not begin permanently to lay down their load of moisture, be it great or small,

§ 650

\* *Vide* article "Physical Geography," Encyclopædia Britannica.

<sup>1</sup> § 166.

CHAPTER  
XI.

Where the  
winds  
leave be-  
hind them  
more  
water than  
they take  
up.

until they cross the Oural Mountains. On the steppes of Issam, after they have supplied the Amazon and the other great equatorial rivers of the south, we find them first beginning to lay down more moisture than they take up again. In the Obi, the Yenesi, and the Lena, is to be found the volume which contains the expression for the load of water which these winds have brought from the southern hemisphere, from the Mediterranean and the Red Sea; for in these almost hyperborean river-basins do we find the first instance in which, throughout the entire range assigned these winds, they have, after supplying the Amazon, &c., left more water behind them than they have taken up again and carried off. The low temperatures of Siberian Asia are quite sufficient to extract from these winds the remnants of vapour which the cool mountain-tops and mighty rivers of the southern hemisphere have left in them.

§ 651 Here I may be permitted to pause, that I may call attention to another remarkable coincidence, and admire the marks of design, the beautiful and exquisite adjustments that we see here provided, to insure the perfect working of the great aqueous and atmospherical machine. This coincidence—may I not call it cause and effect?—is between the hygrometrical conditions of all the countries within, and the hygrometrical conditions of all the countries without, the range included within the lines which I have drawn (Plate VII.) to represent the route in the northern hemisphere of the south-east trade-winds, *after* they have blown their course over the land in South Africa and America. Both to the right and left of this range are countries included between the same

Perfect  
working of  
the great  
aqueous  
and atmos-  
pherical  
machine.



parallels in which it is, yet these countries all receive more water from the atmosphere than they give back to it again,—they all have river running into the sea. On the one hand, there is in Europe the Rhine, the Elbe, and all the great rivers that empty into the Atlantic; on the other hand, there are in Asia the Ganges, and all the great rivers of China; and in North America, in the latitude of the Caspian Sea, is our great system of fresh-water lakes: all of these receive from the atmosphere immense volumes of water, and pour it back into the sea in streams the most magnificent.

It is remarkable that none of these copiously-supplied water-sheds have to the south-west of them, in the trade-wind regions of the southern hemisphere, any considerable body of land; they are, all of them, under the lee of evaporating surfaces, of ocean waters in the trade-wind regions of the south. Only those countries in the extra-tropical north, which I have described as lying under the lee of trade-wind South America and Africa, are scantily supplied with rains. Pray examine Plate VII. in this connection. It tends to confirm the views taken in Chapter VI.

§ 652  
Remarkable fact in regard to the water-sheds.

The surface of the Caspian Sea is about equal to that of our lakes; in it, evaporation is just equal to the precipitation. Our lakes are between the same parallels, and about the same distance from the western coast of America that the Caspian Sea is from the western coast of Europe; and yet the waters discharged by the St. Lawrence give us an idea of how greatly the precipitation upon it is in excess of the evaporation. To windward of the lakes, and in the trade-wind regions of the southern

§ 653  
Comparison between Caspian Sea and Canadian lakes

CHAPTER  
XI.

hemisphere, is no land; but to windward of the Caspian Sea, and in the trade-wind region of the southern hemisphere, there is land. Therefore, supposing the course of the vapour-distributing winds to be such as I maintain it to be, ought they not to carry more water from the ocean to the American lakes than it is possible for them to carry from the land—from the interior of South Africa and America—to the valley of the Caspian Sea?

§ 654 In like manner,<sup>1</sup> extra-tropical New Holland and South Africa have each land—not water—to the windward of them in the trade-wind regions of the northern hemisphere, where, according to this hypothesis, the vapour for their rains ought to be taken up. They are both countries of little rain. But extra-tropical South America has, in the trade-wind region to windward of it in the northern hemisphere, a great extent of ocean, and the amount of precipitation<sup>2</sup> in extra-tropical South America is wonderful. The coincidence, therefore, is remarkable, that the countries in the extra-tropical regions of this hemisphere, which lie to the north-east of large districts of land in the trade-wind regions of the other hemisphere, should be scantily supplied with rains; and likewise, that those so situated in the extra-tropical south, with regard to land in the trade-wind region of the north, should be scantily supplied with rains.

§ 655 Having thus remarked upon the coincidence, let us turn to the evidences of design, and contemplate the beautiful harmony displayed in the arrangement of the land and water, as we find them along this conjectural “wind-road.” (Plate VII.)

Evidence  
of design.

<sup>1</sup> § 393.

<sup>2</sup> § 295.

Those who admit design among terrestrial adaptations, or have studied the economy of cosmical arrangements, will not be loth to grant that by design the atmosphere keeps in circulation a certain amount of moisture, that the water of which this moisture is made is supplied by the aqueous surface of the earth, and that it is to be returned to the seas again through rivers and the process of precipitation; for, were it not so, there would be a permanent increase or decrease of the quantity of water thus put and kept in circulation by the winds, which would be followed by a corresponding change of hygrometrical conditions, which, in turn, would draw after it permanent changes of climate; and permanent changes of climate would involve the ultimate well-being of myriads of organisms, both in the vegetable and animal kingdoms.

The quantity of moisture that the atmosphere keeps in circulation is, no doubt, just that quantity which is best suited to the well-being, and most adapted to the proper development of, the vegetable and animal kingdoms; and that quantity is dependent upon the arrangement and the proportions that we see in nature between the land and the water—between mountain and desert, river and sea. If the seas and evaporating surfaces were changed, and removed from the places they occupy to other places, the principal places of precipitation probably would also be changed; whole families of plants would wither and die for want of cloud and sunshine, dry and wet, in proper proportions and in due season; and, with the blight of plants, whole tribes of animals would also perish. Under such a chance arrangement, man would

CHAPTER  
XI.§ 656  
Design in  
the circula-  
tion of  
moisture.

§ 657

Quantity  
of moisture  
kept in cir-  
culation.

CHAPTER  
XI.

no longer be able to rely upon the early and the latter rain, or to count with certainty upon the rains being sent in due season for seed-time and harvest. And that the rain will be sent in due season, we are assured from on high ; and when we recollect who it is that " sendeth " it, we feel the conviction strong within us, that He that sendeth the rain has the winds for his messengers ; and, that they may do his bidding, the land and the sea were arranged, both as to position and relative proportions, where they are, and as they are.

§ 658 It should be borne in mind that by this hypothesis, the south-east trade-winds, after they rise up at the equator (Plate I.), have to overleap the north-east trade-winds. Consequently, they do not touch the earth until near the tropic of Cancer (see the bearded arrows, Plate VII.), more frequently to the north than to the south of it ; but for a part of every year, the place where these vaulting south-east trades first strike the earth, after leaving the other hemisphere, is very near this tropic. On the equatorial side of it, be it remembered, the north-east trade-winds blow ; on the Polar side, what were the south-east trades, and what are now the prevailing south-westerly winds of our hemisphere, prevail. Now examine Plate VII., and it will be seen that the upper half of the Red Sea is north of the tropic of Cancer ; the lower half is to the south of it ; that the latter is within the north-east trade-wind region ; the former, in the region where the south-west passage winds are the prevailing winds.

§ 659 The River Tigris is probably evaporated from the upper half of this sea by these winds ; while the north-east trade-winds take up from the lower half those vapours which

feed the Nile with rain, and which the clouds deliver to the cold demands of the Mountains of the Moon. Thus there are two "wind-roads" crossing this sea: to the windward of it, each road runs through a rainless region; to the leeward there is, in each case, a river rained down.

The Persian Gulf lies, for the most part, in the track of the south-west winds; to the windward of the Persian Gulf is a desert; to the leeward, the River Indus. This is the route by which theory would require the vapour from the Red Sea and Persian Gulf to be conveyed, and this is the direction in which we find indications that it is conveyed. For to leeward do we find, in each case, a river, telling to us by signs not to be mistaken, that it receives more water from the clouds than it gives back to the winds.

Is it not a curious circumstance, that the winds which travel the road suggested from the southern hemisphere, should, when they touch the earth on the Polar side of the tropic of Cancer, be so thirsty, more thirsty, much more than those which travel on either side of their path, and which are supposed to have come from southern seas, not from southern lands?

The Mediterranean has to give those winds three times as much vapour as it receives from them;<sup>1</sup> the Red Sea gives them as much as they can take, and receives nothing back in return but a little dew;<sup>2</sup> the Persian Gulf also gives more than it receives. What becomes of the rest? Doubtless it is given to the winds, that they may bear it off to distant regions, and make lands fruitful, that, but for these sources of supply,

CHAPTER  
XI.Two  
"wind-roads."

§ 660

Persian  
Gulf and  
Red Sea.

§ 661

Curious  
circum-  
stance.

§ 662

Vapour  
given and  
received  
back by  
various  
seas.<sup>1</sup> § 648.<sup>2</sup> § 407.

CHAPTER XI. would be almost rainless, if not entirely arid, waste, and barren.

§ 663 These seas and arms of the ocean now present themselves to the mind as counterpoises in the great hygrometrical machinery of our planet;—as sheets of water, placed where they are to balance the land in the trade-wind region of South America and South Africa, they now present themselves. When the foundations of the earth were laid, we know who it was that “measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out the heavens with a span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance;” and hence we know also that they are arranged both according to proportion and to place.

§ 664 Here, then, we see harmony in the winds, design in the mountains, order in the sea, arrangement in the dust, and form for the desert. Here are signs of beauty and works of grandeur; and we may now fancy that, in this exquisite system of adaptations and compensations, we can almost behold in the Red and Mediterranean Seas, the very waters that were held in the hollow of the Almighty hand when he weighed the Andes, and balanced the hills of Africa in the comprehensive scales.

§ 665 In that great inland basin of Asia which holds the Caspian Sea, and embraces an area of one million and a half of geographical square miles, we see the water-surface so exquisitely adjusted that it is just sufficient, and no more, to return to the atmosphere as vapour exactly as much moisture as the atmosphere lends in rain to the rivers of that basin; a beautiful illustration of the

Counterpoises in the hygrometrical machinery of the earth.

Harmony in earth, sea, and sky

Exquisite adjustment of Caspian Sea.



fact that the span of the heavens was meted out according to the measure of the waters.

CHAPTER  
XI.

Thus we are entitled to regard<sup>1</sup> the Mediterranean, the Red Sea, and Persian Gulf, as relays, distributed along the route of these thirsty winds from the continents of the other hemisphere, to supply them with vapours, or to restore to them that which they have left behind to feed the sources of the Amazon, the Niger, and the Congo.

§ 666  
Offices of  
the Medi-  
terranean  
Sea, &c.

The hypothesis that the winds from South Africa and America do take the course through Europe and Asia which I have marked out for them (Plate VII.), is supported by so many coincidences, to say the least, that we are entitled to regard it as probably correct, until a train of coincidences, at *least* as striking, can be adduced to show that such is not the case.

§ 667  
Course of  
winds.

Returning once more to a consideration of the geological agency of the winds in accounting for the depression of the Dead Sea, we now see the fact palpably brought out before us, that if the Straits of Gibraltar were to be barred up, so that no water could pass through them, we should have a great depression of water-level in the Mediterranean. Three times as much water<sup>2</sup> is evaporated from that sea as is returned to it through the rivers. A portion of water evaporated from it is probably rained down and returned to it through the rivers; but, supposing it to be barred up, as the demand upon it for vapour would exceed the supply by rains and rivers, it would commence to dry up; as it sinks down, the area exposed for evaporation would decrease, and the supplies to the rivers diminish, until, finally, there would be established between the evaporation and precipitation an equilibrium, as in

§ 668  
Geological  
agency of  
winds on  
Dead Sea,  
&c.

Mediterranean.

<sup>1</sup> § 639.

<sup>2</sup> § 648.

CHAPTER  
 XI.

the Dead and Caspian Seas. But, for aught we know, the water-level of the Mediterranean might, before this equilibrium were attained, have to reach a stage far below that of the Dead Sea level.

§ 669 The Lake Tadjura is now in the act of attaining such an equilibrium. There are connected with it the remains of a channel by which the water ran into the sea; but the surface of the lake is now five hundred feet below the sea-level, and it is salting up. If not in the Dead Sea, do we not, in the valley of this lake, find outcropping some reason for the question, What have the winds had to do with the phenomena before us.

§ 670 The winds, in this sense, are geological agents of great power. It is not impossible but that they may afford us the means of comparing directly geological events which have taken place in one hemisphere, with geological events in another: *e. g.*, the tops of the Andes were once at the bottom of the sea. Which is the oldest formation, that of the Dead Sea or the Andes? If the former be the older, then the climate of the Dead Sea must have been hygrometrically very different from what it now is.

§ 671 In regarding the winds as geological agents, we can no longer consider them as the type of instability. We should rather treat them in the light of ancient and faithful chroniclers, which, upon being rightly consulted, will reveal to us truths that Nature has written upon their wings in characters as legible and enduring as any with which she has ever engraved the history of geological events upon the tablet of the rock.

§ 672 The waters of Lake Titicaca, which receives the drainage of the great inland basin of the Andes, are only

brackish, not salt. Hence we may infer that this lake has not been standing long enough to become briny, like the waters of the Dead Sea ; consequently, it belongs to a more recent period. On the other hand, it will also be interesting to hear that my friend, Captain Lynch, informs me that, in his exploration of the Dead Sea, he saw what he took to be the dry bed of a river that once flowed from it. And thus we have two more links, stout and strong, to add to the chain of circumstantial evidence going to sustain the testimony of this strange and fickle witness which I have called up from the sea to testify in this presence concerning the works of Nature, and to tell us which be the older—the Andes, watching the stars with their hoary heads, or the Dead Sea, sleeping upon its ancient beds of crystal salt.

## CHAPTER XII.

## THE DEPTHS OF THE OCEAN.

Soundings by other Nations, § 676.—Contrivances for Deep Soundings, 678.—Clock-work, 679.—Torpedo, 680.—Magnetic Telegraph, 681.—The Myths of the Sea, 683.—Attempts to Sound, 688.—The Observatory Plan for Sounding, 690.—Practical Difficulties, 692.—Oceanic Circulation, 695.—Law of Plummets Descent, 698.—Brooke's Sounding Apparatus, 700.—Greatest Depths yet reached, 701.—Specimens from the Pacific, 702.

CHAPTER  
XII.  
§ 673  
Wonders  
of the  
Indian  
Ocean.

"WE dive," says Schleiden,\* "into the liquid crystal of the Indian Ocean, and it opens to us the most wondrous enchantments of the fairy tales of our childhood's dreams. The strangely branching thickets bear living flowers. Dense masses of Meandrinæ and Astræas contrast with the leafy, cup-shaped expansions of the Explanarias, the variously-ramified Madrepores, which are now spread out like fingers, now rise in trunk-like branches, and now display the most elegant array of interlacing branches. The colouring surpasses everything: vivid green alternates with brown or yellow; rich tints of purple, from pale red-brown to the deepest blue. Brilliant rosy, yellow, or peach-coloured Nullipores overgrow the decaying masses, and are themselves interwoven with the pearl-coloured plates of the Retipores, resembling the most delicate ivory carvings. Close by wave the yellow and lilac fans, perforated like trellis-work, of the Gorgonias. The clear sand of the bottom is covered with the thousand strange forms and tints of the sea-urchins and star-fishes. The leaf-like Flustras and Escharas adhere like mosses

\* "The Plant."

and lichens to the branches of the corals; the yellow, green, and purple-striped Limpets cling like monstrous cochineal insects upon their trunks. Like gigantic cactus-blossoms, sparkling in the most ardent colours, the Sea Anemones expand their crowns of tentacles upon the broken rocks, or more modestly embellish the flat bottom, looking like beds of variegated Ranunculuses. Around the blossoms of the coral shrubs play the humming-birds of the ocean, little fish sparkling with red or blue metallic glitter, or gleaming in golden green, or in the brightest silvery lustre.

“Softly, like spirits of the deep, the delicate milk-white or bluish bells of the jelly-fishes float through this charmed world. Here the gleaming violet and gold-green Isabelle, and the flaming yellow, black, and vermilion-striped Coquette, chase their prey; there the band-fish shoots, snake-like, through the thicket, like a long silver ribbon, glittering with rosy and azure hues. Then come the fabulous cuttle-fish, decked in all colours of the rainbow, but marked by no definite outline, appearing and disappearing, intercrossing, joining company and parting again, in most fantastic ways; and all this in the most rapid change, and amid the most wonderful play of light and shade, altered by every breath of wind, and every slight curling of the surface of the ocean. When day declines, and the shades of night lay hold upon the deep, this fantastic garden is lighted up in new splendour. Millions of glowing sparks, little microscopic Medusas and Crustaceans, dance like glow-worms through the gloom. The sea-feather, which by daylight is vermilion-coloured, waves in a greenish, phosphorescent light. Every corner of it is

CHAPTER  
XII.

lustrous. Parts which by day were perhaps dull and brown, and retreated from the sight amid the universal brilliancy of colour, are now radiant in the most wonderful play of green, yellow, and red light; and to complete the wonders of the enchanted night, the silver disc, six feet across, of the moon-fish,\* moves, slightly luminous, among the crowd of little sparkling stars.

§ 675 “The most luxuriant vegetation of a tropical landscape cannot unfold as great wealth of form, while in the variety and splendour of colour it would stand far behind this garden landscape, which is strangely composed exclusively of animals, and not of plants; for, characteristic as the luxuriant development of vegetation of the temperate zones is of the sea bottom, the fulness and multiplicity of the marine Fauna is just as prominent in the regions of the tropics. Whatever is beautiful, wondrous, or uncommon in the great classes of fish and Echinoderms, jelly-fishes and polypes, and the molluscs of all kinds, is crowded into the warm and crystal waters of the tropical ocean—rests in the white sands, clothes the rough cliffs, clings, where the room is already occupied, like a parasite, upon the first comers, or swims through the shallows and depths of the elements—while the mass of the vegetation is of a far inferior magnitude. It is peculiar in relation to this, that the law valid on land, according to which the animal kingdom, being better adapted to accommodate itself to outward circumstances, has a greater diffusion than the vegetable kingdom; for the Polar Seas swarm with whales, seals, sea-birds, fishes, and countless numbers of the lower animals, even where every trace of

Continued  
extract  
from  
Schleiden.

\* *Orthogoriscus mola*.



vegetation has long vanished in the eternally frozen ice, and the cooled sea fosters no sea-weed—that this law, I say, holds good also for the sea, in the direction of its depth; for when we descend, vegetable life vanishes much sooner than the animal, and, even from the depths to which no ray of light is capable of penetrating, the sounding-lead brings up news at least of living infusoria.”

—SCHLEIDEN’S *Lectures*, p. 403-406.

CHAPTER  
XII.

Until the commencement of the plan of deep-sea soundings, as now conducted in the American Navy, the bottom of what the sailors call “blue water” was as unknown to us as is the interior of any of the planets of our system. Ross and Dupetit Thouars, with other officers of the English, French, and Dutch navies, had attempted to fathom the deep sea, some with silk threads, some with spun-yarn (coarse hemp threads twisted together), and some with the common lead and line of navigation. All of these attempts were made upon the supposition, that when the lead reached the bottom, either a shock would be felt, or the line, becoming slack, would cease to run out.

§ 676  
Deep-sea  
soundings

The series of systematic experiments recently made upon this subject, shows that there is no reliance to be placed on such a supposition; for the shock caused by striking bottom cannot be communicated through very great depths. Furthermore, the lights of experience show that, as a general rule, the under currents of the deep sea have force enough to take the line out long after the plummet has ceased to do so. Consequently, there is but little reliance to be placed upon deep-sea soundings of former methods, when the depths reported exceeded eight or ten thousand feet.

§ 677  
Mistaken  
notions.

CHAPTER  
XII.  
§ 678  
Failure of  
attempts to  
fathom the  
ocean.

Attempts to fathom the ocean, both by sound and pressure, had been made; but out in "blue water" every trial was only a failure repeated. The most ingenious and beautiful contrivances for deep-sea soundings were resorted to. By exploding heavy charges of powder in the deep sea, when the winds were hushed and all was still, the echo or reverberation from the bottom might, it was held, be heard, and the depth determined from the rate at which sound travels through water. But though the explosion took place many feet below the surface, echo was silent, and no answer was received from the bottom. Ericsson and others constructed deep-sea leads having a column of air in them, which, by compression, would show the aqueous pressure to which they might be subjected. This was found to answer well for ordinary purposes; but in the depths of the sea, where the pressure would be equal to several hundred atmospheres, the trial was more than this instrument could stand.

§ 679 Mr. Baur, an ingenious mechanician of New York, constructed, according to a plan which I furnished him, a deep-sea sounding apparatus. To the lead was attached, upon the principle of the screw propeller, a small piece of clock-work for registering the number of revolutions made by the little screw during the descent; and it having been ascertained, by experiment in shoal water, that the apparatus, in descending, would cause the propeller to make one revolution for every fathom of perpendicular descent, hands, provided with the power of self-registration, were attached to a dial, and the instrument was complete. It worked beautifully in moderate depths, but failed in "blue water," from the difficulty of hauling it up

Ingenious  
apparatus  
for sound-  
ing in  
"blue  
water."

if the line used were small, and from the difficulty of getting it down if the line used were large enough to give the requisite strength for hauling it up.

An old sea-captain proposed a torpedo, such as is sometimes used in the whale fishery for blowing up the monsters of the deep; only this one was intended to explode on touching the bottom. It was proposed first to ascertain by actual experiment the rate at which the torpedo would sink, and the rate at which the sound or the gas would ascend, and so, by *timing* the interval, to determine the depth. This plan would afford no specimens of the bottom, and its adoption was opposed by other obstacles.

One gentleman proposed to use the magnetic telegraph. The wire, properly coated, was to be laid up in the sounding-line, and to the plummet was attached machinery, so contrived, that at the increase of every hundred fathoms, and by means of the additional pressure, the circuit would be restored, somewhat after the manner of Dr. Locke's electro-chronograph, and a message would come up to tell how many hundred fathoms up and down the plummet had sunk. As beautiful as this idea was, it was not simple enough in practical application to answer our purposes.

Greater difficulties than any presented by the problem of deep-sea soundings had been overcome in other departments of physical research. These plans and attempts served to encourage; nor were they fruitless, though they proved barren of practical results. Astronomers had measured the volumes and weighed the masses of the most distant planets, and increased thereby the stock of

CHAPTER  
XII.§ 680  
Proposal  
of an old  
sea-captain.§ 681  
Another  
proposal.§ 682  
These failures not  
fruitless.

CHAPTER  
XII.

human knowledge. Was it creditable to the age that the depths of the sea should remain in the category of an unsolved problem? Its "ooze and bottom" was a sealed volume, rich with ancient and eloquent legends, and suggestive of many an instructive lesson that might be useful and profitable to man. The seal which covered it was of rolling waves many thousand feet in thickness. Could it not be broken? Curiosity had always been great; yet neither the enterprise nor the ingenuity of man had as yet proved itself equal to the task. No one had succeeded in penetrating, and bringing up from beyond the depth of two or three hundred fathoms below the aqueous covering of the earth any specimens of solid matter for the study of philosophers.

§ 683  
The sea an  
attractive  
subject to  
all.

The sea, with its myths, has suggested attractive themes to all people in all ages. Like the heavens, it affords an almost endless variety of subjects for pleasing and profitable contemplation; and there has remained in the human mind a longing to learn more of its wonders, and to understand its mysteries. The Bible often alludes to them. Are they past finding out? How deep is it? and what is at the bottom of it? Could not the ingenuity and appliances of the age throw some light upon these questions?

§ 684 The government was liberal and enlightened; times seemed propitious; but when or how to begin, after all these failures, with this interesting problem, was one of the difficulties first to be overcome.

§ 685  
Compari-  
son.

It was a common opinion, derived chiefly from a supposed physical relation, that the depths of the sea are about equal to the heights of the mountains. But this

conjecture was, at best, only a speculation. Though plausible, it did not satisfy. There were, in the depths of the sea, untold wonders and inexplicable mysteries: therefore the contemplative mariner, as in mid-ocean he looked down upon its gentle bosom, continued to experience sentiments akin to those which fill the mind of the devout astronomer when, in the stillness of the night, he looks out upon the stars, and wonders.

Nevertheless, the depths of the sea still remained as fathomless and as mysterious as the firmament above. Indeed, telescopes of huge proportions and of vast space-penetrating powers had been erected here and there by the munificence of individuals, and attempts made with them to gauge the heavens and sound out the regions of space. Could it be more difficult to sound out the sea than to gauge the blue ether and fathom the vaults of the sky? The result of the astronomical undertakings\* lies in the discovery that what, through other instruments of less power, appeared as clusters of stars, were, by those of larger powers, separated into groups, and what had been reported as *nebulæ* could now be resolved into clusters; that, in certain directions, the abyss beyond these faint objects is decked with other *nebulæ*, which these great instruments may bring to light, but cannot resolve; and that there are still regions and realms beyond, which the rays of the brightest sun in the sky have neither the intensity nor the force to reach, much less to penetrate. And what is more, these monster instruments have revealed to us, in those distant regions, forms or aggregations of matter which suggest to some the idea of the

CHAPTER  
XII.  
—

§ 686  
Depth of  
sea fath-  
omless  
and mys-  
terious.

---

\* See the works of Herschel and Rosse, and their telescopes.

CHAPTER XII.  
 — existence of physical forces there that we do not understand, and which raise the question in speculative minds, Is gravitation a universal thing, and do its forces penetrate every abyss of space?

§ 687 The fathoming of the ocean. Could we not gauge the sea as well as the sky, and devise an instrument for penetrating the depths of the ocean as well as the depths of space? Mariners were curious concerning the bottom of the sea. Though nothing thence had been brought to light, exploration had invested the subject with additional interest, and increased the desire to know more. In this state of the case, the idea of a common twine thread for a sounding-line, and a cannon-ball for a sinker, was suggested. It was a beautiful conception; for, besides its simplicity, it had in its favour the greatest of recommendations—it could be readily put into practice.

First attempts. Well-directed attempts to fathom the ocean began now to be made with such a line and plummet, and the public mind was astonished at the vast depths that were at first reported.

§ 688 Various ascertained depths. Lieutenant Walsh, of the United States schooner Taney, reported a cast with the deep-sea lead at thirty-four thousand feet without bottom. His sounding-line was an iron wire more than eleven miles in length. Lieutenant Berryman, of the United States brig Dolphin, reported another unsuccessful attempt to fathom mid-ocean with a line thirty-nine thousand feet in length. Captain Denham, of her Britannic Majesty's ship Herald, reported bottom in the South Atlantic at the depth of forty-six thousand feet; and Lieutenant J. P. Parker, of the United States frigate Congress, afterward, in at-



tempting to sound near the same region, let go his plummet, and saw it run out a line fifty thousand feet long, as though the bottom had not been reached.

The three last-named attempts were made with the sounding-twine of the American Navy, which has been introduced in conformity with a very simple plan for sounding out the depths of the ocean. It involved for each cast only the expenditure of a cannon-ball, and twine enough to reach the bottom. This plan was introduced as a part of the researches conducted at the National Observatory, and which have proved so fruitful and beneficial, concerning the winds and currents, and other phenomena of the ocean. These researches had already received the approbation of the Congress of the United States; for that body, in a spirit worthy of the representatives of a free and enlightened people, had authorized the Secretary of the Navy to employ three public vessels to assist in perfecting the discoveries, and in conducting the investigations connected therewith.

The plan of deep-sea soundings finally adopted, and now in practice, is this: Every vessel of the navy, when she puts to sea, is, if she desires it, furnished with a sufficient quantity of sounding-twine, carefully marked at every length of one hundred fathoms—six hundred feet—and wound on reels of ten thousand fathoms each. It is made the duty of the commander to avail himself of every favourable opportunity to try the depth of the ocean, whenever he may find himself out upon “blue water.” For this purpose he is to use a cannon-ball of thirty-two or sixty-eight pounds as a plummet. Having one end of the twine attached to it, the cannon-ball is to be thrown

CHAPTER  
XII.§ 689  
American  
sounding  
plummet,  
&c.§ 690  
Plan of  
deep-sea  
soundings  
now in  
practice.

CHAPTER overboard from a boat, and suffered to take the twine  
XII.  
— from the reel as fast as it will.

§ 691 The reel is made to turn easily. A silk thread, or  
the common wrapping-twine of the shops, would, it was  
Imple- thought, be strong enough for this purpose; for it was  
ment used. supposed there would be no strain upon the line, except  
the very slight one required to drag it down; and the  
twine having nearly the specific gravity of sea water, this  
strain would, it was imagined, be very slight. Moreover,  
when the shot reached the bottom, the line, it was thought,<sup>1</sup>  
would cease to run out; then breaking it off, and seeing  
how much remained upon the reel, the depth of the sea  
could be ascertained at any place and time, simply at the  
expense of one cannon-ball and a few pounds of common  
twine.

§ 692 But practical difficulties that were not expected at all  
Practical at every attempt to sound; and afterward showed themselves  
difficulties. at every attempt to sound; and it was before these prac-  
tical difficulties had been fairly overcome that the great  
soundings<sup>2</sup> were reported. In the first place, it was dis-  
covered that the line, once started and dragged down  
into the depths of the ocean, never would cease to run  
out,<sup>3</sup> and, consequently, that there was no means of know-  
ing when, if ever, the shot had reached the bottom. And  
in the next place, it was ascertained that the ordinary  
twine<sup>4</sup> would not do; that the sounding-line, in going down,  
was really subjected to quite a heavy strain, and that, con-  
sequently, the twine to be used must be strong. It was  
therefore subjected to a test which required it to bear a  
weight of at least sixty pounds freely suspended in the  
air. So we had to go to work anew, and make several  
Renewed attempts.

<sup>1</sup> § 676.<sup>2</sup> § 688.<sup>3</sup> § 677.<sup>4</sup> § 687.

hundred thousand fathoms of sounding-twine especially for the purpose. It was small, and stood the test required, a pound of it measuring about six hundred feet in length.

The officers intrusted with the duty soon found that the soundings could not be made from the vessel with any certainty as to the depth. It was necessary that a boat should be lowered, and the trial be made from it; the men with their oars keeping the boat from drifting, and maintaining it in such a position that the line should be "up and down" the while.

That the line would continue to run out after the cannon-ball had reached bottom, was explained by the conjecture, that there is in the ocean, as in the air, a system of currents and counter-currents, one above the other, and that it was one or more of these submarine currents, operating upon the bight of the line, which caused it to continue to run out after the shot had reached the bottom. In corroboration of this conjecture, it was urged, with a truth-like force of argument, that it was these under-currents, operating with a swigging force upon the bights of the line—for there might be several currents running in different directions, and operating upon it at the same time—which caused it to part whenever the reel was stopped and the line held fast in the boat.

A powerful train of circumstantial evidence was this, (and it was derived from a source wholly unexpected,) going to prove the existence of that system of oceanic circulation which the climates, and the offices and the adaptations of the sea require; and which its inhabitants, in their mute way, tell us of.

CHAPTER  
XII.  
—

§ 693

Method of  
sounding.

§ 694

Supposed  
cause of  
the line  
parting.

§ 695

Oceanic  
circulation  
indirectly  
proved.

CHAPTER  
XII.

§ 696  
Time of  
circulation  
commen-  
ing.

This system of circulation commenced on the third day of creation, with the "gathering together of the waters," which were "called seas," and doubtless will continue as long as sea water shall possess the properties of saltness and fluidity.

§ 697  
The law of  
descent  
establish-  
ed.

In making these deep-sea soundings, the practice is to time the hundred fathom marks as they successively go out; and by always using a line of the same size and "make," and a sinker of the same shape and weight, we at last established the law of descent. Thus the mean of our experiments gave us, for the sinker and twine used—

2 m. 21 s.	as the average time of descent from	400 to	500 fathoms.
3 m. 26 s.	"	"	1000 to 1100 "
4 m. 29 s.	"	"	1800 to 1900 "

§ 698 Now, by aid of the law here indicated, we could tell very nearly when the ball ceased to carry the line out, and when, of course, it began to go out in obedience to the current and drift alone; for currents would sweep the line out at a uniform rate, while the cannon-ball would drag it out at a decreasing rate.

§ 699  
Advant-  
tages of  
the dis-  
covery of  
the law of  
descent.

The development of this law was certainly an achievement, for it enabled us to show that the depth of the sea at the places named<sup>1</sup> was not so great as reports made it. These researches were interesting; the problem in hand was important, and it deserved every effort that ingenuity could suggest for reducing it to a satisfactory solution.

§ 700  
No speci-  
mens of  
bottom ob-  
tained.

As yet, no specimens of the bottom had been brought up. The line was too small, the shot was too heavy, and it could not be weighed; and if we could reach the bottom, why should we not know its character? In this

state of the case, Passed Midshipman J. M. Brooke, United States Navy, who at the time was associated with me on duty at the Observatory, proposed a contrivance by which the shot, on striking the bottom, would detach itself from the line, and send up a specimen of the bottom. This beautiful contrivance, called Brooke's Deep-sea Sounding Apparatus, is represented in Plates II. and III.

CHAPTER  
XII.

Brooke's  
new con-  
trivance.

A is a cannon ball, having a hole through it for the rod B. Plate II. represents the rod, B; the slings, D D, with the shot slung, and in the act of being lowered down. Plate III. represents the apparatus in the act of striking the bottom, and shows how the shot is detached, and how specimens of the bottom are brought up, by adhering to a little soap or tallow,\* called "arming," in the cup, C, at the lower end of the rod, B. With this contrivance, specimens of the bottom have been brought up from the depth of more than two miles.

The greatest depths at which the bottom of the sea has been reached with the plummet are in the North Atlantic Ocean, and the places where it has been fathomed do not show it to be deeper than twenty-five thousand feet.

§ 701

Greatest  
depths at-  
tained.

The deepest place in this ocean<sup>1</sup> is probably between the parallels of 35° and 40° north latitude, and immediately to the southward of the Grand Banks of Newfoundland. The first specimens have been received from the coral sea of the Indian Archipelago and from the North Pacific. They were collected by the surveying expedition employed in those seas. A few soundings have been made in the South Atlantic, but not enough to justify deduction as to its depths or the shape of its floor.

§ 702

Greatest  
probable  
depth.

\* The barrel of a common quill attached to the rod has been found to answer better.

<sup>1</sup> Plate XI.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## THE BASIN OF THE ATLANTIC.

Its Shape, § 704.—Plate XI., 709.—The Deepest Part of the Atlantic, 710.—The Use of Deep-sea Soundings, 713.—The Telegraphic Plateau, 714.—It extends around the Earth as a Ridge, 715.—The first Specimens with Brooke's Lead, 717.—The Bottom of the Sea a Burial-place, 724.—The levelling Agencies at work there, 730.—Marine Insects presented in a new Light, 734.—Conservators of the Sea, 739.—Calcareous Shells, 742.—Tallying marine Currents, 745.—A Cast of 7000 Fathoms in the Indian Ocean, 750.—Bottom from the Coral Sea, 751.—Microscopic Examination of, 753.—The Bed of the Ocean, 761.

CHAPTER  
XIII.

## § 703

Basin of  
Atlantic.

THE BASIN OF THE ATLANTIC, according to the deep-sea soundings made by the American Navy, in the manner described in the foregoing chapter, is shown on Plate VI. This plate refers chiefly to that part of the Atlantic which is included within our hemisphere.

§ 704 In its entire length, the basin of this sea is a long trough, separating the Old World from the New, and extending probably from pole to pole.

§ 705 This ocean-furrow was scored into the solid crust of our planet by the almighty hand, that there the waters which "he called seas" might be gathered together, so as to "let the dry land appear," and fit the earth for the habitation of man.

§ 706 From the top of Chimborazo to the bottom of the Atlantic, at the deepest place yet reached by the plummet in the North Atlantic, the distance, in a vertical line, is nine miles.

§ 707 Could the waters of the Atlantic be drawn off, so as  
its rugged  
grandeur. to expose to view this great sea-gash, which separates continents, and extends from the Arctic to the Antarctic, it would present a scene the most rugged, grand, and im-



posing. The very ribs of the solid earth, with the foundations of the sea, would be brought to light, and we should have presented to us at one view, in the empty cradle of the ocean, "a thousand fearful wrecks," with that dreadful array of dead men's skulls, great anchors, heaps of pearls and inestimable stones, which, in the dreamer's eye, lie scattered on the bottom of the sea, making it hideous with sights of ugly death.

To measure the elevation of the mountain-top above the sea, and to lay down upon our maps the mountain ranges of the earth, is regarded in geography as an important thing, and rightly so. Equally important is it, in bringing the physical geography of the sea regularly within the domains of science, to present its orography, by mapping out the bottom of the ocean, so as to show the depressions of the solid parts of the earth's crust there below the sea-level. § 708

Importance of the physical geography of the sea.

Plate XI. presents the second attempt at such a map. It relates exclusively to the bottom of that part of the Atlantic Ocean which lies north of 10° south. It is stippled with four shades; the darkest (that which is nearest the shore-line) shows where the water is less than six thousand feet deep; the next, where it is less than twelve thousand feet; the third, where it is less than eighteen thousand feet; and the fourth, or lightest, where it is not over twenty-four thousand feet deep. The blank space south of Nova Scotia and the Grand Banks includes a district within which very deep water has been reported, but, from casts of the deep-sea lead, which, upon discussion, do not appear satisfactory. § 709

Remarks on Plate XI.

The deepest part of the North Atlantic<sup>1</sup> is probably § 710

<sup>1</sup> § 702.

CHAPTER somewhere between the Bermudas and the Grand Banks, XIII. but how deep it may be yet remains for the cannon-ball and sounding-twine to determine.

§ 711 The waters of the Gulf of Mexico are held in a basin about a mile deep in the deepest part.

§ 712 THE BOTTOM OF THE ATLANTIC, or its depressions below the sea-level, are given, perhaps, on this plate, with as much accuracy as the best geographers have been enabled to show on a map the elevations above the sea-level of the interior either of Africa or Australia.

§ 713 “What is to be the use of these deep-sea soundings?” is a question that often occurs; and it is as difficult to be answered in categorical terms as Franklin’s question, “What is the use of a new-born babe?” Every physical fact, every expression of nature, every feature of the earth, the work of any and all of those agents which make the face of the world what it is and as we see it, is interesting and instructive. Until we get hold of a group of physical facts, we do not know what practical bearings they may have, though right-minded men know that they contain many precious jewels, which science, or the expert hand of philosophy, will not fail to bring out, polished and bright, and beautifully adapted to man’s purposes. Already we are obtaining practical answers to this question as to the use of deep-sea soundings; for, as soon as they were announced to the public, they forthwith assumed a practical bearing in the minds of men with regard to the question of a submarine telegraph across the Atlantic.

§ 714 There is at the bottom of this sea, between Cape Race in Newfoundland and Cape Clear in Ireland, a remarkable steppe, which is already known as the telegraphic

Plateau  
between  
Ireland  
and New-  
foundland

plateau.<sup>1</sup> A company is now engaged with the project of a submarine telegraph across the Atlantic. It is proposed to carry the wires along this plateau, from the eastern shores of Newfoundland to the western shores of Ireland. The great-circle distance between these two shore-lines is one thousand six hundred and forty miles, and the sea along the route is probably nowhere more than ten or twelve thousand feet deep. This company, it is understood, consists of men of enterprise and wealth, who have satisfied themselves as to the practicability of the scheme. They have made a contract with a party in England, who have agreed to deliver to them, by June 1858, a telegraphic cable, stretched from Ireland, upon this plateau, to Newfoundland. It was this company that attempted to stretch a telegraphic cable from Port au Basque, in Newfoundland, to Cape Breton, and lost it. It is hoped that no such failure will happen to the great line, for, with proper precaution and management, success is certain.

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
—  
Atlantic  
Telegraph  
Company.

There appears to be, corresponding to this elevation of § 715 the bottom of the sea, a ridge on the land which runs nearly, if not entirely, around the earth. Leaving this continent between the parallels of 45° and 50° north, the British Islands are within its range. Passing thence to the Continent, we recognise it in the great "divide" which separates the drainage of the Arctic Ocean from the drainage south. In Asia it rises up into a chain of steppes and mountains, extending across that continent from west to east, and disappearing on the shores of the Pacific. We do not know how it is at the bottom of the "Grand Ocean;" but the chain of Aleutian Islands, rising

A ridge on land corresponding with that in the sea.

<sup>1</sup> § 1025.

CHAPTER  
XIII.

out of the water midway between Asia and America, seems to suggest that it is there also. However, if we run the eye along to America, we shall perceive again, as soon as we come to this continent, indications of this ridge, which here divides the waters that flow north from those that seek the ocean in more southern latitudes.

§ 716

Specimens  
brought up  
from this  
ridge by  
Brooke's  
apparatus.

It was upon this ridge or plateau, as it crosses the Atlantic, that Brooke's sounding apparatus brought up its first trophies from the bottom of the sea. These specimens Lieutenant Berryman and his officers judged to be clay; but they took the precaution to label them, carefully to preserve them, and, on their return to the United States, to send them to the proper bureau. They were divided; a part was sent for examination to Professor Ehrenberg of Berlin, and a part to Professor Bailey of West Point, eminent microscopists both. I have not heard from the former, but the latter, in November 1853, thus responded:—

§ 717

Professor  
Bailey's  
remarks on  
specimens.

“I am greatly obliged to you for the deep soundings you sent me last week, and I have looked at them with great interest. They are exactly what I have wanted to get hold of. The bottom of the ocean at the depth of *more than two miles* I hardly hoped ever to have a chance of examining; yet, thanks to Brooke's contrivance, we have it clean and free from grease, so that it can at once be put under the microscope. I was greatly delighted to find that *all* these deep soundings are filled with microscopic shells; not a particle of sand or gravel exists in them. They are chiefly made up of perfect little calcareous shells (*Foraminifera*), and contain also a small number of silicious shells (*Diatomaceæ*).

“It is not probable that these animals lived at the depths where these shells are found; but I rather think that they inhabit the waters near the surface, and, when they die, their shells settle to the bottom. With reference to this point, I shall be very glad to examine bottles of water from various depths which were brought home by the Dolphin, and any similar materials, either ‘bottom’ or water from other localities. I shall study them carefully. . . . The results already obtained are of very great interest, and have many important bearings on geology and zoology. . . .

“I hope you will induce as many as possible to collect soundings with Brooke’s lead in all parts of the world, so that we can map out the animalculæ as you have the whales. Get your whalers also to collect mud from pancake ice, &c., in the Polar Regions; this is always full of interesting microscopic forms.”

These little mites of shells seem to form but a slender § 718  
clew indeed by which the chambers of the deep are to be Use of lit-  
threaded, and mysteries of the ocean revealed; yet the tle shells.

The first noticeable thing the microscope gives of these § 719  
specimens is, that all of them are of the animal, not one of the mineral kingdom.

The ocean teems with life, we know. Of the four § 720  
elements of the old philosophers—fire, earth, air, and The ocean  
water—perhaps the sea most of all abounds with living teems with  
life.  
creatures. The space occupied on the surface of our  
planet by the different families of animals and their re-  
mains is inversely as the size of the individual,—the

## CHAPTER

## XIII.

Space occupied by different animals.

smaller the animal, the greater the space occupied by his remains. Though not invariably the case, yet this rule to a certain extent is true, and will therefore answer our present purposes, which are simply those of illustration: Take the elephant and his remains, or a microscopic animal and his, and compare them. The contrast, as to space occupied, is as striking as that of the coral reef or island with the dimensions of the whale. The grave-yard that would hold the corallines is larger than the grave-yard that would hold the elephants.

§ 721 We notice another practical bearing in this group of

No sand among the small shells.

physical facts that Brooke's apparatus fished up from the bottom of the deep sea. Bailey, with his microscope,<sup>1</sup> could not detect a single particle of sand or gravel among these little mites of shells. They were from the great

Inference.

telegraphic plateau;<sup>2</sup> and the inference is, that there, if anywhere, the waters of the sea are at rest. There was not motion enough there to abrade these very delicate organisms, nor current enough to sweep them about and mix up with them a grain of the finest sand, nor the smallest particle of gravel torn from the loose beds of debris that here and there strew the bottom of the sea. This plateau is not too deep for the wire to sink down and rest upon; yet it is not so shallow that currents, or icebergs, or any abrading force, can derange the wire after it is once lodged upon it.

§ 722 As Professor Bailey remarks, the animalculæ, whose

Professor Bailey's remarks on the animalculæ.

remains Brooke's lead has brought up from the bottom of the deep sea, probably did not live or die there. They would have had no light there; and, had they lived there, their frail little textures would have been subjected in

<sup>1</sup> § 717.

<sup>2</sup> § 714.



their growth to a pressure upon them of a column of water twelve thousand feet high, equal to the weight of four hundred atmospheres. They probably lived and sported near the surface, where they could feel the genial influence of both light and heat, and were buried in the lichen caves below after death.

Brooke's lead and the microscope, therefore, it would § 723 seem, are about to teach us to regard the ocean in a new light. Its bosom, which so teems with animal life; its face, upon which time writes no wrinkles—makes no impression; are, it would now seem, as obedient to the great law of change as is any department whatever, either of the animal or the vegetable kingdom. It is now suggested that henceforward we should view the surface of the sea as a nursery teeming with nascent organisms, its depths as the cemetery for families of living creatures that outnumber the sands on the sea-shore for multitude.

New views  
of ocean  
opened  
up by  
Brooke's  
lead and  
micro-  
scope.

Where there is a nursery, hard by there will be found § 724 also a grave-yard: such is the condition of the animal world. But it never occurred to us before to consider the surface of the sea as one wide nursery, its every ripple as a cradle, and its bottom one vast burial-place.

Surface of  
the sea a  
nursery—  
the bottom  
a grave-  
yard.

On those parts of the solid portions of the earth's crust § 725 which are at the bottom of the atmosphere, various agents are at work, levelling both upward and downward. Heat and cold, rain and sunshine, the winds and the streams, all, assisted by the force of gravitation, are unceasingly wasting away the high places on the land, and as perpetually filling up the low.

Wasting  
agents on  
the earth's  
surface.

But in contemplating the levelling agencies that are at § 726 work upon the solid portions of the crust of our planet,

CHAPTER  
XIII.

one is led, at first thought, almost to the conclusion that the levelling agents, however active they may be at the bottom of the atmosphere, are comparatively powerless at the bottom of the sea.

No abrading processes in the sea.

§ 727 In the deep sea there are no abrading processes at work; neither frosts nor rains are felt there, and the force of gravitation is so paralyzed down there, that it cannot use half its power, as on the dry land, in tearing the overhanging rock from the precipice, and casting it down into the valley below.

§ 728 When considering the bottom of the ocean, we have, in the imagination, been disposed to regard the waters of the sea as a great cushion, placed between the air and the bed of the ocean to protect and defend it from these abrading agencies of the atmosphere.

Speculations.

§ 729 The geological clock may, we thought, strike new periods; its hands may point to era after era; but, so long as the ocean remains in its basin—so long as its bottom is covered with blue water—so long must the deep furrows and strong contrasts in the solid crust below stand out bold, ragged, and grand. Nothing can fill up the hollows there; no agent now at work, that we know of, can descend into its depths, and level off the floors of the sea.

Effects of animal-culæ on the bottom of ocean.

§ 730 But it now seems that we forgot these oceans of animal-culæ, that make the surface of the sea sparkle and glow with life. They are secreting from its surface solid matter for the very purpose of filling up those cavities below. These little marine insects are building their habitations at the surface and when they die, their remains, in vast multitudes, sink down and settle upon

the bottom. They are the atoms of which mountains are formed and plains spread out. Our marl-beds, the clay in our river-bottoms, large portions of many of the great basins of the earth, are composed of the remains of just such little creatures as these, which the ingenuity of Brooke and the industry of Berryman have enabled us to fish up from the depth of more than two miles (twelve thousand feet) below the sea-level.

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
—

These *foraminiferæ*, therefore, when living, may have been preparing the ingredients for the fruitful soil of a land that some earthquake or upheaval, in ages far away in the future, may be sent to cast up from the bottom of the sea for man's use.

§ 731  
Speculation.

The study of these "sunless treasures," recovered with so much ingenuity from the rich bottom of the sea, suggests new views concerning the physical economy of the ocean.

§ 732  
New views

In the chapter on the *Salts of the Sea*, p. 208, I endeavoured to show how sea-shells and marine insects may, by reason of the offices which they perform, be regarded as compensations in that exquisite system of physical machinery by which the harmonies of nature are preserved.

§ 733

But the treasures of the lead and revelations of the microscope present the insects of the sea in a new and still more striking light. We behold them now serving not only as compensations by which the motions of the water in its channels of circulation are regulated and climates softened, but acting also as checks and balances by which the equipoise between the solid and the fluid matter of the earth is preserved.

§ 734  
Effects produced by animal-culæ.

Should it be established that these microscopic crea-

§ 735

CHAPTER  
XIII.

Conserva-  
tors of the  
ocean.

tures live at the surface, and are only buried at the bottom of the sea, we may then view them as conservators of the ocean ; for, in the offices which they perform, they assist to preserve its *status* by secreting the salts which the rivers and the rains bring down to the sea, and thus maintain the purity of its waters.

§ 736 The waters of the Mississippi and the Amazon, together with all the streams and rivers of the world, both great and small, hold in solution large quantities of lime, soda, iron, and other matter. They discharge annually into the sea an amount of this soluble matter which, if precipitated and collected into one solid mass, would no doubt surprise and astonish the boldest speculator with its magnitude.

Substances  
discharged  
into sea by  
rivers.

§ 737 This soluble matter cannot be evaporated. Once in the ocean, there it must remain ; and as the rivers are continually pouring in fresh supplies of it, the sea, it has been argued, must continue to become more and more salt.

§ 738 Now, the rivers convey to the sea this solid matter mixed with fresh water, which, being lighter than that of the ocean, remains for a considerable time at or near the surface. Here the microscopic organisms of the deep-sea lead are continually at work, secreting this same lime and soda, &c., and extracting from the sea water all this solid mater, as fast as the rivers bring it down and empty it into the sea. They live and die at the surface, then sinking, the bottom of the sea is strewed with them.

Micro-  
scopic or-  
ganisms  
work on  
the sur-  
face.

§ 739 Thus we haul up from the deep sea specimens of dead animals, and recognise in them the remains of creatures which, though invisible to the naked eye, have nevertheless assigned to them a most important office in the phy-

What re-  
gulates the  
saltness of  
the sea.

sical economy of the universe, namely, that of regulating the saltness of the sea.<sup>1</sup> CHAPTER  
XIII.

This view suggests many contemplations. Among them, one in which the ocean is presented as a vast chemical bath, where the solid parts of the earth are washed, filtered, and precipitated again as solid matter, but in a new form, and with fresh properties. § 740  
Ocean a  
vast che-  
mical bath.

Doubtless it is only a re-adaptation—though it may be in an improved form—of old, and perhaps effete matter, to the uses and well-being of man.

These are speculations merely ; they may be fancies without foundation, but idle they are not, I am sure : for when we come to consider the agents by which the physical economy of this our earth is regulated, by which this or that result is brought about and accomplished in this beautiful system of terrestrial arrangements, we are utterly amazed at the offices which have been performed, the work which has been done, by the animalculæ of the water. § 741  
Apology  
for specu-  
lation

But whence come the little calcareous shells which Brooke's lead has brought up, in proof of its sounding, from the depth of two miles and a quarter? Did they live in the surface waters immediately above? or is their *habitat* in some remote part of the sea, whence, at their death, the currents were sent forth as pall-bearers, with the command to deposit their remains where the plummet found them? § 742  
Whence  
come the  
little  
shells.

In this view, these little organisms become doubly interesting. When dead, the descent of the shell to its final resting-place would not, it may be supposed, be very rapid. It would partake of the motion of the sea water § 743  
Descent of  
shells after  
death.

<sup>1</sup> § 563.

CHAPTER  
XIII.

in which it lived and died, and probably be carried along with it in its channels of circulation for many a long mile.

744 The microscope, under the eye of Ehrenberg, has enabled us<sup>1</sup> to put tallies on the wings of the wind, to learn of them somewhat concerning its "circuits."

§ 745 Now, may not these shells, which were so fine and impalpable that the officers of the Dolphin took them to be a mass of unctuous clay—may not, I say, these, with other specimens of soundings yet to be collected, be all converted by the microscope into tallies for the waters of the different parts of the sea, by which the channels through which the circulation of the ocean is carried on are to be revealed?

Shells may  
be guides  
to the  
course of  
ocean's  
circulation.

§ 746 Suppose, for instance, that the dwelling-place of the little shells which compose this specimen from that part of the ocean be ascertained, by referring to living types, to be the Gulf of Mexico, or some other remote region,—that the *habitat* and the burial-place, in every instance, be far removed from each other; by what agency, except through that of currents, can we suppose these little creatures—themselves not having the powers for more than a very restricted locomotion—to come from the place of their birth, or to travel to that of their burial?

Supposed  
case.

§ 747 Man can never see, he can only touch the bottom of the deep sea, and then only with the plummet. Whatever it brings up thence is to the philosopher matter of powerful interest; for by such information alone as he may gather from a most careful examination of such matter, the amount of human knowledge concerning nearly all that portion of our planet which is covered by the sea must depend.

Substance  
at bottom  
of sea in-  
teresting  
to philoso-  
pher



Every specimen of bottom from the deep sea is, therefore, to be regarded as probably containing something precious in the way of contribution to the sources of human knowledge; and each as it is brought up will be viewed with increasing interest, and will suggest to us thoughts more and more profitable concerning the wonders of the deep.

“There has been sent,” says Brooke, in a letter from the Surveying Expedition of the North Pacific, “a table of temperatures at various depths, from one hundred to five hundred fathoms, and two reports of experiments in deep-sea soundings. Several unsuccessful attempts to sound from the ship were made under the direction of Captain Ringgold, but were considered unworthy of a remark—in which opinion I coincide; for, at considerable depths, one is entirely dependent upon the times of the hundred fathoms. As a general thing, I suppose a hundred thousand fathoms would all be eventually taken from the reel by the drift of the ship. On one of these occasions a breeze sprang up on the quarter, shooting the ship ahead in such a manner as to render the cast utterly worthless.

“From our experience in the Indian Ocean and Coral Sea, I am inclined to believe that there is no depth from which specimens of the bottom may not be obtained. It will ever be a source of regret that, owing to circumstances beyond my control, we were unsuccessful in recovering the line and specimen after reaching bottom with 7040 fathoms in the Indian Ocean. Such opportunities are rare in that locality; yet, owing to the current of sixty miles, it will be a difficult matter to

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
§ 748

§ 749  
Brooke's  
remarks  
on tem-  
perature  
and sound-  
ings.

§ 750  
Remarks  
continued  
Indian  
Ocean.

determine the absolute depth. That current was not as superficial as one might at first suppose, for it was during the latter part of the operation that the boat experienced its effect, and it would seem that, had the current been superficial, the line would have given indication by tending ahead, whereas it ran right down. Moreover, that current was local, which adds to the probability of its depth.

§ 751 “The cast made in the Coral Sea was satisfactory in every respect. The arming-rod came up with its lower extremity completely coated with what appeared to be a calcareous clay of such adhesive and tenacious character as to preserve the marks of the shot made in slipping off. In fact, we had fallen upon one of those beds which evidently present the characteristic formations of England.”

§ 752 This specimen from the Coral Sea, lat. 13° south, long. 162° east, was brought up by Brooke’s sounding-rod from the reported depth of 2150 fathoms.

§ 753 Professor Bailey, to whom the specimen was sent for microscopic examination, replied: “You may be sure I was not backward in taking a look at the specimens you sent me, which, from their locality, promised to be so interesting. The sounding from 2150 fathoms, although small in quantity, is not bad in quality, yielding representatives of most of the great groups of microscopic organisms usually found in marine sediments.

Professor  
Bailey’s  
remarks  
on speci-  
mens.

“The predominant forms are silicious spicules of sponges. Various forms of these occur; some long and spindle-shaped or acicular, others pin-headed, some three-spined, &c., &c.

“The Diatoms (silicious infusoria of Ehrenberg) are

very few in number, and mostly fragmentary. I found, however, some perfect valves of a *Coscinodiscus*.

“The Foraminiferæ (*Polythalamia* of Ehrenberg) are very rare, only one perfect shell being seen, with a few fragments of others.

“The Polycistinæ are present, and some species of *Haliomma* were quite perfect. Fragments of other forms of this group indicate that various interesting species might be obtained if we had more of the material.

“You see by the above that this deep-sounding differs considerably from those obtained in the Atlantic. The Atlantic soundings were almost wholly composed of calcareous shells of the Foraminifera; these, on the contrary, contain very few Foraminiferæ, and are of a silicious rather than of a calcareous nature. This only makes the condition of things in the northern Atlantic the more interesting, because,” says this philosopher, “they prove that deep water is not necessarily underlaid by foraminiferous deposits, and that some peculiar local conditions of temperature, currents, or geological substratum, have made the North Atlantic a perfect vivarium for the calcareous forms.”

§ 754

Specimens  
different  
from those  
of the  
Atlantic.

“The chart<sup>1</sup> you send is very interesting, and combines a wonderful amount of interesting phenomena. I have little doubt that the history of the bottom of the ocean, as recorded by the sediments, would show a close relation to the facts determined for the surface, besides many unexpected relations. I am very anxious to get some soundings from the great ocean current that, as shown in your chart, sweeps in through the Caribbean Sea and along the coast of Mexico and Texas.

§ 755

Reference  
to Plate  
IX.

“I observe on your chart something which looks like § 756

<sup>1</sup> Plate IX.

CHAPTER  
XIII.Sargasso  
seas.

a sargasso sea south-east of Madagascar. Is it so? Get soundings, if possible, in these sargasso seas. Get soundings anywhere—everywhere. Even when they yield nothing, the negative fact is of value.”

§ 757  
Division of  
labour  
among  
animal-  
culæ.

Here, again, we perceive these little conservators of the sea at work. This specimen that Brooke has obtained for us comes from the coral regions, and the task of secreting the calcareous matter from the sea water appears to have been left by these little mites of creatures\* to the madre-pore and shell-fish, while these mites themselves undertook the hard task of getting the silicious matter out. The division of labour among the organisms of the sea is wonderful. It is a great work-shop, in which the machinery is so perfect that nothing ever goes wrong.

§ 758  
Specimens  
obtained  
from a  
depth of  
2700  
fathoms.

Specimens of the “ooze and bottom of the sea” have also been obtained by the ingenuity of Brooke from the depth of 2700 fathoms in the North Pacific, and examined by Professor Bailey.†

\* MAURY'S *Sailing Directions*, Seventh Edition, p. 155.

†

“WEST POINT, N. Y., *January 29, 1856.*

“MY DEAR SIR,—I have examined with much pleasure the highly interesting specimens collected by Lieutenant Brooke, of the United States Navy, which you kindly sent me for microscopic analysis, and I will now briefly report to you the results of general interest which I have obtained, leaving the enumeration of the organic contents and the description of new species for a more complete account, which I hope soon to publish. The specimens examined by me were as follows, namely:—

“No. 1. Sea bottom, 2700 fathoms; lat. 56° 46' N., long. 168° 18' E.; brought up July 19, 1855, by Lieutenant Brooke, with Brooke's lead.

“No. 2. Sea bottom, 1700 fathoms; lat. 60° 15' N., long. 170° 53' E.; brought up as above, July 26, 1855.

“No. 3. Sea bottom, 900 fathoms; temperature (deep sea), 32°, Saxton; lat. 60° 30' N., long. 175° E.

“A careful study of the above specimens gave the following results:—

“1st. All the specimens contain some mineral matter, which diminishes in proportion to the depth, and which consists of minute angular particles of quartz, hornblend, felspar, and mica.

“2d. In the deepest soundings (No. 1 and No. 2) there is the least mineral

We have now had specimens from the bottom of "blue water" in the narrow Coral Sea, the broad Pacific, and the long Atlantic, and they all tell the same story, namely, that the bed of the ocean is a vast cemetery. The ocean's bed has been found everywhere, wherever Brooke's sound-

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
§ 759  
Specimens  
all tell the  
same  
story.

matter, the organic contents, which are the same in all, predominating, while the reverse is true of No. 3.

"3d. All these specimens are *very rich* in the silicious shells of the Diatomaceæ, which are in an admirable state of preservation, frequently with the valves united, and even retaining the remains of the soft parts.

"4th. Among the Diatoms the most conspicuous forms are the large and beautiful discs of several species of *Coscinodiscus*. There is also, besides many others, a large number of a new species of *Rhizosolenia*, a new *Syndendrium*, a curious species of *Chætoceros*, with furcate horns, and a beautiful species of *Asteromphalus*, which I propose to call *Asteromphalus Brookei*, in honour of Lieutenant Brooke, to whose ingenious device for obtaining deep soundings, and to whose industry and zeal in using it, we are indebted for these and many other treasures of the deep.

"5th. The specimens contain a considerable number of silicious spicules of sponges, and of the beautiful silicious shells of the Polycistineæ. Among the latter I have noticed *Cornutella Clathrata* of Ehrenberg, a form occurring frequently in the Atlantic soundings. I have also noticed in all these soundings, and shall hereafter describe and figure, several species of *Eucyrtidium*, *Halicalyptra*, a *Perichlaridium*, a *Stylodictya*, and many others.

"6th. I have not been able to detect even a fragment of any of the calcareous shells of the Polythalamia. This is remarkable, from the striking contrast it presents to the deep soundings of the Atlantic, which are chiefly made up of these calcareous forms. This difference cannot be due to temperature, as it is well known that Polythalamia are abundant in the Arctic Seas.

"7th. These deposits of microscopic organisms, in their richness, extent, and the high latitudes at which they occur, resemble those of the Antarctic regions, whose existence has been proved by Ehrenberg, and the occurrence in these northern soundings of species of *Asteromphalus* and *Chætoceros* is another striking point of resemblance. These genera, however, are not exclusively polar forms, but, as I have recently determined, occur also in the Gulf of Mexico and along the Gulf Stream.

"8th. The perfect condition of the organisms in these soundings, and the fact that some of them retain their soft portions, indicate that they were very recently in a living condition; but it does not follow that they were living when collected at such immense depths. As among them are forms which are known to live along the shores as parasites upon the Algæ, &c., it is certain that a portion, at least, have been carried by oceanic currents, by drift ice, by animals which have fed upon them, or by other agents, to their present position. It is hence probable that all were removed from shallower waters in which they once lived. These forms are so minute, and would float so far when buoyed up by the gases evolved during decomposition, that there would be nothing surprising in finding

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
—  
Gulf  
Stream.

ing-rod has touched, to be soft, consisting almost entirely of the remains of infusoria. The Gulf Stream has literally strewed the bottom of the Atlantic with these microscopic shells; for the Coast Survey has caught up the same infusoria in the Gulf of Mexico and at the bottom of the Gulf Stream off the shores of the Carolinas, that Brooke's apparatus brought up from the bottom of the Atlantic off the Irish coast.

§ 760 The unabraded appearance of these shells, and the almost total absence of the mixture of any detritus from the sea or foreign matter, suggest most forcibly the idea of perfect repose at the bottom of the deep sea.

Perfect repose at the bottom of the sea.

§ 761 Some of the specimens that Brooke's apparatus has brought up are as pure and as free from the sand of the sea as the snow-flake that falls, when it is calm, upon the lea, is from the dust of the earth. Indeed, these soundings suggest the idea that the sea, like the snow-cloud with its flakes in a calm, is always letting fall upon its bed showers of these microscopic shells; and then we readily imagine that the "sunless wrecks," which strew its bottom, are, in the process of ages, hid under this

Showers of small shells.

---

them in any part of the ocean, even if they were not transported, as it is certain they often are, by the agents above referred to.

"9th. In conclusion, it is to be hoped that the example set by Lieutenant Brooke will be followed by others, and that, in all attempts to make deep soundings, the effort to bring up a portion of the bottom will be made. The soundings from any part of the ocean are sure to yield something of interest to the microscopic analysis, and it is as yet impossible to tell what important results may flow from their study

"The above is only a preliminary notice of the soundings referred to. I shall proceed without delay to describe and figure the highly interesting and novel forms which I have detected, and I hope soon to have them ready for publication.

"Yours, very respectfully,

"J. W. BAILEY.

"LIEUTENANT M. F. MAURY,

"National Observatory, Washington City, D. C."



fleecy covering, presenting the rounded appearance which is seen over the body of the traveller who has perished in the snow-storm. The ocean, especially within and near the tropics, swarms with life. The remains of its myriads of moving things are conveyed by currents, and scattered and lodged in the course of time all over its bottom. This process, continued for ages, has covered the depths of the ocean as with a mantle, consisting of organisms as delicate as the maddled frost, and as light as the undrifted snow-flake on the mountain<sup>1</sup>

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
—  
How, and  
with what  
the bottom  
of the  
ocean is  
covered.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 1025.

## CHAPTER XIV.

## THE WINDS.

Belt of South-east broader than North-east, § 764.—Tracks of Vessels across the South-east Trades, 767.—Scenes in the Trade-wind Regions, 770.—The Effect of South Africa and America upon the Winds, 779.—Monsoons, 787.—Dove's Theory, 789.—Proof that the South-west Monsoons are the South-east Trades deflected, 797.—How the South-west Monsoons march toward the Equator, 806.—How the Monsoon Season may be known, 809.—Influence of Deserts upon the Winds, 810.—Changing of the Monsoons, 819.—West Monsoon in Java Sea, 823.—Water-spouts, 826.—Influence of Currents upon Winds, 829.—The Calm Belts, 835.—The Equatorial Calms, 837.—The Horse Latitudes, 840.—The Westerly Winds, 843.—The brave West Winds of the Southern Hemisphere, 846.

CHAPTER XIV.  
§ 762 PLATE VIII. is a chart of the winds, based on information derived from the Pilot Charts, one of the series of Maury's Wind and Current Charts. The object of this chart is to make the student acquainted with the prevailing direction of the wind in every part of the ocean.

The arrows of the plate are supposed to fly with the wind; the half-bearded and half-feathered arrows denoting monsoons or periodic winds; the dotted bands, the regions of calm and baffling winds.

§ 763 Monsoons, properly speaking, are winds which blow one half of the year from one direction, and the other half from an opposite, or nearly an opposite direction.

Let us commence the study of Plate VIII. by examining the trade-wind region; that, also, is the region in which monsoons are most apt to be found.

§ 764 The belt or zone of the south-east trade-winds is broader than the belt or zone of north-east trades. This phenomenon is explained by the fact that there is more land in the northern hemisphere, and that most of the deserts of the earth—as the great deserts of Asia and Africa—are situated in the rear, or behind the north-east

Zone of south-east trade-winds broader than north-east.

trades; so that, as these deserts become more or less heated, there is a call—a pulling back, if you please—upon these trades to turn about and restore the equilibrium which the deserts destroy. There being few or no such regions in the rear of the south-east trades, the south-east trade-wind force prevails, and carries them over into the northern hemisphere.

By resolving the forces which it is supposed are the principal forces that put these winds in motion, namely, calorific action of the sun and diurnal rotation of the earth, we are led to the conclusion that the latter is much the greater of the two in its effects upon those of the northern hemisphere. But not to such an extent is it greater in its effects upon those of the southern. We see by the plate that those two opposing currents of wind are so unequally balanced that the one recedes before the other, and that the current from the southern hemisphere is larger in volume; *i. e.*, it moves a greater zone or belt of air. The south-east trade-winds discharge themselves over the equator—*i. e.*, across a great circle—into the region of equatorial calms; while the north-east trade-winds discharge themselves into the same region over a parallel of latitude, and consequently over a small circle. If, therefore, we take what obtains in the Atlantic as the type of what obtains entirely around the earth, as it regards the trade-winds, we shall see that the south-east trade-winds keep in motion more air than the north-east do, by a quantity at least proportioned to the difference between the circumference of the earth at the equator and at the parallel of latitude of 9° north. For if we suppose that these two perpetual currents of air extend the same distance from the surface of the earth, and move with the same velocity, a greater

§ 765  
The forces  
that put  
winds in  
motion

Effect of  
unequal  
balance.

South-east  
and north-  
east trades  
contrasted.

CHAPTER  
XIV.

volume from the south would flow across the equator in a given time than would flow from the north over the parallel of  $9^\circ$  in the same time; the ratio between the two quantities would be as radius to the secant of  $9^\circ$ . Besides this, the quantity of land lying within and to the north of the region of the north-east trade-winds is much greater than the quantity within and to the south of the region of the south-east trade-winds. In consequence of this, the mean level of the earth's surface within the region of the north-east trade-winds is, it may reasonably be supposed, somewhat above the mean level of that part which is within the region of the south-east trade-winds.

Obstruc-  
tions to  
north-east  
trades.

And as the north-east trade-winds blow under the influence of a greater extent of land surface than the south-east trades do, the former are more obstructed in their course than the latter, by the forests, the mountain ranges, unequally heated surfaces, and other such like inequalities.

§ 766

Effect of  
momentum  
of  
south-east  
trades.

As already stated, the investigations show that the momentum of the south-east trade-winds is sufficient to push the equatorial limits of their northern congeners back into the northern hemisphere, and to keep them, at a mean, as far north as the ninth parallel of north latitude. Besides this fact, they also indicate that while the north-east trade-winds, so called, make an angle in their general course of about  $23^\circ$  with the equator (east-north-east), those of the south-east make an angle of  $30^\circ$  or more with the equator (south-east by east),—I speak of those in the Atlantic;—thus indicating that the latter approach the equator more directly in their course than do the others, and that, consequently, the effect of the diurnal rotation of the earth being the same for like parallels north and south, the calorific influence of the

South-east  
trades are  
fresher  
than  
north-east.

sun exerts more power in giving motion to the southern than to the northern system of Atlantic trade-winds; in other words, the south-east trade-winds are, on the average, fresher than the north-east. CHAPTER  
XIV.

The south-east trade-winds of the Atlantic, particularly in our summer and autumn months, haul more and more toward the south as they approach the equator. The tracks of vessels bound to India from Europe show this in a very striking manner. They cross the equator generally about the meridian of  $20^{\circ}$  west; there they find the wind from south-east, frequently from south-south-east, which forces the vessel off upon a course west of south. As the vessel gets south, the winds haul more and more to the east, so that, before clearing the belt of the south-east trades, the India-bound trader is steering to the east of south. § 767  
Tracks of  
vessels to  
India.

That the land of the northern hemisphere does assist to turn these winds, is rendered still more probable from this circumstance: All the great deserts are in the northern hemisphere, and the land-surface is also much greater on our side of the equator. The action of the sun upon these unequally-absorbing and radiating surfaces in and behind, or to the northward, of the north-east trades, tends to check these winds, and to draw in large volumes of the atmosphere, that otherwise would be moved by them, to supply the partial vacuum made by the heat of the sun, as it pours down its rays upon the vast plains of burning sands and unequally heated land-surfaces in our overheated hemisphere. The north-west winds of the southern are also, it may be inferred, stronger than the south-west winds of the northern hemisphere. § 768  
Land of  
northern  
hemi-  
sphere  
assists to  
turn these  
winds.

“A ship leaving the English Channel to go to the equator generally aims,” says Jansen, “to come too soon § 769

CHAPTER  
XIV.Jansen's  
remarks  
on ships  
and winds.

into the north-east trade. The winds which prevail most, northward of the calm belt of Cancer, are the south-west. Wind and weather, in this part of the Atlantic Ocean, are very unreliable and changeable; nevertheless, in the summer months, we find permanent north winds along the coast of Portugal. These north winds are worthy of attention, the more so from the fact that they occur simultaneously with the African monsoon, and because we then find northerly winds also in the Mediterranean, and in the Red Sea, and farther eastward to the north of the Indian monsoon.

§ 770

Dutch  
shipssteer-  
ing for  
Cape Verd  
Islands.

“When, between the months of May and November, during which the African monsoon prevails, the Dutch ships, which have lingered in the calm belt of Cancer, run with the north-east trade and direct their course for the Cape Verd Islands, then it seems as if they were in another world. The sombre skies and changeable—alternately chilly and sultry—weather of our latitudes are replaced by a regular temperature and good settled weather. Each one rejoices in the glorious heavens, in which none save the little trade-clouds are to be seen; which clouds in the trade-wind region make the sunset so enchanting. The dark blue water, in which many and strange kinds of echinas sport in the sunlight, and, when seen at a distance, make the sea appear like one vast field adorned with flowers; the regular swellings of the waves with their silvery foam, through which the flying-fishes flutter; the beautifully-coloured dolphins; the diving schools of tunnies;—all these banish afar the monotony of the sea,\* awake the love of life in the youth-

Beauties of  
the sea.

---

\* When we, as our forefathers did, preserve in the journals all that we observe at sea, then we shall have abundant material with which to keep ourselves pleasantly occupied.



ful seaman, and attune his heart to goodness. Everything around him fixes his attention and increases his astonishment.

CHAPTER  
XIV.

“If all the outbreathings of heartfelt emotion which the contemplation of nature forces from the sailor were recorded in the log-books, how much farther should we be advanced in the knowledge of the natural state of the sea! Once wandering over the ocean, he begins to be impressed, by the grand natural tableau around him, with feelings deep and abiding. The most splendid fore-castle is lost in the viewless surface, and brings home to us the knowledge of our nothingness; the greatest ship is a plaything for the billows, and the slender keel seems to threaten our existence every moment. But when the eye of the mind is permitted to wander through space and into the depths of the ocean, and is able to form a conception of Infinity and of Omnipotence, then it knows no danger; it is elevated—it comprehends itself. The distances of the heavenly bodies are correctly estimated; and, enlightened by astronomy, with the aid of the art of navigation, of which Maury’s Wind and Current Charts form an important part, the shipmaster marks out his way over the ocean just as securely as any one can over an extended heath. He directs his course toward the Cape Verd Islands, and is carried there by the lively trade-wind. Yet beyond the islands, sooner or later, according to what month it is, the clear skies begin to be clouded, the trade-wind abates and becomes unsteady, the clouds heap up, the thunder is heard, heavy rains fall; finally, the stillness is death-like, and we have entered the belt of calms. This belt moves toward the north from May to September. It is a remarkable phenomenon that the annual movements of the trades and calm belts

§ 771  
Reflections on  
ocean’s  
grandeur.

The sail-  
or’s cer-  
tainty in  
traversing  
the sea.

The belt of  
calms.

CHAPTER  
XIV.

Atmo-  
sphere and  
ocean  
united in  
marriage.

from south to north, and back again, do not directly follow the sun in its declination, but appear to wait until the temperature of the sea water puts it in motion. The trades and the belt of calms do not decline before the temperature of  $80^{\circ}$  of the water in the North Atlantic Ocean turns it southward; and in the spring they do not go northward until the temperature of  $80^{\circ}$  returns it thence. Is it not as if the atmosphere and the ocean were united in marriage, and go hand in hand to stand by and to care for each other, so that they may fulfil all their duties together?

§ 772  
Move-  
ments of  
the belt of  
calms.

“If a ship which has come into the belt of calms, between May and September, can lie still in the place where it came into this belt,—cast anchor, for example,—then it would perceive a turning of the monsoon or of the trade-wind. It would see the belt of calms draw away to the north, and afterward get the south-west monsoon, or, standing more westerly, perhaps the south-east trade. On the contrary, later than September, this ship lying at anchor will see the north-east gradually awake. The belt of calms then moves toward the south, and removes from the ship, which remains there anchored on the north side.”\*

§ 773  
Influence  
of land on  
direction  
of winds.

The investigations that have taken place at the Observa-  
tory show that the influence of the land upon the normal  
directions of the wind at sea is an immense influence.  
It is frequently traced for a thousand miles or more out  
upon the ocean. For instance, the action of the sun's  
rays upon the great deserts and arid plains of Africa, in

---

\* *Natuurkundige Beschrijving der zeeën*, door M. F. Maury, LL.D., Luitenant der Nord-Amerikaansche Marine, vertaald door M. H. Jansen, Luitenant der Zee (Bijdrage). Dordrecht, P. K. Braat. 1855

the summer and autumnal months, is such as to be felt nearly across the Atlantic Ocean between the equator and the parallel of  $13^{\circ}$  north. Between this parallel and the equator, the north-east trade-winds, during these seasons, are arrested in their course by the heated plains of Africa; instead of "blowing home" to the equator, they stop and ascend over the desert sands of the continent. The south-east trade-winds, arriving at the equator during this period, and finding no north-east trades there to contest their crossing the line, continue their course, and blow *home* as a south-west monsoon to the deserts where they ascend. These southwardly monsoons bring the rains which divide the seasons in these parts of the African coast. The region of the ocean embraced by these monsoons is cuneiform in its shape, having its base resting upon Africa, and its apex stretching over till within  $10^{\circ}$  or  $15^{\circ}$  of the mouth of the Amazon.

Monsoons

Indeed, when we come to study the effects of South America and Africa (as developed by the Wind and Current Charts) upon the winds at sea, we should be led to the conclusion, had the foot of civilized man never trod the interior of these two continents, that the climate of one is humid,—that its valleys are, for the most part, covered with vegetation, which protects its surface from the sun's rays; while the plains of the other are arid and naked, and, for the most part, act like furnaces in drawing the winds from the sea to supply air for the ascending columns which rise from its over-heated plains.

§ 774  
Effects of  
South  
America  
and Africa  
on winds  
at sea.

Fushing these facts and arguments still farther, these beautiful and interesting researches seem already sufficient almost to justify the assertion, that, were it not for the Great Desert of Sahara and other arid plains of Africa,

§ 775  
Effects of  
Great  
Desert of  
Sahara, &c

CHAPTER the western shores of that continent, within the trade-  
 XIV. — wind region, would be almost, if not altogether, as rainless  
 and sterile as the desert itself.

§ 776 Lieutenant Jansen has called my attention to a vein  
 of wind which forms a current in the air as remarkable  
 as that of the Gulf Stream is in the sea. This atmospher-  
 ical Gulf Stream is in the south-east trade-winds of the  
 Atlantic. It extends from near the Cape of Good Hope  
 in a direct line to the equator, on the meridian of Cape  
 St. Roque.<sup>1</sup> The homeward route from the Cape of Good  
 Hope lies in the middle of this vein; in it the winds are  
 more steady than in any other part of the Atlantic. On  
 the edges of this remarkable aerial current the wind is  
 variable, and often fitful. The homeward-bound Indiaman  
 resorts to and uses this stream in the atmosphere as the  
 European-bound American does the Gulf Stream. It is  
 shaded on the plate.

§ 777 These investigations, with their beautiful developments,  
 eagerly captivate the mind; giving wings to the imagin-  
 ation, they teach us to regard the sandy deserts and arid  
 plains, and the inland basins of the earth as compensa-  
 tions in the great system of atmospherical circulation.  
 Like counterpoises to the telescope, which the ignorant  
 regard as encumbrances to the instrument, these wastes  
 serve as make-weights, to give certainty and smoothness  
 of motion, facility and accuracy to the workings of the  
 machine.

§ 778 When we travel out upon the ocean, and get beyond  
 the influence of the land upon the winds, we find our-  
 selves in a field particularly favourable for studying the  
 general laws of atmospherical circulation. Here, beyond

<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

the reach of the great equatorial and polar currents of the sea, there are no unduly-heated surfaces, no mountain ranges, or other obstructions to the circulation of the atmosphere,—nothing to disturb it in its natural courses. The sea, therefore, is the field for observing the operations of the general laws which govern the movements of the great aerial ocean. Observations on the land will enable us to discover the exceptions, but from the sea we shall get the rule. Each valley, every mountain range and local district, may be said to have its own peculiar system of calms, winds, rains, and droughts. But not so the surface of the broad ocean; over it the agents which are at work are of a uniform character.

RAIN-WINDS are the winds which convey the vapour from the sea, where it is taken up, to other parts of the earth, where it is let down, either as snow, hail, or rain. As a general rule, the trade-winds may be regarded as the evaporating winds; and when, in the course of their circuit, they are converted into monsoons, or the variables of either hemisphere, they then generally become also the rain-winds—especially the monsoons—for certain localities. Thus the south-west monsoons of the Indian Ocean are the rain-winds for the west coast of Hindostan.<sup>1</sup> In like manner the African monsoons of the Atlantic are the winds which feed the springs of the Niger and the Senegal with rains.

Upon every water-shed which is drained into the sea, the precipitation, for the whole extent of the shed so drained, may be considered as greater than the evaporation by the amount of water which runs off through the river into the sea. In this view, all rivers may be

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—

§ 779  
Rain-  
winds.

§ 780  
Precipita-  
tion com-  
pared with  
evapora-  
tion.

<sup>1</sup> § 202.

CHAPTER  
XIV.

regarded as immense rain-gauges, and the volume of water annually discharged by any one as an expression of the quantity which is annually evaporated from the sea, carried back by the winds, and precipitated throughout the whole extent of the valley that is drained by it. Now, if we knew the rain-winds from the dry for each locality and season generally throughout such a basin, we should be enabled to determine, with some degree of probability at least, as to the part of the ocean from which such rains were evaporated. And thus, notwithstanding all the eddies caused by mountain chains and other uneven surfaces, we might detect the general course of the atmospherical circulation over the land as well as the sea, and make the general courses of circulation in each valley as obvious to the mind of the philosopher as is the current of the Mississippi, or of any other great river, to his senses.

§ 781

The  
sources  
whence  
the Ama-  
zon and  
Mississippi  
get their  
water.

These investigations as to the rain-winds at sea indicate that the vapours which supply the sources of the Amazon with rain are taken up from the Atlantic Ocean by the north-east and south-east trade-winds; and many circumstances, some of which have already been detailed,<sup>1</sup> tend to show that the winds which feed the Mississippi with rains get their vapour in the south-east trade-wind region of the other hemisphere. For instance, we know from observation that the trade-wind regions of the ocean, beyond the immediate vicinity of the land, are, for the most part, rainless regions; and that the trade-wind zones may be described, in a hyetographic sense, as the evaporating regions.<sup>2</sup> They also show, or rather indicate, as a general rule, that, leaving the polar limits of the two

<sup>1</sup> § 389.<sup>2</sup> § 32.



trade-wind systems, and approaching the nearest pole, the precipitation is greater than the evaporation until the point of maximum cold is reached.

And we know also that, as a *general* rule, the south-east and north-east trade-winds, which come from a lower and go to a higher temperature, are the evaporating winds,—*i. e.*, they evaporate more than they precipitate; while those winds which come from a higher and go to a lower temperature are the rain-winds,—*i. e.*, they precipitate more than they evaporate. That such is the case, not only do researches indicate, but reason teaches and philosophy intimates.

These views, therefore, suggest the inquiry as to the sufficiency of the Atlantic, after supplying the sources of the Amazon and its tributaries with their waters, to supply also the sources of the Mississippi and the St. Lawrence, and of all the rivers, great and small, of North America and Europe.

A careful study of the rain-winds,<sup>1</sup> in connection with the *Wind and Current Charts*, will probably indicate to us the “springs in the ocean” which supply the vapours for the rains that are carried off by those great rivers. “All the rivers run into the sea, yet the sea is not full; unto the place from whence the rivers come, thither they return again.”

MONSOONS<sup>2</sup> are, for the most part, formed of trade-winds. When, at stated seasons of the year, a trade-wind is deflected in its regular course from one quadrant to another, or drawn in by over-heated districts, it is regarded as a monsoon. Thus the African monsoons of the Atlantic,<sup>3</sup> the monsoons of the Gulf of Mexico, and the Central

CHAPTER  
XIV.

§ 782

South-east  
and north-  
east trade-  
winds are  
evaporat-  
ing winds.

§ 783

Query re-  
garding  
the Atlan-  
tic.

§ 786

Springs in  
the ocean.

§ 787

Monsoons

<sup>1</sup> § 32.<sup>2</sup> § 763.<sup>3</sup> Plate VIII.

CHAPTER XIV.  
 — American monsoons of the Pacific, are, for the most part, formed of the trade-winds, which are turned back or deflected to restore the equilibrium which the over-heated plains of Africa, Utah, Texas, and New Mexico, have disturbed. When the monsoons prevail for five months at a time—for it takes about a month for them to change and become settled—then both they and the trade-winds, which they replace, are called monsoons.

§ 788 The north-east and the south-west monsoons of the Indian Ocean afford an example of this kind. A force is exerted upon the north-east trade-winds of that sea by the disturbance which the heat of summer creates in the atmosphere over the interior plains of Asia, which is more than sufficient to neutralize the forces which cause those winds to blow as trade-winds; it arrests them, and were it not for the peculiar conditions of the land about that ocean, what are now called the north-east monsoons would blow the year round. There would be no south-west monsoons there; and the north-east winds, being perpetual, would become all the year what in reality for several months they are, namely, north-east trade-winds.

§ 789 As long ago as 1831, Dove\* maintained that the south-west monsoon was the south-east trade-wind rushing forward to fill the vacant places over the northern deserts. Dove admits the proofs of this to be indirect, and acknowledges the difficulty of finding out and demonstrating the problem.†

§ 790 I had been studying the wind in his circuits, and

---

\* *Vide* Pogg, Ann. xxi.

† *Annalen der Physik*, No. 94. Translated by Dr. Rosengarten for the American Journal of Science, vol. xx., No. 60.

hundreds of sailors were watching the vane for me ; and my good friend Jansen encouraged me, by his reasoning and suggestions, to undertake the task of proving this difficult proposition of Mr. Dove.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—

The north-east and south-east trade-winds meet, we know,<sup>1</sup> near the equator, where they produce<sup>2</sup> the belt of equatorial calms. All vessels that pass from one system of trade-winds to the other have to cross this calm belt. Sometimes they clear it in a few hours, sometimes they are delayed in it for weeks ; and the calm is so still, and the rain so copious, that the fresh water is sometimes found standing in pools on the sea.

§ 791  
Belt of  
equatorial  
calms.

If it be true, as Dove maintains, that the south-west monsoons of the Indian Ocean are the south-east trade-winds of that sea pressing up toward the desert regions of Asia, then a vessel bound hence to Calcutta, for instance, and entering the Indian Ocean at the time of the south-west monsoon, should find no belt of equatorial calms there at all, but, on the contrary, she should find the south-east trade-wind to haul more and more to the south, until finally, without having crossed any belt of equatorial calms, she would find her sails trimmed to the south-west monsoon.

§ 792  
Remarks  
on Dove's  
opinion.

In like manner, Jansen maintains that the north-west monsoon is a similar deflection of the north-east trade-wind.

§ 793  
Jansen's  
opinion.

I had many log-books relating to the Indian Ocean, and I had already, at the commencement of my labours on the Wind and Current Charts, essayed an examination into the monsoons of the Indian Ocean ; but the materials on hand at that time proved insufficient. They

§ 794  
Progress  
of investi-  
gation.

<sup>1</sup> § 122.

<sup>2</sup> § 162.

CHAPTER XIV. have been accumulating ever since ; and though not yet ample enough to settle definitively such a question, they are, nevertheless, sufficient to throw some valuable and certain light upon the subject. Encouraged by Jansen, and the number of log-books, I have recently put the materials in the hands of Lieutenant West for co-ordination.

§ 795 The result is, *they GIVE NO INDICATION of ANY calm belt between the south-east trade-wind and the south-west monsoon of the Indian Ocean.*

§ 796 The Desert of Cobi and the arid wastes of Asia<sup>1</sup> are the causes of these monsoons. When the sun is north of the equator, the force of his rays, beating down upon these wide and thirsty plains, is such as to cause the vast superincumbent body of air to expand and ascend. Consequently, there is an indraught of air from the surrounding regions to supply the ascending column. The air that is going to feed the north-east trades is thus arrested, drawn in, heated, and caused to ascend ; and so, the north-east trade-winds are first weakened, then “killed,” and afterward drawn into the vortex of ascending air over the burning sands of the deserts. On the other hand, the south-east trade-wind, failing, when it arrives at the place where the equatorial Doldrums were wont to be, to meet with them or any opposing force from the north-east trades, are drawn over into the northern hemisphere. Going now from the equator toward the poles, their tendency is<sup>2</sup> to obey the forces of diurnal rotation, as well as those of the indraught for the heated plains ; and thus the south-east trades become south-west monsoons. In this view, the “equatorial Doldrums” of the Indian

<sup>1</sup> § 202.

<sup>2</sup> § 126.

Ocean are transferred, as it were, during the south-west monsoons, to the deserts of Central Asia. CHAPTER  
XIV.

It may be asked by some saying, Since we cannot always tally the air, how do we know that these south-west monsoons are the south-east trades of the Indian Ocean? The reply is, We infer that they are, because, in co-ordinating for the Pilot Chart of that sea, we have *found*<sup>1</sup> *no belt of calms between the south-east trades and the south-west monsoons*, but a gradual change, so to speak, of the one wind into the other. Thus, confining ourselves to August,—one of the south-west monsoon months,—and to the strip of ocean between 85° and 90° east, the investigation gives as follows for calms and winds in the field between— § 797  
Reply to  
objection.

10° S. and 5° S.	133 observations.	0 calms.	Wind S.E.
5° S. and 0°	102	3	„ S.
0° and 5° N.	99	3	„ S.W.
5° N. and 10° N.	77	0	„ S.W.

These monsoons do not, as we are generally taught to suppose, commence or end at the same time all over the Indian Ocean. § 798

The Pilot Charts (Plate V.) have brought this fact out in very bold relief. Take, as an illustration, the strip of ocean between the meridians of 85° and 90° east, south of Calcutta, and as far as the equator. Let us divide it into “fields” (Plate V.), by drawing across it lines to represent the parallels of 5°, 10°, 15°, and 20° north. § 799  
Pilot  
Charts.

In the first “field” below Calcutta,—*i. e.*, between the land and 20° north,—the north-east trade-winds, toward the latter part of January, begin their conflict with the south-west monsoons. The conflict rages in February, § 800  
References  
to Plate V

<sup>1</sup> § 795.

CHAPTER  
XIV.

Causes and  
courses of  
monsoons  
and trade-  
winds.

and by March the south-west monsoons in that "field" are considered to have regularly set in. They now remain the dominant wind for upwards of six months, until some time in the early part of September. The north-east monsoons or trades now renew the conflict, which is carried on with more and more vigour until the latter part of November, when they obtain the ascendancy, and prevail until the latter part of January, when, as before stated, the south-west monsoons commence their annual struggle for the mastery.

§ 801 In the next "field" below,—*i. e.*, between  $15^{\circ}$  and  $20^{\circ}$  north latitude,—the north-east monsoons begin to grow light and variable, and to have conflicts with the south-west in February. The period of this conflict, or change, as it is called, frequently lasts until some time in March, when the force that is calling in and driving the monsoons from the south-west finally gains the ascendant. They then blow steadily until late in September, when the north-east trade-wind forces begin again to assert their ascendancy, and to renew the conflict on this side through October, by which time the north-east trades or monsoons become the prevailing winds. Thus, by going two or three hundred miles farther from the supposed place of heat and rarefaction that give rise to this system of winds, the duration of the north-east monsoons is prolonged nearly a month: for in this "field" they prevail from November to January inclusive, three months; while the south-west last from about the middle of March to the middle of September, say six months.

§ 802 In the next "field" below,—*i. e.*, between the parallels of  $10^{\circ}$  and  $15^{\circ}$ ,—the south-west monsoons blow about five



months, perhaps not quite so long. They do not commence as early, nor blow so late, as in the "field" above. They begin the conflict with the north-east trade-wind forces in the latter part of March, and gain the ascendant in May. They then prevail till October, when the north-east trade-wind forces, escaping from the heated plains of the interior, begin to renew the annual combat which is to get them the victory. They soon achieve it, and maintain the mastery undisputed till the last of March or first of April.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—  
The same  
continued.

In the next "field" below,—namely, that between  $5^{\circ}$  and  $10^{\circ}$  north,—the north-east trades or monsoons do not begin to feel the heating-up of the deserts until the month of April has set in. The battle now, as it may well be supposed, is not to last long; for the sun is vigorously at work, heating-up the brown wastes, and calling upon the north-east trades to stop and supply the ascending column with fresh air. By the end of April, the south-west monsoons are found to be decidedly in the ascendant, and they so continue for nearly five months. In October, but not before the middle, the conflict again commences; feebly at first and by fitful gusts it rages all through November, and is not fairly over before the end of December. Here signs of the south-east trade-winds begin to appear. They come in on the side, now of the north-east, now of the south-west monsoons, and so prolong the contest.

The same  
continued.

In the next "field,"—between  $0^{\circ}$  and  $5^{\circ}$  north,—the south-west monsoon is decidedly marked only for a short time. This conflict ends in May; the other begins in August, leaving the north-east trade-winds decidedly in the ascendant for only about three months,—January to

§ 804  
The same  
continued.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—

March: so that in this "field" we have, during the year, six months of conflicting winds, and three months only for each monsoon.

§ 805 If a ship were stationed in each one of these five "fields," to observe the setting in, continuance, and changing of the monsoons, the one in the northern "field," between the land and  $20^{\circ}$  north, would report that the south-west monsoons had been observed to have regularly set in before the first of March, after a conflict which lasted perhaps six weeks. The observer in the next "field" below—*i. e.*, between  $15^{\circ}$  and  $20^{\circ}$  north—would report that he found the south-west monsoons to set in about the middle of March, and after a conflict that commenced in February, instead of January, as in the "field" above. The vessel in the "field" next below— $10^{\circ}$  and  $15^{\circ}$ —would report them early in May, after a conflict of four or five weeks. The ship between  $5^{\circ}$  and  $10^{\circ}$  would not find them to set in regularly until the first of May; and still later would the vessel in the last "field"— $0^{\circ}$  and  $5^{\circ}$  north—report them. Thus we perceive that the south-west monsoons extend from the land out to the sea at a progressive rate, and that they spread from a centre or point like a circle on the water. According to the Pilot Chart, which gives 11,800 observations for the five "fields" above, the march of the south-west monsoons from Calcutta toward the equator is at the rate of fifteen or twenty miles a day.

March of  
south-west  
monsoons.

§ 806 In other words, if a vessel in latitude  $23^{\circ}$  north, between the meridians  $85^{\circ}$  and  $90^{\circ}$  east, were to commence about the first of March to steer due south, and sailed fifteen or twenty miles a day on that course, till she reached the

Supposed  
course of a  
vessel.

equator, she would, at the end of each day's sail, arrive with the regular setting in of the south-west monsoons at that place. CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—

We thus perceive how a desert land spreads its influence through the distance upon the winds. The first effects of heating-up the plains are necessarily felt by the air nearest at hand, and by that farther off at a later period; so that the south-west monsoon influence is, in this part of the ocean, propagated from the land out upon the sea at the rate above stated. § 807  
Influence  
of a desert  
land.

Of course, the vast plains of Asia are not brought up to monsoon heat *per saltum*, or in a day. They require time, both to be heated up to this point and to be cooled down again. § 808  
Plains of  
Asia.

The monsoon season may be always known by referring to the cause which produces these winds. Thus, by recollecting where the thirsty and over-heated plains are which cause the monsoons, we know at once that these winds are rushing with greatest force toward these plains at the time that is the hottest season of the year upon them. § 809  
How the  
monsoon  
seasons  
may be  
known.

The influence of these heated plains upon the winds at sea is felt for a thousand miles or more. Thus, though the Desert of Cobi and the sun-burned plains of Asia are, for the most part, north of latitude 30°, their influence in making monsoons<sup>1</sup> is felt south of the equator.<sup>2</sup> So, too, with the great Desert of Sahara and the African monsoons of the Atlantic; also, with the Salt Lake country and the Mexican monsoons on one side, and those of Central America in the Pacific on the other. The influence<sup>3</sup> of the deserts of Arabia upon the winds is felt § 810  
Influence  
of heated  
plains felt  
far out at  
sea.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 797.

<sup>2</sup> Plate VIII.

<sup>3</sup> § 202.

CHAPTER in Austria and other parts of Europe, as the observations  
 XIV. of Kriel, Lamont, and others, show.

§ 811 So also the islands, such as the Society and Sand-  
 Society and Sand- wick, that stand far away from any large extent of land,  
 wick Islands have a very singular but marked effect upon the wind.  
 have sin- They interfere with the trades very often, and turn them  
 gular effect on back; for westerly and equatorial winds are common at  
 winds. both these groups, in their winter time. Some hydro-  
 graphers have taken those westerly winds of the Society  
 Islands to be an extension of the monsoons of the Indian  
 Ocean. Not so: they are local, and do not extend a  
 great way either from the Sandwich or Society Islands.

That they are local about the former group, an examina-  
 tion of sheet No. 5, Pilot Chart North Pacific, will instantly  
 show.

§ 812 It is a curious thing this influence of islands in the  
 Influence of islands on Pacific trade-winds. Every  
 navigator who has cruised in those parts of that ocean  
 has often turned with wonder and delight to admire the  
 gorgeous piles of cumuli, heaped up and arranged in the  
 most delicate and exquisitely beautiful masses that it is  
 possible for fleecy matter to assume. Not only are these  
 piles found capping the hills among the islands, but they  
 are often seen to overhang the lowest islet of the tropics,  
 and even to stand above coral patches and hidden reefs,  
 "a cloud by day," to serve as a beacon to the lonely  
 mariner out there at sea, and to warn him of shoals and  
 dangers which no lead nor seaman's eye has ever seen or  
 sounded out.

§ 813 These clouds, under favourable circumstances, may be  
 Clouds on the Pacific. seen gathering above the low coral island, and performing  
 their office in preparing it for vegetation and fruitfulness  
 in a very striking manner. As they are condensed into

showers, one fancies that they are a sponge of the most exquisite and delicately-elaborated material, and that he can see, as they "drop down their fatness," the invisible but bountiful hand aloft that is pressing and squeezing it out.—MAURY'S *Sailing Directions*, 7th ed., p. 820.

It would appear, therefore, that these desert countries § 814 exercise a powerful influence in checking and overcoming the force of the north-east trade-winds. There are no such extensive influences at work checking the south-east trades. On the contrary, these are accelerated; for the same forces that serve to destroy the north-east trade-winds, or retard them, tend also to draw the south-east trade-winds on, or to accelerate them. Hence the ability of the south-east trade-winds to push themselves over into the northern hemisphere.

Hence, also, we infer that, between certain parallels of § 815 latitude in the northern hemisphere, the sun's rays, by reason of the great extent of land surface, operate with much more intensity than they do between corresponding parallels in the southern; and that, consequently, the mean summer temperature on shore north of the equator is higher than it is south: a beautiful physical fact which the winds have revealed, in corroboration of what observations with the thermometer had already induced meteorologists to suspect.

It appears, from what has been said, that it is the rays § 816 of the sun operating upon the land, not upon the water, which causes the monsoons. Now let us turn to Plate VIII., and examine into this view. The monsoon regions are marked with half-bearded and half-feathered arrows; and we perceive, looking at the northern hemisphere, that all of Europe, some of Africa, most of Asia, and nearly the whole of North America,

are to the north, or on the polar side of the north-east trade-wind zone; whereas but a small part of Australia, less of South America, and still less of South Africa, are situated on the polar side of the zone of south-east trade-winds. In other words, there are on the polar side of the south-east trade-winds no great plains, except in Australia, upon which the rays of the sun, in the summer of the other hemisphere, can play with force enough to rarefy the air sufficiently to materially interrupt these winds in their course. But, besides the vast area of such plains in the northern hemisphere, on the polar side of its trade-wind belt, the heat of which is sufficient<sup>1</sup> to draw these trade-winds back, there are numerous other districts in the extra-tropical regions of our hemisphere, the summer heat of which, though it be not sufficient to turn the north-east trade-winds back, and make a monsoon of them, yet may be sufficient to weaken them in their force, and, by retarding them, draw the south-east trade-winds over into the northern hemisphere.

§ 817 Now, as this interference from the land takes place in the summer only, we might infer, without appealing to actual observation, that the position of these trade-wind zones is variable; that is, that the equatorial edge of the south-east trade-wind zone is farther to the north in our summer, when the north-east trades are most feeble, than it is in winter, when they are strongest.

Remarks  
on inter-  
ference of  
land.

§ 818 We have here, then, at work upon these trade-wind zones, a force now weak, now strong, which, of course, would cause these zones to vibrate up and down the ocean, and within certain limits, according to the season of the year. These limits are given on Plate VIII. for

Force at  
work on  
trade-wind  
zones.

<sup>1</sup> § 810.

<sup>2</sup> § 815.



spring and autumn. During the latter season these zones reach their extreme northern declination, and in our spring their utmost limits toward the south.

*Changing of the Monsoons.*—Lieutenant Jansen, in his appendix to the Dutch edition of this work, thus describes this phenomenon:—

“We have seen<sup>1</sup> that the calms which precede the sea-breeze generally continue longer, and are accompanied with an upward motion of the air; that, on the contrary, those which precede the land-breeze are, in the Java Sea, generally of shorter duration, accompanied by a heavy atmosphere; and that there is also an evident difference between the conversion of the land-breeze into the sea-breeze and of the latter into the former.

“Even as the calms vary, so there appears to be a marked difference between the changing of the monsoons in the spring and in the autumn in the Java Sea. As soon as the sun has crossed the equator, and its vertical rays begin to play more and more perpendicularly upon the northern hemisphere, the inland plains of Asia, North Africa, and of North America, are so heated, as to give birth to the south-west monsoons in the China Sea, in the North Indian Ocean, in the North Atlantic, and upon the west coast of Central America: then the north-west monsoon disappears from the East Indian Archipelago, and gives place to the south-east trade-wind, which is known as the east monsoon; just as the north-west wind, which prevails during the southern summer, is called the west monsoon.

“This is the only monsoon which is found in the southern hemisphere, while in the northern hemisphere the north-east trade-wind blows in the China Sea and in the

CHAPTER  
XIV.Jansen on  
the chang-  
ing of  
monsoons.§ 820  
Monsoons  
in Java  
Sea.§ 821  
Monsoons  
in differ-  
ent hemi-  
spheres.

<sup>1</sup> § 262.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—

Indian Ocean ; in the East Indian Archipelago the west monsoon prevails ; and here, when the south-east trade blows as the east monsoon, we find the south-west monsoon in the adjacent seas of the northern hemisphere. Generally the westerly monsoons blow during the summer months of the hemisphere wherein they are found.

§ 822 “ As the land-breeze daily destroys in miniature the regular flow of the trade-wind, so does the latter the west monsoon in larger measure ; and observations will be able to decide whether monthly disturbances do not also take place.

Winds de-  
stroy each  
other.

§ 823 “ In the Java Sea, during the month of February, the west monsoon blows strong almost continually ; in March it blows intermittingly, and with hard squalls ; but in April the squalls become less frequent and less severe. Now the changing commences. All at once gusts begin to spring up from the east : they are often followed by calms. The clouds which crowd themselves upon the clear sky give warning of the combat in the upper air which the currents there are about to wage with each other.

Monsoons  
in Java  
Sea

§ 824 “ The electricity, driven thereby out of its natural channels, in which, unobserved, it has been performing silently, but with the full consciousness of its power, the mysterious task appointed to it, now displays itself with dazzling majesty ; its sheen and its voice fill with astonishment and deep reverence the mind of the sailor—so susceptible, in the presence of storm and darkness, to impressions that inspire feelings both of dread and anxiety, which by pretended occupations he strives in vain to conceal.\*

Electricity

---

\* No phenomenon in nature makes a deeper impression upon the sailor than a dark thunder-storm in a calm at sea.—JANSEN.

“ Day and night we now have thunder-storms. The clouds are in continual movement, and the darkened air, laden with vapour, flies in all directions through the skies. The combat which the clouds seem to court and to dread appears to make them more thirsty than ever. They resort to extraordinary means to refresh themselves: in tunnel form, when time and opportunity fail to allow them to quench their thirst from the surrounding atmosphere in the usual manner, they descend near the surface of the sea, and appear to lap the water directly up with their black mouths. Water-spouts, thus created, are often seen in the changing season, especially among small groups of islands, which appear to give rise to them.\* The water-spouts are not always accompanied by strong winds; frequently more than one is seen at a time, whereupon the clouds whence they proceed disperse in various directions, and the ends of the water-spouts bending over finally causes them to break in the middle, although the water which is now seen foaming around their bases has suffered little or no movement laterally.

“ Yet often the wind prevents the formation of water-spouts. In their stead the wind-spout shoots up like an arrow, and the sea seems to try in vain to keep it back. The sea, lashed into fury, marks with foam the path along which the conflict rages, and roars with the noise of its water-spouts; and woe to the rash mariner who ventures therein! †

\* I never saw more water-spouts than in the Archipelago of Bioun Singen, during the changing. Almost daily we saw one or more.—JANSEN.

† The air-spouts near the equator always appear to me to be more dangerous than the water-spouts. I have once had one of the latter to pass a ship's length ahead of me, but I perceived little else than a water-fall in which I thought to come, yet no wind. Yet the water-spouts there also are not to be trusted. I

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
§ 825  
Thunder-  
storms

Water-  
spouts.

§ 826  
Wind-  
spouts.

CHAPTER  
XIV.Height of  
spouts.

“The height of the spouts is usually somewhat less than 200 yards, and their diameter not more than 20 feet, yet they are often taller and thicker; when the opportunity of correctly measuring them has been favourable, however, as it generally was when they passed between the islands, so that the distance of their bases could be accurately determined, I have never found them higher than 700 ells, nor thicker than 50 ells. In October, in the Archipelago of Bioun, they travel from southwest to north-east. They seldom last longer than five minutes; generally they are dissipated in less time. As they are going away, the bulbous tube, which is as palpable as that of a thermometer, becomes broader at the base, and little clouds, like steam from the pipe of a locomotive, are continually thrown off from the circumference of the spout, and gradually the water is released, and the cloud whence the spout came again closes its mouth.\*

Duration

---

have seen such spouts go up out of the water upon the shore, where they overthrew strong isolated frame-houses. I have, however, never been in a situation to observe in what direction they revolved.—JANSEN.

\* Miniature water-spouts may be produced artificially by means of electricity, and those in nature are supposed to be caused by the display of electrical phenomena. “From the conductor of an electrical machine,” says Dr. Bonzano of New Orleans, “suspend by a wire or chain a small metallic ball (one of wood covered with tinfoil), and under the ball place a rather wide metallic basin containing some oil of turpentine, at the distance of about three quarters of an inch. If the handle of the machine be now turned slowly, the liquid in the basin will begin to move in different directions, and form whirlpools. As the electricity on the conductor accumulates, the troubled liquid will elevate itself in the centre, and at last become attached to the ball. Draw off the electricity from the conductor to let the liquid resume its position: a portion of the turpentine remains attached to the ball. Turn the handle again very slowly, and observe now the few drops adhering to the ball assume a conical shape, with the apex downward, while the liquid under it assumes also a conical shape, the apex upward, until both meet. As the liquid does not accumulate on the ball, there must necessarily be as great a current downward as upward, giving the column of liquid a rapid circular motion, which continues until the electricity from the conductor is nearly all discharged silently, or until it is discharged by a spark descending

“During the changing of the monsoons, it is mostly calm or cool, with gentle breezes, varied with rain-storms and light gales from all points of the compass. They are harassing to the crew, who, with burning faces under the clouded skies,\* impatiently trim the sails to the changing winds. However, the atmosphere generally becomes clear, and, contrary to expectation, the north-west wind comes from a clear sky: about the coming of the monsoon it is northerly. Now the clouds are again packed together; the wind dies away, but it will soon be waked up, to come again from another point. Finally, the regular land and sea breezes gradually replace rain and tempests, calms and gentle gales. The rain holds up during the day, and in the Java Sea we have the east monsoon. It is then May. Farther to the south than the Java Sea the east monsoon commences in April. †

CHAPTER  
XIV.§ 827  
The weather during the changes of monsoons.

“This monsoon prevails in September and October, § 828 when it turns to become the west monsoon. It has seemed to me that the east monsoon does not blow the same in every month; † that its direction becomes more

East monsoon.

---

into the liquid. The same phenomena take place with oil or water. Using the latter liquid, the ball must be brought much nearer, or a much greater quantity of electricity is necessary to raise it.

“If, in this experiment, we let the ball swing to and fro, the little water-spout will travel over its miniature sea, carrying its whirlpools along with it. When it breaks up, a portion of the liquid, and with it anything it may contain, remains attached to the ball. The fish, seeds, leaves, &c., that have fallen to the earth in rain-squalls, may have owed their elevation to the clouds to the same cause that attaches a few drops of the liquid, with its particles of impurities, to the ball.”

\* At sea the face and hands burn (change the skin) much quicker under a cloud than under a clear sky.—JANSEN.

† In the north-east part of the Archipelago the east monsoon is the rainy monsoon. The phenomena in the north-east part are thus wholly different from those in the Java Sea.—JANSEN.

<sup>1</sup> § 851.

CHAPTER XIV. southerly, and its power greater, after it has prevailed for some time.\*

§ 829 “ It is sufficiently important to fix the attention, seeing that these circumstances have great influence upon the winds in the many straits of the Archipelago, in which strong currents run most of the time. Especially in the straits to the east of Java, these currents are very strong. I have been unable to stem the current with eight-mile speed. However, they do not always flow equally strong, nor always in the same direction. They are probably the strongest when the tidal current and the equatorial current meet together. It is said that the currents in the straits during the east monsoon run eighteen hours to the north, and six hours to the south, and the reverse during the west monsoon. The passing of the meridian by the moon appears to be the fixed point of time for the turning of the currents. It is probable that the heated water of the Archipelago is discharged to the north during the east monsoon, and to the south during the west monsoon.

Effects of monsoon in straits of the Archipelago.

Moon passing meridian.

§ 830 “ As the sea makes the coming of the southern summer known to the inhabitants of the Java coast,† the turning of the east monsoon into the west monsoon commences. After the sun has finished its yearly task in the northern hemisphere, and brings its powerful influence to operate

Change of monsoons on Java coast.

---

\* As is well known, the Strait of Soerabaya forms an elbow whose easterly outlet opens to the east, while the westerly outlet opens to the north. In the beginning of the east monsoon the sea-wind (east monsoon) blows through the westerly entrance as far as Grissee (in the elbow); in the latter part of this monsoon, the sea-wind blows, on the contrary, through the easterly entrance as far as Sambilangan (the narrow passage where the westerly outlet opens into the sea).—JANSEN.

† In the Archipelago we have generally high water but once a day, and, with the equinoxes, the tides also turn. The places which have high water by day in one monsoon get it at night in the other.—JANSEN.



in the southern hemisphere, a change is at once perceived in the constant fine weather of the east monsoon of the Java Sea. As soon as it is at its height upon the Java Sea ( $6^{\circ}$  south), then the true turning of the monsoon begins, and is accomplished much more rapidly than the spring turning. The calms then are not so continuous. The combat in the upper atmosphere appears to be less violent; the south-east trade, which has blown as the east monsoon, does not seem to have sufficient strength to resist the aggressors, who, with wild storms from the north-west and west, make their superiority known. Upon and in the neighbourhood of the land, thunderstorms occur, but at sea they are less frequent.

“The atmosphere, alternately clear and cloudy, moves § 831 more definitely over from the north-west, so that it appears as if no combat were there waged, and the south-east gives place without a contest. Movement of atmosphere.

“The land-breezes become less frequent, and the phenomena by day and by night become, in a certain sense, § 832 more accordant with each other. Storms of wind and rain beneath a clouded sky alternate with severe gales and steady winds. In the last of November the west monsoon is permanent. Land-breezes less frequent.

“Such are the shiftings. But what have they to do § 833 with the general system of the circulation of the atmosphere? Whenever we read attentively the beautiful meditations of the founder of the Meteorology of the Sea, and follow him in the development of his hypothesis, which lays open to view the wheels whereby the atmosphere performs its varied and comprehensive task with order and regularity, then it will not be necessary to furnish What the “shiftings” have to do with general system of circulation

CHAPTER XIV. — proof that these turnings are nothing else than the passing of a belt of calms which separates the monsoons from each other, and which, as we know, goes annually with the sun from the south to the north, and back over the torrid zone to and fro.

§ 834 “So also the calms, which precede the land and sea winds, are turned back. If, at the coming of the land-wind in the hills, we go with it to the coast—to the sea, we shall perceive that it shoves away the calms which preceded it from the hills to the coast, and so far upon the sea as the land-wind extends. Here, upon the limits of the permanent monsoon, the place for the calms remains for the night, to be turned back to the land and to the hills the following day by the sea-wind. In every place where these calms go, the land and sea winds turn back. If various observers, placed between the hills and the sea, and between the coast and the farthest limit of the land-wind, noted the moment when they perceived the calms, and that when they perceived the land-wind, then by this means they would learn how broad the belt of calms has been, and with what rapidity they are pushed over the sea and over the land. And even though the results one day should be found not to agree very well with those of another, they would at least obtain an average thereof which would be of value. So, on a larger scale, the belt of calms which separates the monsoons from each other presses in the spring from the south to the north, and in autumn from the north to the south, and changes the monsoons in every place where it presses.” \*

The calms which precede land and sea breezes.

The calms which separate monsoons from each other.

---

\* Bijdrage Natuurkundige Beschrijving der zeën, vertaald door M. H. Jansen, Luitenant ter zee.

THE CALM BELTS.—There is between the two systems of trade-winds a region of calms, known as the equatorial calms. It has a mean average breadth of about six degrees of latitude. In this region, the air which is brought to the equator by the north-east and south-east trades ascends. This belt of calms always separates these two trade-wind zones, and travels up and down with them. If we liken this belt of equatorial calms to an immense atmospherical trough, extending, as it does, entirely around the earth; and if we liken the north-east and south-east trade-winds to two streams discharging themselves into it; we shall see that we have two currents perpetually running in at the bottom, and that, therefore, we must have as much air as the two currents bring in at the bottom to flow out at the top. What flows out at the top is carried back north and south by these upper currents, which are thus proved to exist, and to flow counter to the trade-winds.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
§ 835  
Equatorial  
calms.

Using still further this mode of illustration: if we liken the calm belt of Cancer and the calm belt of Capricorn each to a great atmospherical trough extending around the earth also, we shall see that in this case the currents are running in at the top and out at the bottom.<sup>1</sup>

§ 836  
Calm belts  
of Cancer  
and Capri-  
corn.

The belt of equatorial calms is a belt of constant precipitation. Captain Wilkes, of the Exploring Expedition, when he crossed it in 1838, found it to extend from 4° north to 12° north. He was ten days in crossing it, and during those ten days rain fell to the depth of 6.15 inches, or at the rate of eighteen feet and upwards during the year. In the summer months this belt of calms is found

§ 837  
Equatorial  
calms a  
belt of pre-  
cipitation.

<sup>1</sup> § 132.

CHAPTER XIV. between the parallels of  $8^{\circ}$  and  $14^{\circ}$  of north latitude, and in the spring between  $5^{\circ}$  south and  $4^{\circ}$  north.<sup>1</sup>

§ 838 This calm belt, in its motions from south to north and back, carries with it the rainy seasons of the torrid zone, always arriving at certain parallels at stated periods of the year; consequently, by attentively considering Plate VIII., one can tell what places within the range of this zone have, during the year, two rainy seasons, what one, and what are the rainy months for each locality.

§ 839 Were the north-east and the south-east trades, with the belt of equatorial calms, of different colours, and visible to an astronomer in one of the planets, he might, by the motion of these belts or girdles alone, tell the seasons with us. He would see them at one season going north, then appearing stationary, and then commencing their return to the south. But though he would observe<sup>2</sup> that they follow the sun in his annual course, he would remark that they do not change their latitude as much as the sun does his declination; he would, therefore, discover that their extremes of declination are not so far asunder as the tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, though in certain seasons the changes from day to day are very great. He would observe that these zones of winds and calms have their tropics or stationary nodes, about which they linger near three months at a time; and that they pass from one of their tropics to the other in a little less than another three months. Thus he would observe the whole system of belts to go north from the latter part of May till some time in August; then they would stop and remain stationary till winter, in December, when again they would commence to move

<sup>1</sup> See Plate VIII.

<sup>2</sup> § 183.

rapidly over the ocean, and down toward the south, until the last of February or the first of March; then again they would become stationary, and remain about this, their southern tropic, till May again.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
—

THE HORSE LATITUDES.—Having completed the physical examination of the equatorial calms and winds, if the supposed observer should now turn his telescope toward the poles of our earth, he would observe a zone of calms bordering the north-east trade-winds on the north,<sup>1</sup> and another bordering the south-east trade-winds on the south.<sup>2</sup> These calm zones also would be observed to vibrate up and down with the trade-wind zones, partaking<sup>3</sup> of their motions, and following the declination of the sun.

§ 840  
The horse  
latitudes.

On the polar side of each of these two calm zones there would be a broad band extending up into the Polar Regions, the prevailing winds within which are the opposites of the trade-winds, namely, south-west in the northern and north-west in the southern hemisphere. The equatorial edge of these calm belts is near the tropics, and their average breadth is 10° or 12°. On one side of these belts<sup>4</sup> the winds blow perpetually toward the equator; on the other, their prevailing direction is toward the poles. They are called<sup>5</sup> the “horse latitudes” by seamen.

§ 841  
Polar calm  
belts.

Along the polar borders of these two calm belts<sup>6</sup> we have another region of precipitation, though generally the rains here are not so constant as they are in the equatorial calms. The precipitation near the tropical calms is nevertheless sufficient to mark the seasons; for whenever these calm zones, as they go from north to south with the sun, leave a given parallel, the rainy season of that parallel, if it be in winter, is said to com-

§ 842  
Polar re-  
gion of  
precipita-  
tion.

<sup>1</sup> § 131.

<sup>2</sup> § 137.

<sup>3</sup> § 191.

<sup>4</sup> § 131.

<sup>5</sup> § 131.

<sup>6</sup> § 190.

CHAPTER mence. Hence we may explain the rainy season in Chili  
XIV. — at the south, and in California at the north.

§ 843 THE WESTERLY WINDS.—To complete the physical  
Westerly examination of the earth's atmosphere which we have  
winds. supposed an astronomer in one of the planets to have  
undertaken according to the facts developed by the *Wind  
and Current Charts*, it remains for him to turn his tele-  
scope upon the south-west passage winds of the northern  
hemisphere, pursue them into the Arctic Regions, and see  
theoretically how they get there, and, being there, what  
becomes of them.

§ 844 From the parallel of 40° up toward the north pole,  
South-west the prevailing winds, as already remarked, are the south-  
passage west passage winds,<sup>1</sup> or, as they are more generally called  
winds. by mariners, the "westerly" winds; these, in the Atlantic,  
prevail over the "easterly" winds in the ratio of about  
two to one.

§ 845 Now if we suppose, and such is probably the case, these  
Necessity "westerly" winds to convey in two days a greater volume  
for an of atmosphere toward the arctic circle than those "easterly"  
upper cur- winds can bring back in one, we establish the necessity  
rent. for an upper current by which this difference may be  
returned to the tropical calms of our hemisphere. There-  
fore there must be some place in the Polar Regions<sup>2</sup> at  
which these south-west winds cease to go north, and from  
which they commence their return to the south, and this  
locality must be in a region peculiarly liable to calms.  
It is another atmospherical node in which the motion of  
the air is upward, with a decrease of barometric pressure.  
It is marked P, Plate I.

§ 846 To appreciate the force and volume of these polar-bound

<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

<sup>2</sup> § 154.



winds in the southern hemisphere, it is necessary that one should "run them down" in that waste of waters beyond the parallel of 40° south, where "the winds howl and the seas roar." The billows there lift themselves up in long ridges with deep hollows between them. They run high and fast, tossing their white caps aloft in the air, looking like the green hills of a rolling prairie capped with snow, and chasing each other in sport. Still their march is stately and their roll majestic. The scenery among them is grand, and the Australian-bound trader, after doubling the Cape of Good Hope, finds herself followed for weeks at a time by these magnificent rolling swells, driven and lashed by the "brave west winds" furiously. A sailor's bride, performing this voyage with her gallant husband, thus alludes in her "abstract log" to these rolling seas:—

"We had some magnificent gales off the Cape, when § 847 the colouring of the waves, the transition from gray to clear brilliant green, with the milky-white foam, struck me as most exquisite. And then in rough weather the moral picture is so fine, the calmness and activity required is such an exhibition of the power of mind over the elements, that I admired the sailors fully as much as the sea,—and, *of course*, the sailor in command most of all; indeed, a sea voyage more than fulfils my expectations."

CHAPTER  
XIV.The force  
and vol-  
ume of the  
polar-  
bound  
winds.Abstract  
from the  
log of a  
sailor's  
bride.

## CHAPTER XV.

## CLIMATES OF THE OCEAN.

Milky Way of the Sea, § 848.—Contrasted with Climates Ashore, 852.—Movements of Isotherms, 854.—Mean Temperature of Sea and Air, 860.—Rain in high Latitudes at Sea, 863.—Climate of England affected by Coast Line of Brazil, 871.—The Gulf of Guinea, 875.—Summer in the Northern Hemisphere hotter than in the Southern, 883.—A Harbour for Icebergs, 884.—Course of the Isothermal Line across the Atlantic, 887.

CHAPTER  
XV.  
§ 848  
Thermal  
Charts.  
Isothermal  
lines.

THERMAL Charts, showing the temperature of the surface of the Atlantic Ocean by actual observations made indiscriminately all over it, and at all times of the year, have been published by the National Observatory. The isothermal lines which these charts enable us to draw, and some of which are traced on Plate IV., afford the navigator and the philosopher much valuable and interesting information touching the circulation of the oceanic waters, including the phenomena of the cold and warm sea currents; they also cast light upon the climatology of the sea, its hyetographic peculiarities, and the climatic conditions of various regions of the earth,—they show that the profile of the coast-line of intertropical America assists to give expression to the mild climate of Southern Europe; they also increase our knowledge concerning the Gulf Stream, for it enables us to mark out, for the mariner's guidance, that "Milky Way" in the ocean, the waters of which teem, and sparkle, and glow with life and incipient organisms as they run across the Atlantic. In them are found the clusters and nebulae of the sea which stud and deck the great highway of ships on their voyage between

"Milky  
Way."

the Old World and the New; and these lines assist to point out for the navigator their limits and his way. They show this *via lactea* to have a vibratory motion in the sea that calls to mind the graceful wavings of a pennon as it floats gently to the breeze. Indeed, if we imagine the head of the Gulf Stream to be hemmed in by the land in the Straits of Bemini, and to be stationary there, and then liken the tail of the Stream itself to an immense pennon floating gently in the current, such a motion as such a streamer may be imagined to have—very much such a motion—do my researches show the tail of the Gulf Stream to have. Running between banks of cold water,<sup>1</sup> it is pressed now from the north, now from the south, according as the great masses of sea water on either hand may change or fluctuate in temperature.

In September, when the waters in the cold regions of the north have been tempered and made warm and light by the heat of summer, its limits on the left (Plate VI.) are as denoted by the line of arrows; but after this great sun-swing, the waters on the left side begin to lose their heat, grow cold, become heavy, and press the hot waters of this stream into the channel marked out for them.

Thus it acts like a pendulum, slowly propelled by heat on one side and repelled by cold on the other. In this view, it becomes a chronograph for the sea, keeping time for its inhabitants, and marking the seasons for the great whales; and there it has been, for all time, vibrating to and fro, once every year, swinging from north to south, and from south to north again, a great self-regulating, self-compensating pendulum.

§ 849  
Reference  
to Plate  
VI.§ 850  
Chrono-  
graph for  
the sea.

CHAPTER  
XV.

§ 851  
Climato-  
logy of the  
ocean con-  
trasted  
with that  
of land.

In seeking information concerning the climates of the ocean, it is well not to forget this remarkable contrast between its climatology and that of the land,—namely, on the land, February and August are considered the coldest and the hottest months; but to the inhabitants of the sea the annual extremes of cold and heat occur in the months of March and September. On the dry land, after the “winter is past and gone,” the solid parts of the earth continue to receive from the sun more heat in the day than they radiate at night; consequently there is an accumulation of caloric, which continues to increase until August. The summer is now at its height; for, with the close of this month, the solid parts of the earth’s crust and the atmosphere above begin to dispense with their heat faster than the rays of the sun can impart fresh supplies, and, consequently, the climates which they regulate grow cooler and cooler until the dead of winter again.

§ 852  
Sea water  
a store-  
house for  
heat of  
summer.

But at sea a different rule seems to prevail. Its waters are the store-houses in which the surplus heat of summer is stored away against the severity of winter, and its waters continue to grow warmer for a month after the weather on shore has begun to get cool. This brings the highest temperature to the sea in September, the lowest in March. Plate IV. is intended to show the extremes of heat and cold to which the *waters*, not the ice of the sea, are annually subjected; and therefore the isotherms of 40°, 50°, 60°, 70°, and 80°, have been drawn for March and September, the months of extreme heat and extreme cold to the inhabitants of the “great deep.” Corresponding isotherms for any other month will fall between these, taken by pairs. Thus the isotherm of 70° for

July will fall nearly midway between the same isotherms (70°) for March and September. CHAPTER  
XV.  
—

A careful study of this plate, and the contemplation of the benign influences of the sea upon the climates which we enjoy, suggest many beautiful thoughts; for by such study we get a glimpse into the arrangements and the details of that exquisite machinery in the ocean which enables it to perform all its offices, and to answer with fidelity its marvellous adaptations. § 853  
Benign influence of sea on climates.

How, let us inquire, does the isotherm of 80°, for instance, get from its position in March to its position in September? Is it wafted along by currents; that is, by water which, after having been heated near the equator to 80°, then flows to the north with this temperature? or is it carried there simply by the rays of the sun, as the snow-line is carried up the mountain in summer? We have reason to believe that it is carried from one parallel to another by each of these agents acting together, but mostly through the instrumentality of currents, for currents are the chief agents for distributing heat to the various parts of the ocean. The sun with his rays would, were it not for currents, raise the water in the torrid zone to blood heat; but before that can be done, they run off with it toward the poles, softening, and mitigating, and tempering climates by the way. The provision for this is as beautiful as it is benign: for, to answer a physical adaptation, it is provided by a law of nature that, when the temperature of water is raised, it shall expand; as it expands it must become lighter; and just in proportion as its specific gravity is altered, just in that proportion is equilibrium in the sea destroyed. Arrived at this § 854  
Alteration of position of isotherms.  
  
Advantages of currents

CHAPTER  
XV.Remarks  
on Iso-  
therms.

condition, it is ordained that this hot water shall obey another law of nature, which requires it to run away and hasten to restore that equilibrium. Were these isothermal lines moved only by the rays of the sun, they would slide up and down the ocean like so many parallels of latitude; at least there would be no breaks in them, like that which we see in the isotherm of  $80^{\circ}$  for September. It appears, from this line, that there is a part of the ocean near the equator, and about midway the Atlantic, which, with its waters, never does attain the temperature of  $80^{\circ}$  in September. Moreover, this isotherm of  $80^{\circ}$  will pass, in the North Atlantic, from its extreme southern to its extreme northern declination, nearly two thousand miles, in about three months. Thus it travels at the rate of about twenty-two miles a day. Surely, without the aid of currents, the rays of the sun could not drive it along that fast.

§ 855 Being now left to the gradual process of cooling, by evaporation, atmospherical contact, and radiation, it occupies the other eight or nine months of the year in slowly returning south to the parallel whence it commenced to flow northward. As it does not cool as rapidly as it was heated, the disturbance of equilibrium by alteration of specific gravity is not so sudden, nor the current which is required to restore it so rapid. Hence the slow rate of movement at which this line travels on its march south.

§ 856 Between the meridians of  $25^{\circ}$  and  $30^{\circ}$  west, the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  in September ascends as high as the parallel of  $56^{\circ}$ ; in October it reaches the parallel of  $50^{\circ}$  north; in November it is found between the parallels of  $45^{\circ}$



and  $47^{\circ}$ ; and by December it has nearly reached its extreme southern descent between these meridians, which it accomplishes in January, standing then near the parallel of  $40^{\circ}$ . It is all the rest of the year in returning northward to the parallel whence it commenced its flow to the south in September.

Now it will be observed that this is the season (from September to December) immediately succeeding that in which the heat of the sun has been playing with greatest activity upon the polar ice. Its melted waters, which are thus put in motion in June, July, and August, would probably occupy the autumn months in reaching the parallels indicated. These waters, though cold, and rising gradually in temperature as they flow south, are probably fresher, and, if so, probably lighter, than the sea water; and therefore it may well be that both the warmer and cooler systems of these isothermal lines are made to vibrate up and down the ocean principally by a gentle surface current in the season of quick motion, and in the season of the slow motion principally by a gradual process of calorific absorption on the one hand, and by a gradual process of cooling on the other.

We have precisely such phenomena exhibited by the waters of the Chesapeake Bay as they spread themselves over the sea in winter. At this season of the year, the charts show that water of very low temperature is found projecting out and overlapping the usual limits of the Gulf Stream. The outer edge of this cold water, though jagged, is circular in its shape, having its centre near the mouth of the bay. The waters of the bay, being fresher than those of the sea, may, therefore, though colder, be

CHAPTER  
XV.  
—

§ 857

Motions of  
Isothermal  
lines.

§ 858

Waters of  
Chesa-  
peake Bay

CHAPTER  
XV.

lighter than the warmer waters of the ocean. And thus we have repeated here, though on a smaller scale, the phenomenon as to the flow of cold waters from the north, which force the surface isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  from latitude  $56^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  during three or four months.

§ 859

Effect of changes in depth of water and shape of bottom.

Changes in the colour or depth of the water, and the shape of the bottom, &c., would also cause changes in the temperature of certain parts of the ocean, by increasing or diminishing the capacities of such parts to absorb or radiate heat; and this, to some extent, would cause a bending, or produce irregular curves in the isothermal lines.

§ 860

Inference in regard to mean temperature of atmosphere.

After a careful study of this plate, and the Thermal Charts of the Atlantic Ocean, from which the materials for the former were derived, I am led to infer that the mean temperature of the atmosphere between the parallels of  $56^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$  north, for instance, and over that part of the ocean in which we have been considering the fluctuations of the isothermal line of  $60^{\circ}$ , is at least  $60^{\circ}$  of Fahrenheit, and upward, from January to August, and that the heat which the waters of the ocean derive from this source—atmospherical contact and radiation—is one of the causes which move the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  from its January to its September parallel.

§ 861

Causes which influence the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$ .

It is well to consider another of the causes which are at work upon the currents in this part of the ocean, and which tend to give the rapid southwardly motion to the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$ . We know the mean dew-point must always be below the mean temperature of any given place, and that, consequently, as a general rule, at sea the mean dew-point due the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  is higher than

the mean dew-point along the isotherm of  $50^{\circ}$ , and this, again, higher than that of  $40^{\circ}$ , this than  $30^{\circ}$ , and so on. Now suppose, merely for the sake of illustration, that the mean dew-point for each isotherm be  $5^{\circ}$  lower than the mean temperature, we should then have the atmosphere which crosses the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$ , with a mean dew-point of  $55^{\circ}$ , gradually precipitating its vapours until it reaches the isotherm of  $50^{\circ}$ , with a mean dew-point of  $45^{\circ}$ ; by which difference of dew-point the total amount of precipitation over the entire zone between the isotherms of  $60^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ}$  has exceeded the total amount of evaporation from the same surface. The prevailing direction of the winds to the north of the fortieth parallel of north latitude is from the southward and westward;<sup>1</sup> in other words, it is from the higher to the lower isotherms. Passing, therefore, from a higher to a lower temperature over the ocean, the total amount of vapour deposited by any given volume of atmosphere, as it is blown from the vicinity of the tropical toward that of the polar regions, is greater than that which is taken up again.

The area comprehended on Plate VIII. between the isotherms of  $40^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ}$  Fahrenheit is less than the area comprehended between the isotherms  $50^{\circ}$  and  $60^{\circ}$ ; and this, again, less than the area between this last and  $70^{\circ}$ ; for the same reason that the area between the parallels of latitude  $50^{\circ}$  and  $60^{\circ}$  is less than the area between the parallels of latitude  $40^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ}$ ; therefore, more rain to the square inch ought to fall upon the ocean between the colder isotherms of  $10^{\circ}$  difference than between the warmer isotherms of the same difference. This is an interesting and an important view, therefore let me make myself

CHAPTER  
XV.Prevailing  
direction  
of the  
winds  
north of  
fortieth  
parallel of  
north lati-  
tude.

§ 862

Area be-  
tween iso-  
therms of  
 $40^{\circ}$  and  
 $50^{\circ}$ .<sup>1</sup> Plate VIII.

CHAPTER  
XV.

Remarks  
on rain in  
connection  
with iso-  
therms.

clear: The aqueous isotherm of  $50^{\circ}$ , in its extreme northern reach, touches the parallel of  $60^{\circ}$  north. Now, between this and the equator there are but three isotherms,— $60^{\circ}$ ,  $70^{\circ}$ , and  $80^{\circ}$ ,—with the common difference of  $10^{\circ}$ ; but between the isotherm of  $40^{\circ}$  and the pole there are at least five others,—namely,  $40^{\circ}$ ,  $30^{\circ}$ ,  $20^{\circ}$ ,  $10^{\circ}$ ,  $0^{\circ}$ ,—with a common difference of  $10^{\circ}$ . Thus, to the north of the isotherm  $50^{\circ}$ , the vapour which would saturate the atmosphere from zero, and perhaps far below, to near  $40^{\circ}$ , is deposited; while to the south of  $50^{\circ}$ , the vapour which would saturate it from the temperature of  $50^{\circ}$  up to that of  $80^{\circ}$  can only be deposited: at least, such would be the case if there were no irregularities of heated plains, mountain ranges, land, &c., to disturb the laws of atmospherical circulation as they apply to the ocean.

§ 863

Rain in  
high lati-  
tudes.

Having, therefore, theoretically, at sea more rain in high latitudes, we should have more clouds; and therefore it would require a longer time for the sun, with his feeble rays, to raise the temperature of the cold water, which, from September to January, has brought the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  from latitude  $56^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$ , than it did for these cool surface-currents to float it down. After this southward motion of the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  has been checked in December by the cold, and after the sources of the current which brought it down have been bound in fetters of ice, it pauses in the long nights of the northern winter, and scarcely commences its return till the sun recrosses the equator, and increases its power as well in intensity as in duration.

§ 864

Thus, in studying the physical geography of the sea,

we have the effects of night and day, of clouds and sunshine, upon its currents and its climates, beautifully developed. These effects are modified by the operations of certain powerful agents which reside upon the land; nevertheless, feeble though those of the former class may be, they surely exist.

Now, returning toward the south: we may, on the other hand, infer that the mean atmospherical temperature for the parallels between which the isotherm of  $80^{\circ}$  fluctuates is below  $80^{\circ}$ , at least for the nine months of its slow motion. This vibratory motion suggests the idea that there is, probably somewhere between the isotherm of  $80^{\circ}$  in August and the isotherm of  $60^{\circ}$  in January, a line or belt of invariable, or nearly invariable temperature, which extends on the surface of the ocean from one side of the Atlantic to the other. This line or band may have its cycles also, but they are probably of long and uncertain periods.

§ 865  
Inference in regard to mean atmospherical temperature.

The fact has been pretty clearly established, by the discoveries to which the Wind and Current Charts have led, that the western half of the Atlantic Ocean is heated up, not by the Gulf Stream alone, as is generally supposed, but by the great equatorial caldron to the west of longitude  $35^{\circ}$ , and to the north of Cape St. Roque, in Brazil. The lowest reach of the  $80^{\circ}$  isotherm for September,—if we except the remarkable equatorial flexure (Plate IV.) which actually extends from  $40^{\circ}$  north to the line,—to the west of the meridian of Cape St. Roque, is above its highest reach to the east of that meridian. And now that we have the fact, how obvious, beautiful, and striking is the cause!

§ 866  
Western half of Atlantic is heated by great equatorial caldron.

CHAPTER  
XV.§ 867  
South  
American  
Continent.

Cape St. Roque is in  $5^{\circ} 30'$  south. Now, study the configuration of the Southern American Continent, from this cape to the Windward Islands of the West Indies, and take into account also certain physical conditions of these regions: The Amazon, always at a high temperature, because it runs from west to east, is pouring an immense volume of warm water into this part of the ocean. As this water and the heat of the sun raise the temperature of the ocean along the equatorial sea-front of this coast, there is no escape for the liquid element, as it grows warmer and lighter, except to the north. The land on the south prevents the tepid waters from spreading out in that direction as they do to the east of  $35^{\circ}$  west, for here there is a space, about  $18^{\circ}$  of longitude broad, in which the sea is clear both to the north and south.

§ 868  
Warm  
waters  
east of the  
Gulf  
Stream.

They must consequently flow north. A mere inspection of the plate is sufficient to make obvious the fact that the warm waters which are found east of the usual limits assigned the Gulf Stream, and between the parallels of  $30^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$  north, do not come from the Gulf Stream, but from this great equatorial caldron, which Cape St. Roque blocks up on the south, and which forces its overheated waters up to the fortieth degree of north latitude, not through the Caribbean Sea and Gulf Stream, but over the broad surface of the left bosom of the Atlantic Ocean.

§ 869  
Reflections

Here we are again tempted to pause and admire the beautiful revelations which, in the benign system of terrestrial adaptation, these researches into the physics of the sea unfold and spread out before us for contem-



plation. In doing this, we shall have a free pardon from those **at** least who delight "to look through nature up to nature's God."

CHAPTER  
XV.

What two things in nature can be apparently more remote in their physical relations to each other than the climate of Western Europe and the profile of a coast-line in South America? Yet this plate reveals to us not only the fact that these relations between the two are the most intimate, but makes us acquainted with the arrangements by which such relations are established.

§ 870  
Effect of  
South  
American  
coast line  
on West-  
ern Eu-  
rope

The barrier which the South American shore-line opposes to the escape, on the south, of the hot waters from this great equatorial caldron of St. Roque, causes them to flow north, and in September, as the winter approaches, to heat up the western half of the Atlantic Ocean, and to cover it with a mantle of warmth above summer heat as far up as the parallel of  $40^{\circ}$ . Here heat to temper the winter climate of Western Europe is stored away as in an air-chamber to furnace-heated apartments; and during the winter, when the fire of the solar rays sinks down, the westwardly winds and eastwardly currents are sent to perform their office in this benign arrangement. Though unstable and capricious to us they seem to be, they nevertheless "fulfil His commandments" with regularity, and perform their offices with certainty. In tempering the climates of Europe with heat in winter that has been bottled away in the waters of the ocean during summer, these winds and currents are to be regarded as the flues and regulators for distributing it at the right time, and at the right places, in the right quantities.

§ 871  
Great cal-  
dron of  
St. Roque.

Winds and  
currents  
regulators  
of heat.

CHAPTER  
XV.

§ 872

Cooling  
down of  
the fur-  
nace.

By March, when "the winter is past and gone," the furnace which had been started by the rays of the sun in the previous summer, and which, by autumn, had heated up the ocean in our hemisphere, has cooled down. The caldron of St. Roque, ceasing in activity, has failed in its supplies, and the chambers of warmth upon the Northern Sea, having been exhausted of their heated water, which has been expended in the manner already explained, have contracted their limits. The surface of heated water which, in September, was spread out over the western half of the Atlantic, from the equator to the parallel of  $40^{\circ}$  north, and which raised this immense area to the temperature of  $80^{\circ}$  and upward, is not to be found in early spring on this side of the parallel of  $8^{\circ}$  north.

§ 873

Isotherm  
of  $80^{\circ}$ .

The isotherm of  $80^{\circ}$  in March, after quitting the Caribbean Sea, runs parallel with the South American coast toward Cape St. Roque, keeping some eight or ten degrees from it. Therefore the heat dispensed over Europe from this caldron falls off in March. But at this season the sun comes forth with fresh supplies; he then crosses the line, and passes over into the northern hemisphere; observations show that the process of heating the water in this great caldron for the next winter is now about to commence.

§ 874

Another  
process of  
raising the  
tempera-  
ture of  
Europe.

In the meantime, so benign is the system of cosmical arrangements, another process of raising the temperature of Europe commences. The land is more readily impressed than the sea by the heat of the solar rays; at this season, then, the summer climate due these transatlantic latitudes is modified by the action of the sun's rays directly upon the land. The land receives heat

from them, but, instead of having the capacity of water for retaining it, it imparts it straightway to the air; and thus the proper climate, because it is the climate which the Creator has, for his own wise purposes, allotted to this portion of the earth, is maintained until the marine caldron of Cape St. Roque and the tropics is again heated and brought into the state for supplying the means of maintaining the needful temperature in Europe during the absence of the sun in the other hemisphere.

In like manner, the Gulf of Guinea forms a caldron and a furnace, and spreads out over the South Atlantic an air-chamber for heating up in winter and keeping warm the extra-tropical regions of South America. Every traveller has remarked upon the mild climate of Patagonia and the Falkland Islands.

“Temperature in high southern latitudes,” says a very close observer, who is co-operating with me in collecting materials, “differs greatly from the temperature in northern. In southern latitudes there seem to be no extremes of heat and cold, as at the north. Newport, Rhode Island, for instance, latitude  $41^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $71^{\circ}$  west, and Rio Negro, latitude  $41^{\circ}$  south, and longitude  $63^{\circ}$  west, as a comparison: in the former, cattle have to be stabled and fed during the winter, not being able to get a living in the fields on account of snow and ice. In the latter, the cattle feed in the fields all winter, there being plenty of vegetation and no use of hay. On the Falkland Islands (latitude  $51-2^{\circ}$  south), thousands of bullocks, sheep, and horses, are running wild over the country, gathering a living all through the winter.”

The water in the equatorial caldron of Guinea cannot

§ 875  
Gulf of  
Guinea.

§ 876  
Difference  
of tem-  
perature  
in high  
southern  
and north-  
ern lati-  
tudes.

CHAPTER  
XV.

escape north—the shore-line will not permit it. It must, therefore, overflow to the south, as that of St. Roque does to the north, carrying to Patagonia and the Falkland Islands, beyond  $50^{\circ}$  south, the winter climate of Charleston, South Carolina, on our side of the North Atlantic, or of the “Emerald Island” on the other.

§ 878 All geographers have noticed, and philosophers have frequently remarked upon the conformity, as to the shore-line profile, of equatorial America and equatorial Africa.

Shore line  
of equator-  
ial Ame-  
rica and  
Africa.

§ 879 It is true, we cannot now tell the reason, though explanations founded upon mere conjecture have been offered, why there should be this sort of jutting in and jutting out of the shore-line, as at Cape St. Roque and the Gulf of Guinea, on opposite sides of the Atlantic; but one of the purposes, at least, which this peculiar configuration was intended to subserve, is without doubt now revealed to us.

§ 880 We see that, by this configuration, two cisterns of hot water are formed in this ocean; one of which distributes heat and warmth to Western Europe; the other, at the opposite season, tempers the climate of eastern Patagonia.

Two cis-  
terns of hot  
water in  
ocean.

§ 881 Phlegmatic must be the mind that is not impressed with ideas of grandeur and simplicity as it contemplates that exquisite design, those benign and beautiful arrangements, by which the climate of one hemisphere is made to depend upon the curve of that line against which the sea is made to dash its waves in the other. Impressed with the perfection of terrestrial adaptations, he who studies the economy of the great cosmical arrangements is reminded that not only is there design in giving shore-lines their profile, the land and the water their propor-

Impressive  
grandeur  
and sim-  
plicity in  
design by  
which  
climates  
are modi-  
fied.

tions, and in placing the desert and the pool where they are, but the conviction is forced upon him also, that every hill and valley, with the grass upon its sides, have each its offices to perform in the grand design.

CHAPTER  
XV.  
—

March is, in the southern hemisphere, the first month of autumn, as September is with us; consequently, we should expect to find in the South Atlantic as large an area of water of 80° and upward in March, as we should find in the North Atlantic for September. But do we? By no means. The area on this side of the equator is nearly double that on the other.

§ 882  
First month of autumn in southern hemisphere.

Thus we have the sea as a witness to the fact that the winds<sup>1</sup> had proclaimed, namely, that summer in the northern hemisphere is hotter than summer in the southern, for the rays of the sun raise on this side of the equator double the quantity of sea-surface to a given temperature that they do on the other side; at least this is the case in the Atlantic. Perhaps the breadth of the Pacific Ocean, the absence of large islands in the temperate regions north, the presence of New Holland, with Polynesia, in the South Pacific, may make a difference there; but of this I cannot now speak, for thermal charts of that ocean have not yet been prepared.

§ 883  
Summer in northern hemisphere is hotter than that of the southern.

Pursuing the study of the climates of the sea, let us now turn to Plate VI. Here we see how the cold waters, as they come down from the Arctic Ocean through Davis' Straits, press upon the warm waters of the Gulf Stream, and curve their channel somewhat into the form of a horse-shoe. Navigators have often been struck with the great and sudden changes in the temperature of the water hereabouts. In the course of a single day's sail in this

§ 884  
Reference to Plate VI.

<sup>1</sup> § 327.

CHAPTER XV. part of the ocean, changes of  $15^{\circ}$ , or  $20^{\circ}$ , and even of  $30^{\circ}$ , have been observed to take place in the temperature of the sea. The cause has puzzled navigators long; but how obvious is it now made to appear! This "bend" is the great receptacle of the icebergs which drift down from the north; covering frequently an area of hundreds of miles in extent, its waters differ as much as  $20^{\circ}$ ,  $25^{\circ}$ , and, in rare cases, even as much as  $30^{\circ}$  of temperature from those about it. Its shape and place are variable. Sometimes it is like a peninsula, or tongue of cold water, projected far down into the waters of the Gulf Stream. Sometimes the meridian upon which it is inserted into these is to the east of  $40^{\circ}$ , sometimes to the west of  $50^{\circ}$ , longitude. By its discovery we have clearly unmasked the very seat of that agent which produces the Newfoundland fogs. It is spread out over an area frequently embracing several thousand square miles in extent, covered with cold water, and surrounded on three sides, at least, with an immense body of warm. May it not be that the proximity to each other of these two very unequally heated surfaces out upon the ocean would be attended by atmospherical phenomena not unlike those of the land and sea breezes? These warm currents of the sea are powerful meteorological agents. I have been enabled to trace, in thunder and lightning, the influence of the Gulf Stream in the eastern half of the Atlantic, as far north as the parallel of  $55^{\circ}$  north; for there, in the dead of winter, a thunder-storm is not unusual.

§ 885 These isothermal lines of  $50^{\circ}$ ,  $60^{\circ}$ ,  $70^{\circ}$ ,  $80^{\circ}$ , &c., may illustrate for us the manner in which the climates in the ocean are regulated. Like the sun in the ecliptic,

CHAPTER  
XV.

Great re-  
ceptacle of  
icebergs.

The seat of  
the agent  
that causes  
the New-  
foundland  
fogs.

Of climates  
in the  
ocean.



they travel up and down the sea in declination, and serve the monsters of the deep for signs and for seasons. CHAPTER  
XV.  
—

It should be borne in mind that the lines of separation, § 886 as drawn on Plate IX., between the cool and warm waters, or, more properly speaking, between the channels representing the great polar and equatorial flux and reflux, are not so sharp in nature as this plate would represent them. Remarks  
on Plate  
IX.

In the first place, the plate represents the mean or average limits of these constant flows—polar and equatorial; whereas, with almost every wind that blows, and at every change of season, the line of meeting between their waters is shifted. In the next place, this line of meeting is drawn with a free hand on the plate, as if to represent an average; whereas there is reason to believe that this line in nature is variable and unstable as to position, and as to shape rough and jagged, and oftentimes deeply articulated. In the sea, the line of meeting between waters of different temperatures and density is not unlike the sutures of the skull-bone on a grand scale—very rough and jagged; but on the plate it is a line drawn with a free hand, for the purpose of showing the general direction and position of the channels in the sea through which its great polar and equatorial circulation is carried on.

Now, continuing for a moment our examination of § 887 Plate IV., we are struck with the fact that most of the thermal lines there drawn run from the western side of the Atlantic toward the eastern, in a north-eastwardly direction; and that, as they approach the shores of this ocean on the east, they again turn down for lower latitudes and warmer climates. This feature in them indicates, more surely than any direct observations upon the Reference  
to Plate  
IV.

CHAPTER XV. currents can do, the presence, along the African shores  
 — in the North Atlantic, of a large volume of cooler waters.

Course of These are the waters which, having been first heated up  
 waters from St. in the caldron of St. Roque,<sup>1</sup> in the Caribbean Sea and  
 Roque cal- Gulf of Mexico, have been made to run to the north,  
 dron. charged with heat and electricity to temper and regulate  
 climates there. Having performed their offices, they  
 have cooled down; but, obedient still to the "Mighty  
 Voice" which the winds and the waves obey, they now  
 return by this channel along the African shore to be  
 again replenished with warmth, and to keep up the  
 system of beneficent and wholesome circulation designed  
 for the ocean.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 366.

## CHAPTER XVI.

## THE DRIFT OF THE SEA.

Data used for Plate IX., § 893.—The Antarctic Flow, 896.—A large Flow from the Indian Ocean, 902.—Patches of Coloured Water, 905.—The Lagullas Current, 909.—An immense Current, 911.—Tide Rips, 914.—Pulse of the Sea, 920.—Diurnal Change of Sea Temperature, 922.—The Fisheries, 925.—The Sperm Whale, 926.

THERE is a movement of the waters of the ocean which, though it be a translation, yet does not amount to what is known to the mariner as current; for our nautical instruments and the art of navigation have not been brought to that state of perfection which will enable navigators generally to detect as currents the flow to which I allude as *drift*.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
§ 887  
Drift of  
the ocean.

If we imagine an object to be set adrift in the ocean at the equator, and if we suppose that it be of such a nature that it would obey only the influence of sea water, and not of the winds, this object, I imagine, would, in the course of time, find its way to the icy barriers about the poles, and again back among the tepid waters of the tropics. Such an object would illustrate the *drift of the sea*, and by its course would indicate the route which the surface-waters of the sea follow in their general channels of circulation to and fro between the equator and the poles.

§ 888  
Supposed  
case of an  
object set  
adrift.

The object of Plate IX., therefore, is to illustrate, as far as the present state of my researches enables me to do, the circulation of the ocean, as influenced by *heat* and *cold*, and to indicate the routes by which the overheated

§ 889  
Design of  
Plate IX.

CHAPTER XVI. waters of the torrid zone escape to cooler regions on one hand, and, on the other, the great channel-ways through which the same waters, after having been deprived of this heat in the extra-tropical or polar regions, return again toward the equator; it being assumed that the drift or flow is from the poles when the temperature of the surface water is *below*, and from the equatorial regions when it is above that due the latitude. Therefore, in a mere diagram, as this plate is, the numerous eddies and local currents which are found at sea are disregarded.

§ 890 Of all the currents in the sea, the Gulf Stream is the best defined; its limits, especially those of the left bank, are always well marked, and, as a rule, those of the right bank, as high as the parallel of the thirty-fifth degree of latitude, are quite distinct, being often visible to the eye. The Gulf Stream shifts its channel,<sup>1</sup> but nevertheless its banks are often very distinct. As I write these remarks, the abstract log of the ship *Herculean* (William M. Chamberlain), from Callao to Hampton Roads, in May 1854, is received. On the 11th of that month, being in latitude 33° 39' north, longitude 74° 56' west (about one hundred and thirty miles east of Cape Fear), he remarks:—

§ 891 “Moderate breezes, smooth sea, and fine weather. At ten o'clock fifty minutes, entered into the southern (right) edge of the stream, and in eight minutes the water rose six degrees. The edge of the stream was visible, as far as the eye could see, by the great rippling and large quantities of Gulf weed—more ‘weed’ than I ever saw before, and I have been many times along this route in the last twenty years.”

---

<sup>1</sup> § 54.

In this diagram, therefore, I have thought it useless to attempt a delineation of any of those currents, as the Rennell Current of the North Atlantic, the "Connecting Current" of the South, "Mentor's Counter Drift," "Rosel's Drift of the South Pacific," etc., which run now this way, now that, and which are frequently not felt by navigators at all.

In overhauling the log-books for data for this chart, I have followed vessels with the water thermometer to and fro across the seas, and taken the registrations of it exclusively for my guide, without regard to the reported set of the currents. When, in any latitude, the temperature of the water has appeared too high or too low for that latitude, the inference has been that such water was warmed or cooled, as the case may be, in other latitudes, and that it has been conveyed to the place where found through the great channels of circulation in the ocean. If too warm, it is supposed<sup>1</sup> that it had its temperature raised in warmer latitudes, and therefore the channel in which it is found leads from the equatorial regions.

On the other hand, if the water be too cool for the latitude, then the inference is that it has lost its heat in colder climates, and therefore is found in channels which lead from the polar regions.

The arrow heads point to the direction in which the waters are supposed to flow. Their rate, according to the best information that I have obtained, is, at a mean, only about four knots a day—rather less than more.

Accordingly, therefore, as the immense volume of water in the Antarctic regions is cooled down, it commences to

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
§ 892

Mode of  
ascertain-  
ing the  
set of cur-  
rents.

§ 894

Rate of  
flow.

§ 896

<sup>1</sup> § 839.

CHAPTER  
XVI.Direction  
of flow  
from Ant-  
arctic re-  
gions.

flow north. As indicated by the arrow heads, it strikes against Cape Horn, and is divided by the continent, one portion going along the west coast as Humboldt's Current;<sup>1</sup> the other, entering the South Atlantic, flows up into the Gulf of Guinea, on the coast of Africa. Now, as the waters of this polar flow approach the torrid zone, they grow warmer and warmer, and finally themselves become tropical in their temperature. They do not then, it may be supposed, stop their flow; on the contrary, they keep moving, for the very cause which brought them from the extra-tropical regions now operates to send them back. This cause is to be found in the difference of the specific gravity at the two places. If, for instance, these waters, when they commence their flow from the hyperborean regions, were at 30°, their specific gravity will correspond to that of sea water at 30°. But when they arrive in the Gulf of Guinea, or the Bay of Panama, having risen by the way to 80°, or perhaps 85°, their specific gravity becomes such as is due sea water of this temperature; and, since fluids differing in specific gravity can no more balance each other on the same level than can unequal weights in opposite scales, this hot water must now return to restore that equilibrium which it has destroyed in the sea by rising from 30° to 80° or 85°.

Effects of  
specific  
gravity.

§ 897 Hence it will be perceived that those masses of water which are marked as cold are not always cold. They gradually pass into warm; for in travelling from the poles to the equator they partake of the temperature of the latitudes through which they flow, and grow warm.

Cold  
waters not  
always  
cold.<sup>1</sup> § 455.



Plate IX., therefore, is only introduced to give general ideas; nevertheless it is very instructive. See how the influx of cold water into the South Atlantic appears to divide the warm water, and squeeze it out at the sides, along the coasts of South Africa and Brazil. So, too, in the North Indian Ocean, the cold water again compelling the warm to escape along the land at the sides, as well as occasionally in the middle.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
§ 898  
Influences  
of the cold  
flow.

In the North Atlantic and North Pacific, on the contrary, the warm water appears to divide the cold, and to squeeze it out along the land at the sides. The impression made by the cold current from Baffin's Bay upon the Gulf Stream is strikingly beautiful.

§ 899  
Of the  
warm flow

Why is it that these polar and equatorial waters should appear now to divide, and now to be divided? The Gulf Stream has revealed to us a fact in which the answer is involved. We learn from that stream that cold and warm sea waters are, in a measure,<sup>1</sup> like oil and vinegar; that is, there is among the particles of sea water at a high temperature, and among the particles of sea water at a low temperature, a peculiar molecular arrangement that is antagonistic to the free mixing up of cold and hot together. At any rate, that salt waters of different temperatures do not readily intermingle at sea is obvious.

§ 900  
Information  
gathered  
from the  
Gulf  
Stream.

Does not this same repugnance exist, at least in degree, between these bodies of cold and warm water of the plate? And if so, does not the phenomenon we are considering resolve itself into a question of masses? The volume of warm water in the North Atlantic is greater than the volume

§ 901

<sup>1</sup> § 28.  
25

CHAPTER  
XVI.Counter-  
effects of  
hot and  
cold vol-  
umes of  
water

of cold water that meets and opposes it; consequently, the warm thrusts the cold aside, dividing and compelling it *to go round*. The same thing is repeated in the North Pacific, whereas the converse obtains in the South Atlantic. Here the great polar flow, after having been divided by the American continent, enters the Atlantic, and filling up nearly the whole of the immense space between South America and Africa, seems to press the warm waters of the tropics aside, compelling them to drift along the coast on either hand.

§ 902 Another feature of the sea is a sort of reflection or recast of the shore-line in the temperature of the water. This feature is most striking in the North Pacific and Indian Oceans. The remarkable intrusion of the cool into the volume of warm waters to the southward of the Aleutian Islands, is not unlike that which the cool waters from Davis' Straits make in the Atlantic upon the Gulf Stream. In sailing through this "horse-shoe," or bend in the Gulf Stream,<sup>1</sup> Captain N. B. Grant, of the American ship *Lady Arbella*, bound from Hamburg to New York, in May 1854, passed, from daylight to noon, twenty-four large "bergs," besides several small ones, "the whole ocean, as far as the eye could reach, being literally covered with them. I should," he continues, "judge the average height of them above the surface of the sea to be about sixty feet; some five or six of them were at least twice that height, and, with their frozen peaks jutting up in the most fantastic shapes, presented a truly sublime spectacle."

Icebergs.

§ 903 This "horse-shoe" of cold in the warm water of the North Pacific, though extending five degrees farther to-

---

<sup>1</sup> § 554.

ward the south, cannot be the harbour for such icebergs. The cradle of those of the Atlantic was perhaps in the Frozen Ocean, for they may have come thence through Baffin's Bay. But in the Pacific there is no nursery for them. The water in Behring's Strait is too shallow to let them pass from that ocean into the Pacific, and the climates of Russian America do not favour the formation of large bergs. But, though we do not find in the North Pacific the physical conditions which generate icebergs like those of the Atlantic, we find them as abundant with fogs. The line of separation between the warm and cold water assures us of these conditions.

What beautiful, grand, and benign ideas do we not see expressed in that immense body of warm waters which are gathered together in the middle of the Pacific and Indian Oceans! It is the womb of the sea. In it coral islands innumerable have been fashioned, and pearls formed in "great heaps;" there, multitudes of living things, countless in number and infinite in variety, are hourly conceived. With space enough to hold the four continents and to spare, its tepid waters teem with nascent organisms.\* They sometimes swarm so thickly there that they change the colour of the sea, making it crimson, brown, black, or white, according to their own hues. These patches of coloured water sometimes extend, espe-

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
The cradle  
of icebergs

§ 904  
Body of  
warm  
waters in  
the middle  
of the  
Pacific and  
Indian  
Oceans.

Coloured  
sea-water.

\* "It is the realm of reef-building corals, and of the wondrously beautiful assemblage of animals, vertebrate and invertebrate, that live among them or prey upon them. The brightest and most definite arrangements of colour are here displayed. It is the seat of maximum development of the majority of marine genera. It has but few relations of identity with other provinces. The Red Sea and Persian Gulf are its offsets."—*From Professor Forbes's Paper on the "Distribution of Marine Life." Plate 31, Johnston's Physical Atlas, 2d edit. : Wm. Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh and London, 1854.*

CHAPTER  
XVI.

cially in the Indian Ocean, as far as the eye can reach. The question, "What produces them?" is one that has elicited much discussion in seafaring circles. The Brussels Conference deemed them an object worthy of attention, and recommended special observations with regard to them.

## § 905

Remark-  
able white  
patch.

Captain W. E. Kingman, of the American clipper ship the *Shooting Star*, reports in his last abstract log a remarkable white patch, in lat.  $8^{\circ} 46'$  south, long.  $105^{\circ} 30'$  east, and which, in a letter to me, he thus describes:—

Abstract  
from Capt.  
Kingman's  
log.

"*Thursday, July 27, 1854.*—At 7h. 45m. P.M., my attention was called to notice the colour of the water, which was rapidly growing white. Knowing that we were in a much frequented part of the ocean, and having never heard of such an appearance being observed before in this vicinity, I could not account for it. I immediately hove the ship to, and cast the lead; had no bottom at 60 fathoms. I then kept on our course, tried the water by thermometer, and found it to be  $78\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , the same as at 8 A.M. We filled a tub, containing some 60 gallons, with the water, and found that it was filled with small luminous particles, which, when stirred, presented a most remarkable appearance. The whole tub seemed to be active with worms and insects, and looked like a grand display of rockets and serpents seen at a great distance in a dark night; some of the serpents appeared to be six inches in length, and very luminous. We caught, and could feel them in our hands, and they would emit light until brought within a few feet of a lamp, when, upon looking to see what we had, behold nothing was visible! but, by the aid of a sextant's

Remark-  
able and  
splendid  
appear-  
ance of  
water.

magnifier, we could plainly see a jelly-like substance without colour. At last, a specimen was obtained of about two inches in length, and plainly visible to the naked eye; it was about the size of a large hair, and tapered at the ends. By bringing one end within about one-fourth of an inch of a lighted lamp, the flame was attracted toward it, and burned with a red light; the substance crisped in burning, something like a hair, or appeared of a red heat before being consumed. In a glass of the water there were several small, round substances (say one-sixteenth of an inch in diameter), which had the power of expanding to more than twice their ordinary size and then contracting again; when expanded, the outer rim appeared like a circular saw, only that the teeth pointed toward the centre.

CHAPTER  
XVI.Curious  
animal-  
culæ

“This patch of white water was about 23 miles in length north and south, divided near its centre by an irregular strip of dark water half a mile wide; its east and west extent I can say nothing about.

Length of  
the patch

“I have seen what is called white water in about all the known oceans and seas in the world, but nothing that would compare to this in extent or whiteness. Although we were going at the rate of nine knots, the ship made no noise either at the bow or stern. The whole appearance of the ocean was like a plain covered with snow. There was scarce a cloud in the heavens, yet the sky, for about ten degrees above the horizon, appeared as black as if a storm was raging; the stars of the first magnitude shone with a feeble light, and the ‘Milky Way’ of the heavens was almost entirely eclipsed by that through which we were sailing. The scene was one of

Its great  
whiteness

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
—

awful grandeur; the sea having turned to phosphorus, and the heavens being hung in blackness, and the stars going out, seemed to indicate that all nature was preparing for that last grand conflagration which we are taught to believe is to annihilate this material world.

Appear-  
ance of the  
sky.

“After passing through the patch, we noticed that the sky, for four or five degrees above the horizon, was considerably illuminated,—something like a faint aurora borealis. We soon passed out of sight of the whole concern, and had a fine night, without any conflagration (except of midnight oil, in trying to find out what was in the water). I send you this, because I believe you request your corps of ‘one thousand assistants’ to furnish you with all such items, and I trust it will be acceptable. But as to its furnishing you with much, if any, information relative to the insects or animals that inhabit the mighty deep, time only will tell; I cannot think it will.”

§ 906

Causes of  
discolora-  
tion.

These discolorations are no doubt caused by organisms of the sea, but whether wholly animal or wholly vegetable, or whether sometimes the one and sometimes the other, has not been satisfactorily ascertained. I have had specimens of the colouring matter sent to me from the pink-stained patches of the sea. They were animalculæ well defined. The tints which have given to the Red Sea its name may, perhaps, be in some measure due to agencies similar to those which, in the salt-makers’ ponds, give a reddish cast<sup>1</sup> to the brine just before it reaches that point of concentration when crystallization is to commence. Some microscopists maintain that this tinge is imparted by the shells and other remains of infusoria which have



perished in the growing saltness of the water. The Red Sea may be regarded, in a certain light, as the scene of natural salt-works on a grand scale. The process is by solar evaporation. No rains interfere, for that sea<sup>1</sup> is in a riverless district, and the evaporation goes on unceasingly, day and night, the year round. The shores are lined with incrustations of salt, and the same causes which tinge with red<sup>2</sup> the brine in the vats of the salt-makers probably impart a like hue to the arms and ponds along the shore of this sea. Quantities, also, of slimy, red colouring matter are, at certain seasons of the year, washed up along the shores of the Red Sea; which Dr. Ehrenberg, after an examination under the microscope, pronounces to be a very delicate kind of sea-weed. From this matter that sea derives its name. So also the Yellow Sea. Along the coasts of China, yellowish-coloured spots are said not to be uncommon. I know of no examination of this colouring matter, however. In the Pacific Ocean I have often observed these discolorations of the sea. Red patches of water are most frequently met with, but I have also observed white or milky appearances, which at night I have known greatly to alarm navigators by their being taken for shoals.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
—  
Red Sea  
a natural  
salt work.

The Yel-  
low Sea.

These teeming waters bear off through their several channels the surplus heat of the tropics, and disperse it among the icebergs of the Antarctic. See the immense equatorial flow east of New Holland. It is bound for the icy barriers of that unknown sea, there to temper climates, grow cool, and return again, refreshing man and beast by the way, either as the Humboldt Current, or the ice-bearing current which enters the Atlantic around Cape

§ 907  
Equatorial  
flow east of  
New Hol-  
land.

<sup>1</sup> § 404.

<sup>2</sup> § 3.

CHAPTER  
XVI.

The waters  
by which  
the far-  
thest south  
may be  
reached.

Horn, and changes into warm again as it enters the Gulf of Guinea. It was owing to this great southern flow from the coral regions that Captain Ross was enabled to penetrate so much farther south than Captain Wilkes, on his voyage to the Antarctic; and it is upon these waters that that sea is to be penetrated, if ever. The North Pacific, except in the narrow passage between Asia and America, is closed to the escape of these warm waters into the Arctic Ocean. The only outlet for them is to the south. They go down toward the Antarctic regions to dispense their heat and get cool; and the cold of the Antarctic, therefore, it may be inferred, is not so bitter as is the extreme cold of the Frozen Ocean of the north.

§ 908 The warm flow to the south from the middle of the Indian Ocean is remarkable. Masters who return their abstract logs to me mention sea-weed, which I suppose to be brought down by this current, as far as  $45^{\circ}$  south. There it is generally, but not always, about  $5^{\circ}$  warmer than the ocean along the same parallel on either side.

Warm flow  
along west  
coast of  
South  
Africa.

§ 909 But the most unexpected discovery of all is that of the warm flow along the west coast of South Africa, its junction with the Lagullas current,—called, higher up, the Mozambique,—and then their starting off as one stream to the southward. The prevalent opinion used to be, that the Lagullas current, which has its genesis in the Red Sea,<sup>1</sup> doubled the Cape of Good Hope, and then joined the great equatorial current of the Atlantic to feed the Gulf Stream. But my excellent friend, Lieutenant Marin Jansen, of the Dutch Navy, suggested that this was probably not the case. This induced a special investiga-

<sup>1</sup> § 440.

tion, and I found as he suggested, and as is represented on Plate IX. Captain N. B. Grant, in the admirably well-kept abstract log of his voyage from New York to Australia, found this current remarkably developed. He was astonished at the temperature of its waters, and did not know how to account for such a body of warm water in such a place. Being in longitude  $14^{\circ}$  east, and latitude  $39^{\circ}$  south, he thus writes in his abstract log:—

“That there is a current setting to the eastward across the South Atlantic and Indian Oceans is, I believe, admitted by all navigators. The prevailing westerly winds seem to offer a sufficient reason for the existence of such a current, and the almost constant south-west swell would naturally give it a northerly direction. But why the water should be *warmer* here ( $38^{\circ} 40'$  south) than between the parallels of  $35^{\circ}$  and  $37^{\circ}$  south, is a problem that, in my mind, admits not of so easy solution, especially if my suspicions are true in regard to the northerly set. I shall look with much interest for a description of the ‘currents’ in this part of the ocean.”

In latitude  $38^{\circ}$  south, longitude  $6^{\circ}$  east, he found the water at  $56^{\circ}$ . His course thence was a little to the south of east, to the meridian of  $41^{\circ}$  east, at its intersection with the parallel of  $42^{\circ}$  south. Here his water thermometer stood at  $50^{\circ}$ , but between these two places it ranged at  $60^{\circ}$ , and upward, being as high on the parallel of  $39^{\circ}$  as  $73^{\circ}$ . Here, therefore, was a stream—a mighty “river in the ocean”—one thousand six hundred miles across from east to west, having water in the middle of it  $23^{\circ}$  higher than at the sides. This is truly a Gulf Stream contrast. What an immense escape of heat from the Indian Ocean, and what an influx of warm water into

CHAPTER  
XVI.§ 910  
Remarks  
of Captain  
N. B. Grant§ 911  
Indica-  
tions of  
thermo-  
meter.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
—

the frozen regions of the south! This stream is not always as broad nor as warm as Captain Grant found it. At its mean stage it conforms more nearly to the limits assigned it in the diagram (Plate IX.).

§ 912 We have, in the volume of heated water reported by Captain Grant, who is a close and accurate observer, an illustration of the sort of *spasmodic* efforts—the heaves and throes—which the sea, in the performance of its ceaseless task, has sometimes to make. By some means the equilibrium of its waters, at the time of Captain Grant's passage, December—the southern summer—1852, appears to have been disturbed to an unusual extent; hence this mighty rush of overheated waters from the great inter-tropical caldron of the two oceans down toward the south.

§ 913 Instances of commotion in the sea at uncertain intervals—the making, as it were, of efforts by fits and starts to keep up to time in the performance of its manifold offices—are not unfrequent, nor are they inaptly likened to spasms. There are some remarkable throes in the sea, which I have not been able wholly to account for. Near the equator, and especially on this side of it in the Atlantic, mention is made, in the “abstract log,” by almost every observer that passes that way, of “tide-rips;” which are a commotion in the water not unlike that produced by a conflict of tides, or of other powerful currents. These “tide-rips” sometimes move along with a roaring noise, and the inexperienced navigator always expects to find his vessel drifted by them a long way out of her course; but when he comes to cast up his reckoning the next day at noon, he remarks with surprise that no current has been felt.

Commo-  
tion of the  
sea at un-  
certain in-  
tervals.

These tide-rips are usually found in the neighbourhood of the equatorial calms, that region of constant precipitation. And hence, if currents at all,—if so, they are very superficial,—I have thought they might be streams of rain water, which old seamen tell us they have dipped up there fresh from the sea, running off. This conjecture, however, does not satisfy the phenomenon in all of its aspects. It is sometimes described as starting up in a calm, and then approaching the vessel with great waves and a great noise: it seems threatening enough to excite a feeling of apprehension in the minds of seamen, for it looks as if it would dash over their frail bark as it lies wallowing in the sea, and helplessly flapping its sails against the masts.

Captain Higgins, of the *Maria*, when bound from New York to Brazil, thus describes, in his abstract log, one of these “tide-rips,” as seen by him 10th October 1855, in N. lat.  $14^{\circ}$ , W. long.  $34^{\circ}$ :—

“At 3 P.M. saw a tide-rip; in the centre, temp. air  $80^{\circ}$ , water  $81^{\circ}$ . From the time it was seen to windward, about three to five miles, until it had passed to leeward out of sight, it was not five minutes. I should judge it travelled at not less than sixty miles per hour, or as fast as the bores of India. Although we have passed through several during the night, we do not find they have set the ship to the westward any. It may be that they are so soon passed that they have no influence on the ship; but they certainly beat very hard against the ship’s sides, and jarred her all over. They are felt even when below, and will wake one out of sleep.”

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
§ 914  
Tide-rips.

§ 915  
Description of  
tide-rip by  
Captain  
Higgins.

But, besides tide-rips, bores, and eagres,\* there are the sudden disruption of the ice which arctic voyagers tell of,

Disruption  
of ice, ice-  
bergs, &c.

\* The bores of India, of the Bay of Fundy, and the Amazon, are the most celebrated. They are a tremulous tidal-wave, which, at stated periods, comes rolling in from the sea, threatening to overwhelm and engulf everything that moves on the beach. This wave is described, especially in the Bay of Fundy, as being many feet high; and it is said oftentimes to overtake deer, swine, and other wild beasts that feed or lick on the beach, and to swallow them up before the swiftest of foot among them have time to escape. The swine, as they feed on mussels at low water, are said to snuff the "bore," either by sound or smell, and sometimes to dash off to the cliffs before it rolls in.

The eagre is the bore of Tsien-Tang river. It is thus described by Dr. Macgowan, in a paper before the Royal Asiatic Society, 12th January, 1853, and as seen by him from the city of Hang-chau in 1848:—

"At the upper part of the bay, and about the mouth of the river, the eagre is scarcely observable; but, owing to the very gradual descent of the shore and the rapidity of the great flood and ebb, the tidal phenomena even here present a remarkable appearance. Vessels which, a few moments before, were afloat, are suddenly left high and dry on a strand nearly two miles in width, which the returning wave as quickly floods. It is not until the tide rushes beyond the mouth of the river that it becomes elevated to a lofty wave constituting the eagre, which attains its greatest magnitude opposite the city of Hang-chau. Generally there is nothing in its aspect, except on the *third* day of the second month and on the *eighteenth* of the eighth, or at the spring-tide, about the period of the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, its great intensity being at the latter season. Sometimes, however, during the prevalence of easterly winds, on the *third* day, after the sun and moon are in conjunction, or in opposition, the eagre courses up the river with hardly less majesty than when paying its ordinary periodical visit. On one of these unusual occasions, when I was travelling in native costume, I had an opportunity of witnessing it, on December 14th, 1848, at about 2 P.M.

"Between the river and the city walls, which are a mile distant, dense suburbs extend several miles along the banks. As the hour of flood-tide approached, crowds gathered in the streets, running at right angles with the Tsien-Tang, but at safe distances. My position was a terrace in front of the TRI-WAVE Temple, which afforded a good view of the entire scene. On a sudden all traffic in the thronged mart was suspended, porters cleared the front street of every description of merchandise, boatmen ceased lading and unlading their vessels, and put out in the middle of the stream; so that a few moments sufficed to give a deserted appearance to the busiest part of one of the busiest cities of Asia. The centre of the river teemed with craft, from small boats to huge barges, including the gay 'flower-boats.' Loud shouting from the fleet announced the appearance of the flood, which seemed like a glistening white cable, stretched athwart the river at its mouth, as far down as the eye could reach. Its noise, compared by Chinese poets to that of thunder, speedily drowned that of the boatmen; and, as it advanced with prodigious velocity,—at the rate, I should judge, of twenty-five miles an hour,—it assumed the appearance of an alabaster wall, or, rather, of a cataract four or five miles across and about thirty feet high, moving bodily onward.



the immense bergs which occasionally appear in groups near certain latitudes, the variable character of all the

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
—

Soon it reached the advanced guard of the immense assemblage of vessels awaiting its approach. Knowing that the bore of the Hooghly, which scarcely deserved mention in connection with the one before me, invariably overturned boats which were not skilfully managed, I could not but feel apprehensive for the lives of the floating multitude. As the foaming wall of water dashed impetuously onward, they were silenced, all being intently occupied in keeping their prows toward the wave, which threatened to submerge everything afloat; but they all vaulted, as it were, to the summit with perfect safety. The spectacle was of greatest interest when the eagle had passed about one half way among the craft. On one side they were quietly reposing on the surface of the unruffled stream, while those on the nether portion were pitching and heaving in tumultuous confusion on the flood; others were scaling with the agility of salmon the formidable cascade. This grand and exciting scene was but of a moment's duration,—it passed up the river in an instant; but from this point with gradually diminishing force, size, and velocity, until it ceased to be perceptible, which Chinese accounts represent to be eighty miles distant from the city. From ebb to flood tide the change was almost instantaneous: a slight flood continued after the passage of the wave, but it soon began to ebb. Having lost my memoranda, I am obliged to write from recollection. My impression is, that the fall was about twenty feet; the Chinese say that the rise and fall is sometimes forty feet at Hang-chau. The maximum rise and fall at spring-tides is probably at the mouth of the river, or upper part of the bay, where the eagle is hardly discoverable. In the Bay of Fundy, where the tides rush in with amazing velocity, there is at one place a rise of seventy feet; but there the magnificent phenomenon in question does not appear to be known at all. It is not, therefore, where tides attain their greatest rapidity, or maximum rise and fall, that this wave is met with, but where a river and its estuary both present a peculiar configuration.

“Dryden's definition of an eagle, appended in a note to the verse above quoted from the *Threnodia Augustalis*, is, ‘a tide swelling above another tide,’ which he says he had himself observed in the River Trent. Such, according to Chinese oral accounts, is the character of the Tsien-Tang tides: a wave of considerable height rushes suddenly in from the bay, which is soon followed by one much larger. Other accounts represent three successive waves riding in; hence the name of the temple mentioned, that of the Three Waves. Both here and on the Hooghly I observed but one wave; my attention, however, was not particularly directed to this feature of the eagle. The term should, perhaps, be more comprehensive, and express ‘the instantaneous rise and advance of a tidal wave;’ the Indian barbarism, ‘bore,’ should be discarded altogether.

“A very short period elapsed between the passage of the eagle and the resumption of traffic. The vessels were soon attached to the shore again; women and children were occupied in gathering articles which the careless or unskilful had lost in the aquatic *mêlée*. The streets were drenched with spray, and a considerable volume of water splashed over the banks into the head of the grand canal, a few feet distant.”—Vide *Transactions of Chinese Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*.

CHAPTER  
XVI.Recession  
of the sea.

currents of the sea,—now fast, now slow, now running this way, then that,—all of which may be taken as so many signs of the tremendous throes which occur in the bosom of the ocean. Sometimes the sea recedes from the shore, as if to gather strength for a great rush against its barriers; as it did when it fled back to join with the earthquake and overwhelm Callao in 1746, and again Lisbon nine years afterward. The tide-rips in mid ocean, the waves dashing against the shore, the ebb and flow of the tides, may be regarded, in some sense, as the throbbings of the great sea pulse.

§ 917  
The Gulf  
Stream a  
pulse in  
the sea.

The motions of the Gulf Stream,<sup>1</sup> beating time for the ocean and telling the seasons for the whales, also suggest the idea of a pulse in the sea, which may assist us in explaining some of its phenomena. At one beat there is a rush of warm water from the equator toward the poles, at the next beat a flow from the poles toward the equator. This sort of pulsation is heard also in the howling of the storm and the whistling of the wind; the needle trembles unceasingly to it, and tells us of magnetic storms of great violence, which at times extend over large portions of the earth's surface; and when we come to consult the records of those exquisitely sensitive anemometers, which the science and ingenuity of the age have placed at the service of philosophers, we find there that the pulse of the atmosphere is never still: in what appears to us the most perfect calm, the recording pens of the automatic machine are moving to the pulses of the air.

§ 918  
Warm wa-  
ter flows  
compared  
to circula-  
tion of the  
blood.

Now, if we may be permitted to apply to the Gulf Stream, and to the warm flows of water from the Indian Ocean, an idea suggested by the functions of the human

<sup>1</sup> § 55.

heart in the circulation of the blood, we perceive how these pulsations of the great sea-heart may perhaps assist in giving circulation to its waters through the immense system of aqueous veins and arteries that run between the equatorial and polar regions. The waters of the Gulf Stream, moving together in a body<sup>1</sup> through such an extent of ocean, and being almost impenetrable to the cold waters on either side,—which are, indeed, the banks of this mighty river,—may be compared to a wedge-shaped cushion placed between a wall of waters on the right and a wall of waters on the left. If now we imagine the equilibrium of the sea to be disturbed by the heating or cooling of its waters to the right or the left of this stream, or the freezing or thawing of them in any part; or if we imagine the disturbance to take place by the action of any of those agencies which give rise to the motions which we have called the pulsations of the sea; we may conceive how it might be possible for them to force the wall of waters on the left to press this cushion down toward the south, and then again for the wall on the right to press it back again to the north, as we have seen that it is.<sup>2</sup>

Now the Gulf Stream, with its head in the Straits of Florida, and its tail in the midst of the ocean, is wedge-shaped; its waters cling together, and are pushed to and fro—squeezed, if you please—by a pressure,<sup>3</sup> now from the right, then from the left, so as to work the whole wedge along between the cold liquid walls which contain it. May not the velocity of this stream, therefore, be in some sort the result of this working and twisting, this peristaltic force in the sea?

<sup>1</sup> § 1.<sup>2</sup> § 56.<sup>3</sup> § 55.

CHAPTER  
XVI.

§ 920

Two lobes  
of polar  
water  
stretching  
up from  
the south  
into Indian  
Ocean.

In carrying out the views suggested by the idea of pulsations in the sea, and their effects in giving dynamical force to the circulation of its waters, attention may be called to the two lobes of polar waters that stretch up from the south into the Indian Ocean, and which are separated by a feeble flow of tropical waters. Icebergs are sometimes met with in these polar waters as high up as the parallel of the fortieth degree of latitude. Now, considering that this tropical flow in mid-ocean is not constant,—that many navigators cross the path assigned to it in the plate without finding their thermometer to indicate any increase of heat in the sea; and considering, therefore, that any unusual flow of polar waters, any sudden and extensive disruption of the ice there, sufficient to cause a rush of waters thence, would have the effect of closing for the time this mid-ocean flow of tropical waters; we are entitled to infer that there is a sort of conflict at times going on in this ocean between its polar and equatorial flows of water. For instance, a rush of waters takes place from the poles toward the equator. The two lobes close, cut off the equatorial flow between them, and crowd the Indian Ocean with polar waters. They press out the overheated waters; hence the great equatorial flow encountered by Captain Grant.

Compari-  
son to  
functions  
of the hu-  
man heart.

Thus this opening between the cold-water lobes appears to hold to the chambers of the Indian Ocean, with their heated waters, the relations which the valves and the ventricles of the human heart hold to the circulation of the blood. The closing of these lobes at certain times prevents regurgitation of the warm waters, and compels them to pass through their appointed channels.

From this point of view, how many new beauties now begin to present themselves in the machinery of the ocean! its great heart not only beating time to the seasons, but palpitating also to the winds and the rains, to the cloud and the sunshine, to day and night.<sup>1</sup> Few persons have ever taken the trouble to compute how much the fall of a single inch of rain over an extensive region in the sea, or how much the change even of two or three degrees of temperature over a few thousand square miles of its surface, tends to disturb its equilibrium, and consequently to cause an aqueous palpitation that is felt from the equator to the poles. Let us illustrate by an example: The surface of the Atlantic Ocean covers an area of about twenty-five millions of square miles. Now, let us take one-fifth of this area, and suppose a fall of rain one inch deep to take place over it. This rain would weigh three hundred and sixty thousand millions of tons; and the salt which, as water, it held in solution in the sea, and which, when that water was taken up as vapour, was left behind to disturb equilibrium, weighed sixteen millions more of tons, or nearly twice as much as all the ships in the world could carry at a cargo each. It might fall in an hour, or it might fall in a day; but, occupy what time it might in falling, this rain is calculated to exert so much force—which is inconceivably great—in disturbing the equilibrium of the ocean. If all the water discharged by the Mississippi River during the year were taken up in one mighty measure, and cast into the ocean at one effort, it would not make a greater disturbance in the equilibrium of the sea than would the fall of rain supposed. Now this is

CHAPTER  
XVI.§ 921  
Reflections.

Great effects produced by apparently slight causes.

Illustration.

Mississippi.

<sup>1</sup> § 864.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
—  
Area of the  
Atlantic.

for but one-fifth of the Atlantic, and the area of the Atlantic is about one-fifth of the sea-area of the world; and the estimated fall of rain was but one inch, whereas the average for the year is<sup>1</sup> sixty inches, but we will assume it for the sea to be no more than thirty inches. In the aggregate, and on an average, then, such a disturbance in the equilibrium of the whole ocean as is here supposed occurs seven hundred and fifty times a year, or at the rate of once in twelve hours. Moreover, when it is recollected that these rains take place now here, now there; that the vapour of which they were formed was taken up at still other places; we shall be enabled to appreciate the better the force and the effect of these pulsations in the sea.

§ 922

Effects of  
diurnal  
changes in  
tempera-  
ture.

Between the hottest hour of the day and the coldest hour of the night there is frequently a change of four degrees in the temperature of the sea.\* Let us, therefore, the more thoroughly to appreciate the throbbings of the sea-heart which take place in consequence of the diurnal changes in its temperature, call in the sunshine, the cloud without rain, with day and night, and their heating and radiating processes. And to make the case as strong as to be true to nature we may, let us again select one-fifth of the Atlantic Ocean for the scene of operation. The day over it is clear, and the sun pours down his rays with their greatest intensity, and raises the temperature two degrees. At night the clouds interpose, and prevent radiation from this fifth; whereas the remaining four-fifths, which are supposed to have been screened by clouds, so as to cut off the heat from the sun

\* *Vide* Admiral Smyth's Memoir of the Mediterranean, p. 125.

<sup>1</sup> § 203.



during the day, are now looking up to the stars in a cloudless sky, and serve to lower the temperature of the surface-waters, by radiation, two degrees. Here, then, is a difference of four degrees, which we will suppose extends only ten feet below the surface. The total and absolute change made in such a mass of sea water, by altering its temperature two degrees, is equivalent to a change in its volume of three hundred and ninety thousand millions of cubic feet.

Do not the clouds, night and day, now present themselves to us in a new light? They are cogs, and rachets, and wheels, in that grand and exquisite machinery which governs the sea, and which, amid all the jarring of the elements, preserves in harmony the exquisite adaptations of the ocean.

It seems to be a physical law, that cold-water fish are more edible than those of warm water. Bearing this fact in mind as we study Plate IX., we see at a glance the places which are most favoured with good fish markets. Both shores of North America, the east coast of China, with the west coasts of Europe and South America, are all washed by cold waters; and therefore we may infer that their markets abound with the most excellent fish. The fisheries of Newfoundland and New England, over which nations have wrangled for centuries, are in the cold water from Davis' Strait. The fisheries of Japan and Eastern China, which almost, if not quite, rival these, are situated also in the cold water.

Neither India, nor the east coasts of Africa and South America, where the warm waters are, are celebrated for their fish.

Three thousand American vessels, it is said, are en-

CHAPTER  
XVI.

Vessels en-  
gaged in  
fisheries.

Map for  
the whales

gaged in the fisheries. If to these we add the Dutch, French, and English, we shall have a grand total, perhaps, of not less than six or eight thousand, of all sizes and flags, engaged in this one pursuit. Of all the industrial pursuits of the sea, however, the whale fishery is the most valuable. Wherefore, in treating of the physical geography of the sea, a map for the whales would be useful.

§ 926 The sperm whale is a warm-water fish. The *right* whale delights in cold water. An immense number of log-books of whalers have been discussed at the National Observatory, with the view of detecting the parts of the ocean in which the whales are to be found at the different seasons of the year. Charts showing the result have been published; they form a part of the series of Maury's Wind and Current Charts.

§ 927 In the course of these investigations, the discovery was made that the torrid zone is, to the right whale, as a sea of fire, through which he cannot pass; that the right whale of the northern hemisphere, and that of the southern, are two different animals; and that the sperm whale has never been known to double the Cape of Good Hope—he doubles Cape Horn.

§ 928 With these remarks, and the explanations given on Plate IX., the parts of the ocean to which the right whale most resorts, and the parts in which the sperm are found, may be seen at a glance.

Conse-  
quences of  
tempera-  
ture in re-  
gard to  
whales.

## CHAPTER XVII.

## STORMS.

Data for Plate V., § 929.—Typhoons, 936.—Monsoons in the China Sea, 937.—Mauritius Hurricanes, 938.—West India ditto, 939.—Jansen on Hurricanes and Cyclones, 940.—Extra-tropical Gales, 950.—The Steamer San Francisco's Gale, 951.—More Rains, Gales, &c., in the North than in the South Atlantic (Plate XIII.), 956.

PLATE V. is constructed from data furnished by the Pilot Charts, as far as they go, that are in process of construction at the National Observatory. For the Pilot Charts, the whole ocean is divided off into "fields" or districts of five degrees square; *i. e.*, five degrees of latitude by five degrees of longitude, as already explained on page xiii. Now in getting out from the log-books materials for showing, in every district of the ocean, and for every month, how navigators have found the winds to blow, it has been assumed that, in whatever part of one of these districts a navigator may be when he records the direction of the wind in his log, from that direction the wind was blowing at that time all over that district; and this is the only assumption that is permitted in the whole course of investigation.

Now, if the navigator will draw, or imagine to be drawn, in any such district, twelve vertical columns for the twelve months, and then sixteen horizontal lines through the same for the sixteen points of the compass,—*i. e.*, for N., N.N.E., N.E., E.N.E., and so on, omitting the *by*-points,—he will have before him a picture of the "Investigating Chart," out of which the "Pilot Charts" are constructed. In this case, the alternate points of the compass only are used, because, when sailing free, the

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
§ 929  
Reference  
to Plate V.  
"Pilot  
Charts."

§ 930  
"Investigating  
Chart" out  
of which  
"Pilot  
Charts"  
were  
formed.

CHAPTER  
XVII.

direction of the wind is seldom given for such points as N. by E., W. by S., &c. Moreover, any attempt, for the present, at greater nicety would be over-refinement; for navigators do not always make allowance for the aberration of the wind; in other words, they do not allow for the apparent change in the direction of the wind caused by the rate at which the vessel may be moving through the water, and the angle which her course makes with the true direction of the wind. Bearing this explanation in mind, the intelligent navigator will have no difficulty in understanding the wind diagram (Plate V.), and in forming a correct opinion as to the degree of credit due to the fidelity with which the prevailing winds of the year are represented on Plate VIII.

## § 931

Explanation of  
"fives and tallies."

As the compiler wades through log-book after log-book, and scores down in column after column, and upon line after line, mark upon mark, he at last finds that, under the month, and from the course upon which he is about to make an entry, he has already made four marks or scores, thus (IIII). The one that he has now to enter will make the fifth; and he "scores and tallies," and so on, until all the abstracts relating to that part of the ocean upon which he is at work have been gone over, and his materials exhausted. These "fives and tallies" are exhibited on Plate V.

## § 932

Reference to Plate V.

Now, with this explanation, it will be seen that in the district marked A (Plate V.), there have been examined the logs of vessels that, giving the direction of the wind for every eight hours, have altogether spent days enough to enable me to record the calms and the prevailing direction of the winds for eight hours, 2144 times: of these, 285 were for the month of September; and of these 285 observations for September the wind is reported as pre-

vailing for as much as eight hours at a time: from N., 3 times; from N.N.E., 1; N.E., 2; E.N.E., 1; E., 0; E.S.E., 1; S.E., 4; S.S.E., 2; S., 25; S.S.W., 45; S.W., 93; W.S.W., 24; W., 47; W.N.W., 17; N.W., 15; N.N.W., 1; Calms, 5;—total, 285 for this month in this district.

CHAPTER  
XVII.

The number expressed in figures denotes the whole number of observations of calms and winds together that are recorded for each month and district.

In C, the wind in May *sets* one-third of the time from west. But in A, which is between the same parallels, the favourite quarter for the same month is from south to south-west, the wind setting one-third of the time for that quarter, and only 10 out of 221 times from the west; or, on the average, it blows from the west only  $1\frac{1}{3}$  day during the month of May.

§ 934  
Wind in  
May.

In B, notice the great "Sun Swing" of the winds in September, indicating that the change from summer to winter, in that region, is sudden and violent; from winter to summer, gentle and gradual.

§ 935  
"Sun  
Swing" of  
winds in  
September

In some districts of the ocean, more than a thousand observations have been discussed for a single month; whereas, with regard to others, not a single record is to be found in any of the numerous log-books at the National Observatory.

Number of  
observa-  
tions made

TYPHOONS.—The China Seas are celebrated for their furious gales of wind, known among seamen as typhoons and white squalls. These seas are included on the plate (VIII.) as within the region of the monsoons of the Indian Ocean. But the monsoons of the China Sea are not five-month monsoons;<sup>1</sup> they do not prevail from the west of south for more than two or three months.

§ 936  
Typhoons  
in China  
Sea.

<sup>1</sup> § 788.

CHAPTER  
XVII.§ 937  
Monsoons  
as ex-  
hibited on  
Plate V.

Plate V. exhibits the monsoons very clearly in a part of this sea. In the square between  $15^{\circ}$  and  $20^{\circ}$  north,  $110^{\circ}$  and  $115^{\circ}$  east, there appears to be a system of three monsoons; that is, one from north-east in October, November, December, and January; one from east in March and April, changing in May; and another from the southward in June, July, and August, changing in September. The great disturber of the atmospheric equilibrium appears to be situated among the arid plains of Asia; their influence extends to the China Seas, and about the changes of the monsoons these awful gales, called typhoons and white squalls, are experienced.

Arid plains  
of Asia.§ 938  
Time of  
Mauritius  
hurricanes  
and  
cyclones  
of Indian  
Ocean.

In like manner, the Mauritius hurricanes, or the cyclones of the Indian Ocean, occur during the unsettled state of the atmospheric equilibrium which takes place at that debatable period during the contest between the trade-wind force and the monsoon force,<sup>1</sup> and which debatable period occurs at the changing of the monsoon, and before either force has completely gained or lost the ascendancy. At this period of the year, the winds, breaking loose from their controlling forces, seem to rage with a fury that would break up the very fountains of the deep.

§ 939  
West and  
East India  
hurricanes

So, too, with the West India hurricanes of the Atlantic. These winds are most apt to occur during the months of August and September. There is, therefore, this remarkable difference between these gales and those of the East Indies: the latter occur about the changing of the monsoons, the former during their height. In August and September, the south-west monsoons of Africa<sup>2</sup> and the south-east monsoons of the West Indies<sup>3</sup> are at their

<sup>1</sup> § 796.<sup>2</sup> § 810.<sup>3</sup> § 737.



height; the agent of one drawing the north-east trade-winds from the Atlantic into the interior of New Mexico and Texas, the agent of the other drawing them into the interior of Africa. Its two forces, pulling in opposite directions, assist now and then to disturb the atmospheric equilibrium to such an extent that the most powerful revulsions in the air are required to restore it.

CHAPTER  
XVII.

“The hurricane season in the North Atlantic Ocean,” § 940 says Jansen, “occurs simultaneously with the African monsoons; and in the same season of the year in which the monsoons prevail in the North Indian Ocean, in the China Sea, and upon the western coast of Central America, all the seas of the northern hemisphere have the hurricane season. On the contrary, the South Indian Ocean has its hurricane season in the opposite season of the year, and when the north-west monsoon prevails in the East Indian Archipelago.

Jansen's  
remarks  
on hurri-  
canes

“In the South Pacific and in the South Atlantic, so far as I know, rotatory storms are never known, and these seas have no monsoons. Such a coincidence of hurricanes with monsoons, and of the hurricane-season with the monsoon-season, is not without signification. It ever gives rise to the thought that the one disturbance causes the other; and however terrible the hurricanes may be to us, however disastrous they may appear, yet we are compelled to acknowledge therein the healthful working of Nature, which is compensating over all and in all. We need not, then, doubt that these revolving storms have a determinate task to perform in the economy of nature—a task which they cannot otherwise fulfil save by rotations; and certainly it is good that they restore in

South  
Pacific  
and South  
Atlantic.

Revolving  
storms.

CHAPTER XVII.  
 — proportion to the terrible power wherewith they are intrusted.

§ 942 “We do not know all the disturbances which are caused by the land in the condition of the atmosphere. ‘The way of the lightning of the thunder’ is to us all unknown. The circulating channels of electricity are as yet hidden in a deep night.

§ 943 “Neither do we know what influence the land and the warm currents in the sea have thereon,—even less than we know what operations are appointed for the hurricanes in the economy of nature; but that they, in their way, have important services to perform, cannot be doubted. The almighty and merciful Wisdom, whom we find universally in all the operations of nature, assures us thereof—is to us a pledge. The fact that the hurricanes prefer to place their feet in warm water, and that in all seas where they prevail warm settled currents are also found, which appear to arise from the disturbance which the solid crust of the earth causes in the regular flowing of the waters of the sea, causes us to suspect that there is a certain relation between the hurricanes and the warm currents; and, finally, that in the economy of nature the hurricanes in the atmosphere and the warm ‘rivers in the sea’ work together to restore the disturbed equilibrium in nature, which can be done in no other way than this, and along the way which they, as it were, mutually agree to follow together. Thus we see the hurricanes beyond the tropics follow the most prevailing current of air along the surface, on one side from the south-west, on the other side from the north-west; just as the Gulf Stream flows to the north and east, and the warm currents of the South

Remarks on the uses of hurricanes

Hurricanes and warm water currents work together.

Indian Ocean to the south and east, and, again, the China current to the north and east. In this we see, again, the universal laws by which all matter is governed: very touching is the simplicity of the divine plan.

“When the hurricanes and the ‘rivers in the sea,’ § 944 upon their way to the poles, have reached the parallel of latitude upon which the effort of the diurnal revolution of the earth upon her axis causes air and water to be forced in a north-easterly or south-easterly direction, then they bow themselves submissively to the law, and go together, often hand in hand, to accomplish their appointed tasks. And now, if we suppose that by the diurnal revolution everything which moves from the equator to this parallel of latitude is bent more gradually to the east, then it is remarkable that the first part of the course of circulating storms often stands perpendicular to these supposed movements of the air, and in the North Atlantic Ocean runs nearly W.N.W.; in the South Indian Ocean, W.S.W.

“Hurricanes are sometimes observed upon the limits § 945 of the African monsoon, and upon the limits of the monsoon of the East Indian Archipelago. In this Archipelago hurricanes or right heavy spouts are seldom seen. However, hurricanes have been observed in the southern hemisphere, between  $88^{\circ}$  and  $90^{\circ}$  east longitude. They are also found in September in  $13^{\circ}$  north latitude and  $29^{\circ}$  west longitude, and in  $16^{\circ} 33'$  north latitude and  $24^{\circ} 20'$  west longitude; the latter also in  $18^{\circ}$  north latitude and  $25^{\circ}$  west longitude, and in  $16^{\circ} 30'$  north latitude and  $26^{\circ} 40'$  west longitude;\* yet not *in* the mon-

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
—

Effect of  
diurnal re-  
volution of  
the earth  
upon its  
axis.

§ 945  
When and  
where hur-  
ricanes  
have been  
observed.

\* Redfield.

CHAPTER XVII. soon—so much is known to me—but right upon its limits; also *in* the equatorial belt which wavers about the monsoon, and which becomes narrower and narrower as it recedes from the equator.

§ 946 “Now, when we remember what is said<sup>1</sup> of the spring changing in the southern hemisphere, which agrees with the autumnal changing in the northern hemisphere, and think of the combat which is then so manifestly waged between the various currents of air and the numerous spouts which arise in the East Indian Archipelago by the aid of small groups of islands, then we shall be less surprised to find a similar effect produced upon the limit of the African monsoon, especially when it pushes the equatorial belt of calms quite over to a portion of the Cape Verd Islands. When we take into account that this belt becomes narrower and narrower as it is removed from the equator; that also the different currents of air, which draw in opposite directions, lie closer to each other; that the south-west and north-west winds approach very near to each other, and that the latter, in August and September, are deflected out of their course by the heights of the Cape Verd Islands;—then not much more is necessary to enable one to comprehend why a wind which, coming from the north-east, and veering by the north around to the north-west, should, as it meets the south-west winds, make a complete revolution, and in so doing form a whirlwind, which would go travelling through the north-east and south-east trade-winds, especially when the moisture and electricity of these air-currents are different, as is generally the case. And seeing also that the north-east trade-wind, as it draws more and more

Combats  
in the air  
consequent  
on the  
changing  
of spring  
and  
autumn.

Cause of  
whirlwind.

<sup>1</sup> § 820.

toward the north, lies to the left of the south-west monsoon, it may be readily conceived why the motion of this whirl should be from the right hand to the left, or contrary to the movements of the hands of a watch.

“ Thus, when upon the limit of the African monsoon a circular motion in the air arises, we may infer, from the situation of the currents of air, and their relation to each other, that the movement will be from the right side to the left. For the same reason, the motion in the southern hemisphere, in the South Indian Ocean, is from the left hand to the right. Near the north pole we find the currents of air just the other way; the south-east, or the south-west turned back south-east, is to the left of the north-west monsoon. Therefore, when a circular motion there takes place upon the limit of the monsoon, it must go from the left hand to the right, or with the hands of a watch.

“ The want of knowledge prevents me from venturing to penetrate into the ‘ hidden chambers out of which the whirlwind comes,’ for the circulation of the atmosphere must, like the revolutions of human society, bring all the natural forces into commotion, and they, in the strife which they wage, become renewed and strengthened to perform their appointed work for the universal welfare, and pass away like the all-destroying meteor, after having accomplished its terror-awaking mission. The strife—if, indeed, I may call the opposite workings in nature strife—is violent, terrible. The monsoon has attained its greatest strength, the disturbance in the circulation of the atmosphere has reached its utmost limits, the vapour

CHAPTER  
XVII.

§ 947

Circular motions of the winds in various circumstances.

§ 948

Impossibility of arriving at definite conclusions.

CHAPTER  
XVII.

and the heavy clouds act in harmony no longer, and with wild violence the uproar, nursed in silence, breaks forth. 'The way for the lightning of the thunder' appears to be broken up.

Hurricane in  
South  
Indian  
Ocean.

§ 949 "In the South Indian Ocean ( $25^{\circ}$  south latitude), a hurricane, accompanied by hail, was observed,\* by which several of the crew were made blind, others had their faces cut open, and those who were in the rigging had their clothes torn off from them. The master of the ship compares the sea 'to a hilly landscape in winter, covered with snow.' Does it not appear as if the 'treasures of the hail' were opened, which were 'reserved against the time of trouble, against the day of battle and war?'"†

Furious  
gales in  
the extra-  
tropical  
regions.

Wreck.

§ 950 EXTRA-TROPICAL GALES.—In the extra-tropical regions of each hemisphere furious gales of wind also occur. One of these, remarkable for its violent effects, was encountered on the 24th of December 1853, about three hundred miles from Sandy Hook, latitude  $39^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $70^{\circ}$  west, by the San Francisco steam-ship.<sup>1</sup> That ship was made a complete wreck in a few moments, and she was abandoned by the survivors, after incredible hardships, exertions, and sufferings. Some months after this disaster, I received by the California mail the abstract log of the fine clipper-ship Eagle Wing (Ebenezer H. Linnell), from Boston to San Francisco. She encountered the ill-fated steamer's gale, and thus describes it:—

Extract  
from log of  
the "Eagle  
Wing."

§ 951 "December 24, 1853.—Latitude  $39^{\circ} 15'$  north, longitude  $62^{\circ} 32'$  west. First part threatening weather; short-

\* The Rhijin, Captain Brandligt.

† Natuurkundige Beschryving der Zeeën, door M. F. Maury, LL.D., Luitenant der Nord Amerikaansche Marine, vertaald door M. H. Jansen, Luitenant ter Zee. Dordrecht, P. K. Braat, 1855.



ened sail. At 4 P.M. close-reefed the top-sails and furled the courses. At 8 P.M. took in fore and mizzen top-sails; hove to under close-reefed main top-sail and spencer, the ship lying with her lee rail under water, nearly on her beam-ends. At 1 30 A.M. the fore and main top-gallant-masts went over the side, it blowing a perfect hurricane. At 8 A.M. moderated; a sea took away jib-boom and bowsprit-cap. In my thirty-one years' experience at sea, I have never seen a typhoon or hurricane so severe. Lost two men overboard; saved one. Stove sky-light, broke my barometer, &c., &c."

Severe gales in this part of the Atlantic—*i. e.*, on the polar side of the calm belt of Cancer—rarely occur during the months of June, July, August, and September. This appears to be the time when the fiends of the storm are most busily at work in the West Indies. During the remainder of the year, these extra-tropical gales, for the most part, come from the north-west; but the winter is the most famous season for these gales. That is the time when the Gulf Stream has brought the heat of summer, and placed it<sup>1</sup> in closest proximity to the extremest cold of the north; and there would, therefore, it would seem, be a conflict between these extremes; consequently, great disturbances in the air, and a violent rush from the cold to the warm.

In like manner, the gales that most prevail in the extra-tropics of the southern hemisphere come from the pole and the west,—*i. e.*, south-west.

Storm and Rain Charts for the Atlantic Ocean have already been published by the Observatory, and others for the whole seas are in process of construction. The

§ 952

Time when  
severe  
gales sel-  
dom occur  
in particu-  
lar part of  
Atlantic.

§ 953

§ 954

Storm and  
Rain  
Charts for  
the Atlan-  
tic.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 84.

CHAPTER XVII. — object of such charts is to show the directions and relative frequency of gales in all parts of the sea; the relative frequency of calms, fogs, rain, thunder, and lightning.

§ 955 These charts are very instructive. They show that that half of the atmospherical coating of the earth which covers the northern hemisphere—if we may take as a type of the whole what occurs on either side of the equator in the Atlantic Ocean—is in a much less stable condition than that which covers the southern.

What these charts show.

§ 956 There are, as a rule, more rains, more gales of wind, more calms, more fogs, and more thunder and lightning, in the North than in the South Atlantic. These phenomena, at equal distances from the equator north and south, and for every 5° of latitude, have been compared;<sup>1</sup>—that is, all the storms, calms, rains, &c., between the parallels of 25° and 30° north, for instance, have been compared with the same between the parallels of 25° and 30° south; those for January north being compared with those for January south, and so on for each month, between all the five degree (5°, 10°, 15°, &c.) parallels from the equator to 60°, north and south.

Rain storms and calms in North and South Atlantic.

§ 957 In some places here and there, and in some months now and then, there may be more gales, as in the neighbourhood of Cape Horn, in the South than in the North Atlantic; but such cases constitute the exceptions, they are by no means the rule. Cape Horn in the South Atlantic, and the Gulf Stream in the North, furnish seats for agents which are very marked in their workings. This Plate brings out the fact that, as a rule, rains and calms go together in the tropics; but beyond, rains and gales are more apt to occur at the same time, or to follow each other.

Exceptional cases.

<sup>1</sup> Plate XIII.

With regard to the disturbing agents which are let loose from Cape Horn and the Gulf Stream upon the atmosphere, I beg leave to quote a remark of Jansen's:—

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
—

“In contemplating Nature in her universal aspect, in which all is so perfectly ordered that all the parts with mutual kindness support each other by the complaisant interposition of air and water, we cannot possibly reject the idea of unanimity of action; and we may conjecture that when, impeded or prevented by external local causes, their bond of union is broken, then are observed the terrible efforts of Nature, by which its almighty power is shown in combating that disturbance of which we know so little, and in renewing and perfecting those broken bonds. Forces which are otherwise working beyond the reach of human vision then come forth in the combat for the restoration of the disturbed equilibrium. They cause the earth to tremble to her centre, and man to stand anxious and dismayed. Yet Omniscience watches, a Providence cares, and the Almighty is love. The delightful land that is given us as a dwelling-place is, at the same time, the cause of all the disturbances in the air and in the ocean, whence the hurricanes and the ‘rivers in the sea’ arise, which in turn are for the universal good; where they are not found, we may be certain that the currents of the air and of the water work undisturbed, harmoniously together. And is not this the case in the south-east trade-wind of the South Atlantic Ocean?”

§ 958

Jansen's  
remarks  
on dis-  
turbing  
agents let  
loose upon  
the atmo-  
sphere.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## ROUTES.

How Passages have been Shortened, § 959.—How closely Vessels follow each other's Track, 961.—The Archer and the Flying Cloud, 962. The great Race-course upon the Ocean, 964.—Description of a Ship-race, 966.—Present Knowledge of the Winds enables the Navigator to compute his Detour, 991.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

## § 959

The great aim and end of the author's labours and researches.

THE principal routes across the ocean are exhibited on Plate VIII. ; the great end and aim of all this labour and research are in these, and consist in the shortening of passages—the improvement of navigation. Other interests and other objects are promoted thereby, but these last, in the mind of a practical people, who, by their habits of thought and modes of action, mark the age in which we live as eminently utilitarian, do not stand out in relief half so grand and imposing as do those achievements by which the distant isles and marts of the sea have been lifted up, as it were, and brought closer together, for the convenience of commerce, by many days' sail.

## § 960

Advantages of a knowledge of winds and currents.

We have been told in the foregoing pages how the winds blow and the currents flow in all parts of the ocean. These control the mariner in his course ; and to know how to steer his ship on this or that voyage so as always to make the most of them, is the perfection of navigation. The figures representing the vessels are so marked as to show whether the prevailing direction of the wind be adverse or fair.

## § 961

Popular error.

When one looks seaward from the shore, and sees a ship disappear in the horizon, as she gains an offing on a voyage to India, or the Antipodes perhaps, the common

idea is that she is bound over a trackless waste, and the chances of another ship, sailing with the same destination the next day, or the next week, coming up and speaking with her on the "pathless ocean," would, to most minds, seem slender indeed. Yet the truth is, the winds and the currents are now becoming to be so well understood, that the navigator, like the backwoodsman in the wilderness, is enabled literally "to blaze his way" across the ocean; not indeed upon trees, as in the wilderness, but upon the wings of the wind. The results of scientific inquiry have so taught him how to use these invisible couriers, that they, with the calm belts of the air, serve as sign-boards to indicate to him the turnings, and forks, and crossings by the way.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

Winds and currents are guides to the mariner.

Let a ship sail from New York to California, and the next week let a faster one follow after: they will cross each other's path many times, and are almost sure to see each other by the way. Thus a case in point happens to be before me. It is the case of the Archer and the Flying Cloud on a recent voyage to California. They are both fine clipper ships, ably commanded. But it was not until the ninth day after the Archer had sailed from New York that the Flying Cloud put to sea, California-bound also. She was running against time, and so was the Archer, but without reference to each other. The Archer, with Wind and Current Charts in hand, went blazing her way across the calms of Cancer, and along the new route, down through the north-east trades to the equator; the Cloud followed after, crossing the equator upon the trail of Thomas of the Archer. Off Cape Horn she came up with him, spoke him, handed him the latest New York dates, and invited him to dine

§ 962

Case of two vessels bound for California.

They meet off Cape Horn.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

on board the Cloud; "which invitation," says he of the Archer, "I was reluctantly compelled to decline."

§ 963 The Flying Cloud finally ranged ahead, made her adieu, and disappeared among the clouds that lowered upon the western horizon, being destined to reach her port a week or more in advance of her Cape Horn consort. Though sighting no land from the time of their separation until they gained the offing of San Francisco—some six or eight thousand miles off—the tracks of the two vessels were so nearly the same, that, being projected on Plate IX., they would appear almost as one.

§ 964 This is the great race-course of the ocean; it is fifteen thousand miles in length. Some of the most glorious trials of speed and of prowess that the world ever witnessed, among ships that "walk the waters," have taken place over it. Here the modern clipper ship—the noblest work that has ever come from the hands of man—has been sent, guided by the lights of science, to contend with the elements, to outstrip steam, and astonish the world.

§ 965 The most celebrated and famous ship-race that has ever been run came off upon this course: it was in the autumn of 1852, when navigators were beginning fully to reap the benefits of these researches with regard to the winds and currents, and other facts connected with the physical geography of the sea, that four splendid new clipper ships put to sea from New York, bound for California. They were ably commanded, and as they passed the bar at Sandy Hook, one by one, and at various intervals of time, they presented really a most magnificent spectacle. The names of these noble ships and their master were, —the Wild Pigeon, Captain Putnam; the John Gilpin,

Result of  
the voy-  
ages.

The great  
race-  
course of  
the ocean.

Celebrated  
ship-race  
of 1852.



Captain Doane—alas! now no more; the Flying Fish, Captain Nickels; and the Trade Wind, Captain Webber. Like steeds that know their riders, they were handled with the most exquisite skill and judgment, and in such hands they bounded out upon the “glad waters” most gracefully. Each being put upon her mettle from the start, was driven, under the seaman’s whip and spur, at full speed over a course that it would take them three long months to run.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

The Wild Pigeon sailed October 12; the John Gilpin, October 29; the Flying Fish, November 1; and the Trade Wind, November 14. It was the season for the best passages. Each one was provided with the *Wind and Current Charts*; each one had evidently studied them attentively; and each one was resolved to make the most of them, and do his best. All ran against time; but the John Gilpin and the Flying Fish for the whole course, and the Wild Pigeon for part of it, ran neck and neck, the one against the other, and each against all. It was a sweepstake with these ships around Cape Horn, and through both hemispheres.

§ 966  
The vessels  
set sail.

Wild Pigeon led the other two out of New York, the one by seventeen, the other by twenty days. But luck and chances of the winds seem to have been against her from the start. As soon as she had taken her departure, she fell into a streak of baffling winds, and then into a gale, which she fought against and contended with for a week, making but little progress the while; she then had a time of it in crossing the horse latitudes. After having been nineteen days out, she had logged no less than thirteen of them as days of calms and baffling winds;

§ 967  
The start  
of the  
“Wild  
Pigeon.”

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

these had brought her no farther on her way than the parallel of  $26^{\circ}$  north in the Atlantic. Thence she had a fine run to the equator, crossing it between  $33^{\circ}$  and  $34^{\circ}$  west, the thirty-second day out. She was unavoidably forced to cross it so far west; for only two days before, she crossed  $5^{\circ}$  north in  $30^{\circ}$ —an excellent position.

§ 968

Testimony  
of Captain  
Pollard.

In proof that the Pigeon had accomplished all that skill could do, and the chances against her would permit, we have the testimony of the barque Hazard, Captain Pollard. This vessel, being bound to Rio at the same time, followed close after the Pigeon. The Hazard is an old hand with the charts; she had already made six voyages to Rio, with them for her guide. This was the longest of the six, the mean of which was twenty-six and a half days. She crossed the line this time in  $34^{\circ} 30'$ , also by compulsion, having crossed  $5^{\circ}$  north in  $31^{\circ}$ . But, the fourth day after crossing the equator, she was clear of Cape St. Roque, while the Pigeon cleared it in three days.\*

§ 969

Better for-  
tune of the  
other ves-  
sels.

So far, therefore, chances had turned up against the Pigeon, in spite of the skill displayed by Putnam as a navigator, for the Gilpin and the Fish came booming along, not under better management, indeed, but with a better run of luck and fairer courses before them. In this stretch they gained upon her—the Gilpin seven and the Fish ten days; so that now the abstract logs show the Pigeon to be but ten days ahead.

§ 970

Course  
the of  
"Fish."

Evidently the Fish was most confident that she had the heels of her competitors; she felt her strength, and was proud of it; she was most anxious for a quick run,

---

\* According to the received opinion, this was impossible.

and eager withal for a trial. She dashed down southwardly from Sandy Hook, looking occasionally at the charts; but feeling strong in her sweep of wing, and trusting confidently in the judgment of her master, she kept, on the average, two hundred miles to leeward of the right track. Rejoicing in her many noble and fine qualities, she crowded on her canvas to its utmost stretch, trusting quite as much to her heels as to the charts, and performed the extraordinary feat of crossing, the sixteenth day out from New York, the parallel of 5° north.

The next day she was well south of 4° north, and in § 971 the doldrums, longitude 34° west.

Now her heels became paralyzed, for Fortune seems to have deserted her a while,—at least her master, as the winds failed him, feared so; they gave him his motive power; they were fickle, and he was helplessly baffled by them. The bugbear of a north-west current off Cape St. Roque<sup>1</sup> began to loom up in his imagination, and to look alarming; then the dread of falling to leeward came upon him; chances and luck seemed to conspire against him, and the mere possibility of finding his fine ship back-strapped filled the mind of Nickels with evil forebodings, and shook his faith in his guide. He doubted the charts, and committed *the* mistake of the passage.

Fortune  
seems to  
fail the  
"Fish."

The *Sailing Directions* had cautioned the navigator, § 972 again and again, not to attempt to fan along to the eastward in the equatorial doldrums; for, by so doing, he would himself engage in a fruitless strife with baffling airs, sometimes re-enforced in their weakness by westerly currents. But the winds had failed, and so too, the smart captain of the Flying Fish evidently thought, had

The cap-  
tain's  
great mis-  
take.

<sup>1</sup> § 470.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

the *Sailing Directions*. They advise the navigator, in all such cases, to dash right across this calm streak, stand boldly on, take advantage of slants in the wind, and, by this device, make easting enough to clear the land. So, forgetting that the charts are founded on the experience of great numbers who had gone before him, Nickels, being tempted, turned a deaf ear to the caution, and flung away three whole days, and more, of most precious time, dallying in the doldrums.

Time lost.

He spent four days about the parallel of  $3^{\circ}$  north, and his ship left the doldrums, after this waste of time, nearly upon the same meridian at which she entered them.

§ 973

She was still in  $34^{\circ}$ , the current keeping her back just as fast as she could fan east. After so great a loss, her very clever master, doubting his own judgment, became sensible of his error. Leaving the spell-bound calms behind him, where he had undergone such trials, he wrote in his log as follows: "I now regret that, after making so fine a run to  $5^{\circ}$  north, I did not dash on, and work my way to windward to the northward of St. Roque, as I have experienced little or no westerly set since passing the equator, while three or four days have been lost in working to the eastward, between the latitude of  $5^{\circ}$  and  $3^{\circ}$  north, against a strong westerly set;" and he might have added, "with little or no wind."

The captain sees and acknowledges his error.

§ 974

In three days after this he was clear of St. Roque. Just five days before him, the Hazard had passed exactly in the same place, and gained two days on the Fish, by cutting straight across the doldrums, as the *Sailing Directions* advised him to do.

The "Hazard."

The Wild Pigeon, crossing the equator also in 33°, had passed along there ten days before, as did also the Trade Wind twelve days after. The latter also crossed the line to the west of 34°, and in four days after had cleared St. Roque.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.  
§ 975  
The "Wild  
Pigeon."

But, notwithstanding this loss of three days by the Fish, who so regretted it, and who afterward so handsomely retrieved it, she found herself, on the 24th of November, alongside of the Gilpin, her competitor. They were then both on the parallel of 5° south, the Gilpin being thirty-seven miles to the eastward, and of course in a better position, for the Fish had yet to take advantage of slants, and stand off shore to clear the land. They had not seen each other.

§ 976  
The  
"Fish"  
overhauls  
the "Gil-  
pin."

The charts showed the Gilpin now to be in the best position, and the subsequent events proved the charts to be right, for thence to 53° south the Gilpin gained on the Pigeon two days, and the Pigeon on the Fish one.

§ 977  
Evidence  
of the  
charts.

By dashing through the Straits of Le Maire, the Fish gained three days on the Gilpin; but here Fortune again deserted the Pigeon, or rather the winds turned against her; for as she appeared upon the parallel of Cape Horn, and was about to double round, a westerly gale struck her "in the teeth," and kept her at bay for ten days, making little or no way, except alternately fighting in a calm or buffeting with a gale, while her pursuers were coming up, "hand over fist," with fine winds and flowing sheets.

§ 978  
Bad for-  
tune of the  
"Wild  
Pigeon."

They finally overtook her, bringing along with them propitious gales, when all three swept past the Cape, and

§ 979

CHAPTER  
XVIII.They  
double  
Cape Horn

crossed the parallel of  $51^{\circ}$  south on the other side of the "Horn," the Fish and the Pigeon one day each ahead of the Gilpin.

The Pigeon was now, according to the charts, in the best position, the Gilpin next, and the Fish last; but all were doing well.

Prevailling  
winds.

§ 980 From this parallel to the south-east trades of the Pacific, the prevailing winds are from the north-west. The position of the Fish, therefore, did not seem as good as the others, because she did not have the sea-room in case of an obstinate north-west gale.

Position of  
the vessels  
on 30th  
December.

§ 981 But the winds favoured her. On the 30th of December the three ships crossed the parallel of  $35^{\circ}$  south, the Fish recognising the Pigeon; the Pigeon saw only a "clipper ship," for she could not conceive how the ship in sight could possibly be the Flying Fish, as that vessel was not to leave New York for some three weeks after she did: the Gilpin was only thirty or forty miles off at the same time.

Excite-  
ment of  
the race.

§ 982 The race was now wing and wing, and had become exciting. With fair winds and an open sea, the competitors had now a clear stretch to the equator of two thousand five hundred miles before them.

§ 983 The Flying Fish led the way, the Wild Pigeon pressing her hard, and both dropping the Gilpin quite rapidly, who was edging off to the westward.

The two foremost reached the equator on the 13th of January, the Fish leading just twenty-five miles in latitude, and crossing in  $112^{\circ} 17'$ ;\* the Pigeon forty miles

---

\* Twenty-five days after that the Trade Wind clipper came along, crossed in  $112^{\circ}$ , and had a passage of sixteen days thence into San Francisco.



farther to the east. At this time the John Gilpin had dropped two hundred and sixty miles astern, and had sagged off several degrees to the westward.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

Here Putnam, of the Pigeon, again displayed his tact as a navigator, and again the fickle winds deceived him. The belt of north-east trades had yet to be passed: it was winter: and, by crossing where she did, she would have an opportunity of making a fair wind of them, without being much to the west of her port when she should lose them. Moreover, it was exactly one year since she had passed this way before: she then crossed in 109°, and had a capital run thence of seventeen days to San Francisco.

§ 984

Tact of the  
commander of the  
"Pigeon."

Why should she not cross here again? She saw that the fourth edition of *Sailing Directions*, which she had on board, did not discountenance it, and her own experience approved it. Could she have imagined that, in consequence of this difference of forty miles in the crossing of the equator, and of the two hours' time behind her competitor, she would fall into a streak of wind which would enable the Fish to lead her into port one whole week? Certainly it was nothing but what sailors call "a streak of ill luck" that could have made such a difference.

§ 985

Ill luck  
of the  
"Pigeon."

But by this time John Gilpin had got his mettle up again. He crossed the line in 116°,—exactly two days after the other two,—and made the glorious run of fifteen days thence to the pilot grounds of San Francisco.

§ 986

Run of the  
John "Gil-  
pin."

Thus end the abstract logs of this exciting race and these remarkable passages:—

The Flying Fish beat. She made the passage in 92 § 987

CHAPTER  
XVIII.

The "Flying Fish" wins the race.

days and 4 hours from port to anchor; the Gilpin in 93 days and 20 hours from port to pilot;\* the Wild Pigeon had, 118. The Trade Wind followed, with 102 days, having taken fire and burned for eight hours on the way.

§ 988 The result of this race may be taken as an illustration as to how well navigators are now brought to understand the winds and the currents of the sea.

§ 989 Here are three ships sailing on different days, bound over a trackless waste of ocean for some fifteen thousand miles or more, and depending alone on the fickle winds of heaven, as they are called, to waft them along; yet, like travellers on the land bound upon the same journey, they pass and repass, fall in with and recognise each other by the way; and what, perhaps, is still more remarkable, is the fact, that these ships should each, throughout that great distance, and under the wonderful vicissitudes of climates, winds, and currents, which they encountered, have been so skilfully navigated, that, in looking back at their management, now that what is past is before me, I do not find a single occasion, except the one already mentioned, on which they could have been better handled.

§ 990 There is another circumstance which is worthy of notice in this connection, as illustrative of the accuracy of the knowledge which these investigations afford concerning the force, set, and direction both of winds and currents, and it is this:—

§ 991 I had computed the detour which these vessels would have to make, on account of adverse winds, between New York and their place of crossing the equator. The

Author's computation borne out by facts.

---

\* The abstract log of the Gilpin is silent after the pilot came on board.

whole distance, including detour, to be sailed to reach this crossing at that season of the year, was, according to calculation, 4115 miles. The Gilpin and the Hazard only kept an account of the distance actually sailed,—the former reaching the equator after sailing 4099 miles, the latter 4077; thus accomplishing that part of the voyage by sailing, the one within thirty-eight, the other within sixteen miles of the detour which calculation showed they would be compelled to make on account of head-winds. With his way blazed through the forest, the most experienced backwoodsman would have to make a detour greater than this on account of floods in the rivers. Am I far wrong, therefore, when I say that the present state of our knowledge, with regard to the physical geography of the sea, has enabled the navigator to blaze his way among the winds and currents of the sea, and so mark his path that others, using his signs as finger-boards, may follow in the same track?

Result of  
our pre-  
sent know-  
ledge of  
physical  
geography  
of the sea.

## CHAPTER XIX.

## BRUSSELS CONFERENCE, ETC.

Brussels Conference, § 996.—How Navigators may obtain a Set of the Maury Charts, 997.—The Abstract Log, 998.

CHAPTER  
XIX.

§ 992  
Author's  
remarks  
on this  
work.

I HAVE, I am aware, not done more in this little book than given only a table or two of contents from the interesting volume which the physical geography of the sea is destined some day to open up to us. The subject is a comprehensive one: there is room for more labourers, and help is wanted.

Nations, no less than individuals; “stay-at-home travellers,” as well as those who “go down to the sea in ships,” are concerned in the successful prosecution of the labours we have in hand.

We are now about to turn over a new leaf in navigation, on which we may confidently expect to see recorded much information that will tend to lessen the dangers of the sea, and to shorten the passages of vessels trading upon it.

§ 993

A new  
chapter in  
the vol-  
ume of  
Nature.

We are about to open in the volume of Nature a new chapter, under the head of MARINE METEOROLOGY. In it are written the laws that govern those agents which “the winds and the sea obey.” In the true interpretation of these laws, and the correct reading of this chapter, the planter as well as the merchant, the husbandman as well as the mariner, and states as well as individuals, are concerned. All have a deep interest in these laws; for

with the hygrometrical conditions of the atmosphere the well-being of plants and animals is involved. The health of the invalid is often dependent upon a dry or a damp atmosphere, a cold blast or a warm wind.

CHAPTER  
XIX.  
—

The atmosphere pumps up our rivers from the sea, and transports them through the clouds to their sources among the hills; and upon the regularity with which this machine, whose motions, parts, and offices, we now wish to study, lets down that moisture, and the seasonable supply of rain which it furnishes to each region of country, to every planter, and upon all cultivated fields, depend the fruitfulness of this country, the sterility of that.

§ 994  
Effect of  
the atmo-  
sphere on  
rivers.

The principal maritime nations, therefore, have done well by agreeing to unite upon one plan of observation, and to co-operate with their ships upon the high seas with the view of finding out all that patient research, systematic, laborious investigation, may reveal to us concerning the winds and the waves; and philosophical travellers, and every sailor that has a ship under his foot, may do even better by joining in this system.

§ 995  
The mari-  
time na-  
tions have  
agreed to  
unite in  
one plan  
of observa-  
tion.

By the recommendations of the Brussels Conference, every one who uses the sea is commanded or invited to make certain observations; or, in other words, to propound certain queries to Nature, and to give us a faithful statement of the replies she may make.

§ 996  
Recom-  
mendation  
of the  
Brussels  
Confer-  
ence.

Now, unless we have accurate instruments, instruments that will themselves tell the truth, it is evident that we cannot get at the real meaning of the answers that Nature may give us.

Instru-  
ments.

An incorrect observation is not only useless of itself, but, when it passes undetected among others that are

CHAPTER  
XIX.

correct, it becomes worse than useless; nay, it is mischievous there, for it vitiates results that are accurate, places before us wrong premises, and thus renders the good of no value.

§ 997 Those ship-masters who, entering this field as fellow-labourers, will co-operate in the mode and manner recommended by the Brussels Conference, and keep, voyage after voyage, and as long as required, a journal of observations and results according to a prescribed form—and which form is annexed, under the title of Abstract Log—are entitled, by sending the same, at the end of the voyage, to the Superintendent of the National Observatory, to a copy of my Sailing Directions, and such sheets of the charts as relate to the cruising-ground of the co-operator.

§ 998 There are two forms of abstract logs: one, the more elaborate, for men-of-war; the other for merchantmen. The observations called for by the latter are a *minimum*, the least which will entitle the co-operator to claim the proffered bounty. It must give, *at least*, the latitude and longitude of the ship daily; the height of the barometer, and the readings of both the air and the water thermometer, *at least* once a day; the direction and force of the wind three times a-day—first, middle, and latter part—at the hours eight P.M., four A.M., and noon; the variation of the compass occasionally; and the set of the current whenever encountered. These observations, to be worth having, must be accurately made; and as every thermometer and every barometer has its sources of error, consequently every ship-master who undertakes hereafter to co-operate with us, and keep an abstract log, should have his barometer and thermometer accurately compared

Ship-masters who co-operate entitled to a copy of Sailing Directions

Two forms of abstract logs.

Observations must be accurate.



with standard instruments, the errors of which have been accurately determined. CHAPTER  
XIX.  
—

These errors the master should enter in the log. The instruments should be numbered, and he should keep the log as to show what instrument is in use. For instance, a master goes to sea with thermometers Nos. 4719, 1, 12, &c., their errors having been ascertained and entered on the blank page for the purpose in the abstract log. He first uses No. 12. Let it be so stated in the column of remarks, when the first observation is recorded, thus: Thermometer No. 12. During the voyage, No. 12 gets broken, or for some reason is laid aside, and another, say 4719, is brought into use. So state when the first observation with it is recorded, and quote in the column of remarks the errors both of No. 12 and 4719. Now with such a statement of errors given in the log for each of the instruments, according to the number, the observations may be properly corrected when they come up here for discussion. § 999  
How the  
abstract  
log ought  
to be kept.

It is rare to find a barometer or a thermometer that has no error, as it is to find a chronometer without error. A good thermometer, the error of which the maker should guarantee not to exceed in any part of the scale one degree, will cost, in the United States, not less than two dollars, perhaps two and a half dollars. § 1000  
Instru-  
ments  
rarely  
without  
error.

The errors of thermometers sometimes are owing to inequalities in the bore of the tube, sometimes to errors of division on the scale, &c. Therefore, in comparing thermometers with a standard, they should be compared, at least, for every degree between melting ice and blood heat. § 1001  
How ther-  
mometers  
ought to  
be com-  
pared.



## CHAPTER XX.

FORCE OF THE TRADE-WINDS OF THE SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE.  
—PECULIARITIES IN ITS ATMOSPHERIC CIRCULATION.

The spirit in which the Researches touching the Physics of the Sea have been conducted, § 1002.—Reasons for supposing Crossings of the Air in the Calm Belts, 1003.—The “Brave West Winds” of the Southern Hemisphere; their Strength and Regularity, 1004.—Counter-trades, 1005.—Measuring the Strength of the Trade-winds, 1006.—The S.E. stronger than the N.E. Trade-winds, 1007.—Waves, 1008.—New Facts in Meteorology, 1009.—Calms and Gales on opposite Sides of the Equator compared, 1010.—The Propelling Power of the Winds of the Southern Hemisphere; whence derived, 1011.—Why do the Counter-trades blow toward the Poles? 1012.—Precipitation between the Parallels of 55° and 60° N. and S. compared, 1013.—A heavy Rain-fall, 1014.—The Counter-trades of the Southern Hemisphere vapour-bearing Winds, 1015.—The latent Heat of Vapour, 1016.—Its Amount, 1017.—Icebergs, their Offices, &c., 1018.—The Physical Features of the Antarctic Continent, 1019.—Precipitation the Cause of the Low Barometer in High Southern Latitudes, 1020.—A Perpetual Cyclone, 1021.—Conclusion, 1022.—Dr. Jilek's Description of the Antarctic Regions, 1023.

WHENEVER, in the course of my investigations touching CHAPTER  
the physics of sea and air, new facts have been elicited, I XX.  
have, if they appeared consistent enough to be suggestive, § 1002  
never hesitated to follow them up with suggestions, espe- Hypothe-  
cially if hypothesis seemed to be called for. The prin- sis ought  
ciple by which I have sought to be governed is this: to be  
fairly to weigh the facts under discussion, and then to offer founded  
in explanation that hypothesis which would apparently on facts.  
best reconcile them. In case I could not reconcile all by  
any one supposition, the preference has been given to that  
hypothesis which would reconcile the greatest number.  
Then, as additional facts were developed, the hypothesis  
was, if necessary, discarded or amended, as the new lights  
seemed to require.

CHAPTER  
XX.

Spirit in  
which in-  
vestiga-  
tion  
should be  
conducted.

As an investigator in the particular field to which much of my labour is directed, I do not consider that I should content myself by merely stating observations and facts. It is the business of the investigator to let those who labour with him have the benefit of his thoughts and conclusions as well as a fair statement of his facts. Such thoughts, though they be founded in misapprehension, rarely fail to help the cause of progress and of truth; for, though wrong in themselves, they impart interest to the subject, set others to thinking, and often suggest what is right. Moreover, by such a course discussion is encouraged; and scientific discussion, when philosophically directed and properly conducted, is always profitable.

Crossings  
of air at  
the calm  
belts

It was in this spirit that this work has, from its commencement, been conducted, and it was in this spirit that, in treating of the general circulation of the atmosphere, the crossings at the calm belts (chap. vi.), were suggested. Take, as an illustration of this crossing, the calm belt of Capricorn. Near this tropic there is a band encircling the earth, from which the wind on one side is perpetually blowing toward the Equator, and on the other almost as perpetually blowing toward the Pole. These winds are on the surface; and to supply air for such winds there must be a regular influx—a pouring in—at the top of this calm belt. As the surface currents carry away this air both toward the north and the south, it must return by counter currents both from the north and the south to keep up the supply. These counter currents are admitted to be upper currents. The same in-pouring and out-flowing take place at the calm belt of the Equator and the calm belt of Cancer, only at the Equator the in-pouring currents are at the surface of the earth, while at the

two tropical calm belts they are in the regions of the upper air.

In consequence of diurnal rotation these currents, as they come from toward the Pole and approach the Equator, whether as upper or as surface currents, have much easting in them ; and, in like manner, they acquire westing as they return toward the Poles.

Effect of diurnal rotation on the air currents.

Arrived with my investigations at this stage in the construction of a theory, a question of this sort arose : Does the air which is poured into these calm belts from the north, for instance, return to the north as it flows out, or does it keep on its circuit toward the south ?

There seemed to be reasons for supposing that the air which enters the calm belts from the north flows out toward the south,<sup>1</sup> and *vice versa* ; consequently, it was held that the construction of the atmospherical machinery is such as to require a crossing of air in those calm belts.

Reasons for supposing crossings of the air in the calm belts.

The circumstances and considerations which seemed to be in favour of this conjecture are there stated in detail, but briefly they are these :—

§ 1003

1st. Opposite seasons in the hemispheres : The identity of atmospherical constituents in all parts of the earth, notwithstanding the unequal distribution over its surface, both as to place, numbers, and kind, of the agents which corrupt and of those which purify the air. This identity of constituents seemed to favour the idea of a general and regular intermingling ; nay, the principles of adjustment which obtain in that exquisite system of compensations which is displayed in the workings of the physical machinery of our planet, seem to call for such regular and

1st. Opposite seasons in the hemispheres.

<sup>1</sup> See chapter vi.

active intermingling of the fluid covering, both aerial and aqueous, of the earth as would keep each element pure and make it homogeneous. Were it not so, we know of physical agents which, in process of time, would make both the air and the water of the two hemispheres quite different those of the one from those of the other. Consequently, if the atmosphere of one hemisphere were to become different from that of the other, the air of the north would not be suited to the flora or the fauna of the southern hemisphere, and conversely.

2d. Aqueous area of southern hemisphere greater than that of northern.

2d. The aqueous area of the southern hemisphere is much greater than that of the northern. But, notwithstanding the evaporating surface of the former so much exceeds that of the latter, the amount of precipitation upon the land is very much greater in the one that exposes the smallest sea surface or source of vapour.

This circumstance had induced meteorologists, in treating of the exquisite workmanship displayed in the atmospheric machinery that surrounds our planet, to liken the southern hemisphere to the boiler, the northern to the condenser of the steam-engine. How, then, without a crossing of the winds at the calm places, could the vapour be transported from one side of the Equator to the other?

3d. The sea water of the southern hemisphere heavier than that of the northern.

3d. Another link in this chain of circumstantial evidence suggesting a crossing, is in the fact that the sea water of the southern hemisphere is, parallel for parallel, specifically heavier than sea-water of the northern hemisphere.

As a rule, parallel for parallel, the former is the cooler, but at the same temperature it is specifically heavier, and, therefore, salter. That the waters of trans-equatorial seas are salter had been pointed out by Daubeney,



Dove, *et al.* But, with a view of determining by actual measurement a value for the difference of saltness, I procured from Captain John Rodgers, of the North Pacific Surveying Expedition, a series of hydrometrical and thermal observations, for every degree of latitude, on a voyage in the United States ship "Vincennes," from 71° north down through Behring's Strait, around Cape Horn in 57° south, and thence through the Atlantic Ocean up to New York.

These observations show that the mean specific gravity of sea-water is about .0007 greater in the southern than in the northern hemisphere.

The hypothesis which requires a crossing of the winds at the calm belts is consistent with this fact. Half the quantity of fresh water that it would take to dilute the brine of southern oceans so as to reduce the specific gravity of their waters to the average of cis-equatorial seas, suggests the amount of fresh water which the winds of the southern hemisphere take up as vapour, carry away, and do not rain down again on that side of the Equator. The water which is thus transported in clouds and rained upon northern fields has to find its way back to the seas of the south through the currents of the ocean. Hence the difference in saltness suggests the amount of fresh water which is perpetually *in transitu* between the two hemispheres, as vapour through the clouds from the southern, and as rain through the drainage of the land and currents of the sea from the northern. This half difference would, to be exact, require a further correction on account of the inequality in the distribution of land and water in the two hemispheres.

The vapour which gives excess of precipitation to the northern hemisphere is supplied from the southern, and

CHAPTER  
XX.

Difference of saltness in sea water determined by measurement.

Mean specific gravity of sea water.

Amount of fresh water carried northward by the winds.

CHAPTER  
XX.

it can be conveyed through no other channel but the air, nor brought by any other carriers but the winds. If any portion of the air which the south-east trades pour into the belt of the equatorial calms passes, after rising up, over into the northern hemisphere, it is axiomatic that a portion of like volume of that which the north-east trades pour into the same belt should pass over into the southern hemisphere. What may be the kind or the character of the agents to guide these crossings, and lead the air from one hemisphere to the other, it may not be easy to discover; it may be magnetism; it may be electricity that is concerned in it; but because we cannot detect them that is no proof of their non-existence. If there be a crossing, there is a power to guide the air through its mazes; for, rely upon it, the wind in its circuit is left no more to chance than is the earth in its orbit. There are forces to restrain each and to keep it within its limits.

Agents  
which  
guide  
these  
crossings  
unknown.4th. Eh-  
renberg's  
discover-  
ies with  
the micro-  
scope.

4th. Ehrenberg's discoveries with the microscope: In the sea-dust and red fogs of the North Atlantic he recognises organisms from South America. This dust has been collected for his microscope on the polar side of the north-east trades, and the inference is, that it was conveyed first to the equatorial calm belt by the surface wind, and was carried thence to the calms of Cancer by the upper currents.

Thus this hypothesis concerning the crossing at the calm belts, and the flowing of the air over from one hemisphere to the other, seems to be consistent with all the facts and circumstances mentioned in 1, 2, 3, and 4.

So far, however, the evidence seemed more specific touching the crossings at the equatorial calm belt than at the tropical. The vapour that is brought over into the northern

hemisphere is probably taken up by the south-east trade-winds. This supposition and Ehrenberg's "tallies" to the wind, as his sea-dust has been called, suggests the idea of a crossing at the calms of Cancer. But the circumstances going to show the crossing at the calms of Capricorn did not amount to evidence; the crossing was only inference drawn by analogy.

CHAPTER  
XX.  
Ehren-  
berg's  
"tallies"  
to the  
wind.

My own observations, and the experience of mariners § 1004 who are acting as observers in these researches touching sea and air, show that the westerly winds which blow counter to the trades on the polar side of the tropical calms are much more steady, strong, and constant in the southern than in the northern hemisphere.

The former have won for themselves, among mariners, the name of the "brave west winds" of the extra-tropical south. They are quite as constant from the west as in the North Atlantic the trades are from the east. Sailing with them to and from Australia, ships under canvas alone have attained a speed and accomplished runs which steam has never enabled any vessel to reach. In two months' time and less, sailing vessels have performed voyages of complete circumnavigation before these brave winds.

The  
"brave  
west  
winds"  
of the  
southern  
hemi-  
sphere.

Since, then, these winds are so much more constant and brave than those of corresponding latitudes in our hemisphere, how is it with the south-east trades as compared for strength with the north-east trades?

Stronger  
and more  
constant  
than those  
of the  
north.

For convenience of description we will hereafter § 1005 allude to the "brave west winds," or rather to the westerly winds which prevail on the polar side of Cancer and Capricorn in both hemispheres, as the "counter-trades."

CHAPTER XX.

Comparison between the counter-trades of the two hemispheres.

Since the counter-trades of the southern are stronger and steadier than the counter-trades of the northern hemisphere, we should establish another link in the chain of circumstances tending to show the calm belt crossings of the wind, if it should turn out that the south-east trades are also fresher than the north-east.

§ 1006

To settle this question, the knots run per hour by 2235 vessels through the south-east trades of the Indian Ocean, and through both systems of the Atlantic, were compared. The average speed of ships propelled by these winds is expressed in the following tabular statement. The comparison is confined to the rate of sailing between the parallels of 10° and 25°, because this is the belt of steadiest trades.

Average speed of the trade-winds.

*Average Speed through the Trade-winds of the North Atlantic and South Indian Ocean.*

	KNOTS PER HOUR, FROM										COURSE STEERED THROUGH.	
	10° to 15°		15° to 20°		20° to 25°		AVERAGE.		N.E. Trades.	S.E. Trades.		
	N.E. Trades.	S.E. Trades.	N.E. Trades.	S.E. Trades.	N.E. Trades.	S.E. Trades.	N.E. Trades.	S.E. Trades.				
January, ...	8	6½	7½	7	6	6	7	6½	7	N. 49° W.	S. 69° W.	
February, ...	7½	6	6	6½	5	6	6	6	6	N. 46 W.	do.	
March, ...	8	7	7	7	5½	6½	6	6½	6½	N. 47 W.	do.	
April, ...	7½	7	5¾	7½	4	6	6	6½	6½	N. 48 W.	S. 70° W.	
May, ...	8	8	6¾	7½	6½	6	7	7	7	N. 46 W.	do.	
June, ...	9	7½	8	8	5	7	7	7½	7½	N. 43 W.	do.	
July, ...	5½	8	8	8½	6	7	7	6½	7	N. 46 W.	do.	
August, ...	4½	7¾	6	8	4½	7½	5	7	7	N. 40 W.	S. 69° W.	
September, ...	5½	8½	6	8	4	6	5	7	7	N. 50 W.	do.	
October, ...	7	8½	6¾	8	6	5½	6	7	7	N. 45 W.	do.	
November, ...	6	8	6	7	4½	5½	5	6½	6½	N. 49 W.	do.	
December, ...	6	6½	6¾	6¾	5	5	6	6	6	N. 48 W.	do.	
Means, ...	7	7¾	6¾	7½	5½	6½	6½	7	7	N. 47° W.	S. 69¼° W.	

Average course steered through the N.E. Trades, N.W. ¼ W.

” ” ”

S.E. Trades, W.S.W.

*Average Speed through the Trade-winds of the North and South Atlantic Oceans.*

	KNOTS PER HOUR, FROM										COURSE STEERED THROUGH.	
	25° to 20°		20° to 15°		15° to 10°		AVERAGE.		S. E. Trades.	N. E. Trades.		
	S. E. Trades.	N. E. Trades.	S. E. Trades.	N. E. Trades.	S. E. Trades.	N. E. Trades.	S. E. Trades.	N. E. Trades.				
January, ...	6	5	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	6	N. 54° W.	S. 21° E.		
February, ...	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	5	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	N. 55 W.	S. 25 E.		
March, ...	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{3}{4}$	6	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	N. 55 W.	S. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		
April, ...	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	6 $\frac{3}{4}$	7 $\frac{3}{4}$	6	6	N. 53 W.	S. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		
May, ...	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	5	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	7	6	6	N. 55 W.	S. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		
June, ...	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6	6	6	7	5	6 $\frac{1}{4}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	N. 55 W.	S. 28 E.		
July, ...	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	7	6	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	6	N. 55 W.	S. 27 E.		
August, ...	5	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	4	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	N. 55 W.	S. 28 $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		
September, ...	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	6 $\frac{1}{4}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	7	5	6 $\frac{3}{4}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	N. 55 W.	S. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		
October, ...	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{4}$	6	4 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	N. 56 W.	S. 20 E.		
November, ...	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	4	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{4}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	5	N. 55 W.	S. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		
December, ...	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	4 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6	6 $\frac{1}{4}$	7 $\frac{3}{4}$	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6	N. 55 W.	S. 23 E.		
Means, ...	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	6	6 $\frac{1}{4}$	6	6	5 $\frac{3}{4}$	N. 55° W.	S. 24° E.		

Average course steered through the S. E. Trades, N. W. by W.  
 " " " N. E. Trades, S. S. E.

It is well to observe, that on each of these three oceans, though the direction of the wind is the same, the course steered by each fleet is different; consequently, these *anemometers* are at different angles with the wind; through the south-east trades the wind is nearly aft in the Atlantic, and quartering in the Indian Ocean; giving an average sailing speed of 7 knots an hour in the former, and of 6 in the latter; while through the north-east trades the average speed is 6 $\frac{1}{4}$  knots an hour one way (N. W.  $\frac{1}{4}$  W.), with the wind just abaft the beam, and 5 $\frac{3}{4}$  the other (S. S. E.), with the wind at a point not so favourable for speed. Indeed, most of the ships which average a S. S. E. course through this part of the north-east trade-wind belt are close hauled; therefore the

Effect of the different course steered by the fleets on the measurement of speed.

CHAPTER  
XX.

average strength of the trades here cannot be fairly compared with the average strength where the fleet have free winds. What is the difference in the strength of such winds, which, impinging upon the sails, each at the particular angle indicated above, imparts the aforesaid velocities? Moderate winds, such as these are, give a ship her highest speed generally when they are just abaft the beam, as they are for a north-west course through the north-east trades. So, to treat these ships as *anemometers* that will really enable us to measure the comparative strength of the winds, we should reduce the average knots per hour to the average speed of a mean ship sailing through average "trades" in each ocean, with the wind impinging upon her sails at the same angle for all three, as, for example, just abaft the beam, as in the North Atlantic.

Correct  
method  
of measur-  
ing the  
compara-  
tive  
strength  
of wind.

§ 1007.

Let us apply to the average speed through the South Atlantic and Indian Ocean such a correction. Through the former the wind is aft; through the latter quartering. If we allow two knots for the one, and one for the other, we shall not be greatly out. Applying this correction, we may state the speed of a mean ship sailing with average trades just abaft the beam to be as follows:—

Mean  
speed of a  
ship sail-  
ing with  
average  
trades.

Through the N.E. of the Atlantic,	...	...	6½ knots per hour.
Through the S.E. of the Atlantic,	...	...	8 " "
Through the S.E. of the Indian Ocean,	...	...	8 " "

I do not take into this comparison the force of the north-east trades on a south-south-east course (p. 442), because the winds along this route are known not to be as steady as they are further away from the African coast.

South-east  
trades  
stronger  
than the  
north-east.

Thus it is clearly established that the south-east trades are stronger than the north-east, *and so they should be, if there be a crossing of winds in the calm belt of Capricorn.*



The counter-trades of the southern hemisphere move, as before stated, toward their pole more steadily and briskly than do the counter-trades of the northern hemisphere. To give an idea of the difference of the strength of these two winds, I cite the fact that vessels sailing through the latter, as from New York to England, average 150 miles a-day. Along the corresponding latitudes through the former, as on a voyage to Australia, the average speed is upward of 200 miles a-day. Consequently, the counter-trades of the southern hemisphere transport in given times larger volumes of air toward the south than our counter-trades do toward the north. This air returns to the tropical calm belts as an upper current. If, descending there, it feeds the trade-winds, then, the supply being more abundant for the south-east trades than for the north-east, the south-east trades must be the stronger; and so they are; observations prove them so to be.

CHAPTER  
XX.

Difference of strength of the counter-trades of the south and north.

Thus, the crossing of the air at the calm belts, though it may not be proved, yet it is shown to be so very probable that the onus of proof is shifted. It now rests with those who dispute the crossing to prove their theory the true one.

The crossing of the air at the calm belts if not proved is yet probable.

Arrived at this point, another view in the field of conjecture is presented, which it is proper we should pause to consider.

The movements of the atmosphere on the polar side of 40° north are, let it be repeated, by no means so constant from the west, nor is the strength of the westerly winds there nearly so great on the average as it is in the extra-tropical regions of the south. This fact is well known among mariners. Every one who has sailed

§ 1003.

Movements of the atmosphere on the polar side of 40° north

CHAPTER in that southern girdle of waters which belt the earth, XX. on the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$ , has been struck with the force and trade-like regularity of the westerly winds which prevail there. The waves driven before these winds assume in their regularity of form, in the magnitude of their proportions, and in the stateliness of their march, an aspect of majestic grandeur that the billows of the sea never attain elsewhere.

Mountain billows raised by the "brave west winds."

No such waves are found in the trade-winds, for, though the south-east trades are quite as constant, yet they have not the force to pile the water in such heaps, nor to arrange the waves so orderly, nor to drive them so rapidly as those "brave" winds do. There the billows, following each other with measured tread, look, with their rounded crests and deep hollows, more like mountains rolling over a plain than the waves which we are accustomed to see.

Cause of the rapid runs of Australian clipper-ships.

Many days of constant blowing over a wide expanse of ocean are required to get up such waves. It is these winds and waves which, on the voyage to and from Australia, have enabled the modern clipper-ship to attain a speed, and, day after day, to accomplish runs which at first were considered, even by the nautical world, as fabulous, and are yet regarded by all with wonder and admiration.

Seeing, therefore, that we can bring in such a variety of facts and circumstances, all tending to show that the south-east trade-winds are stronger than the north-east, and that the westerly winds which prevail on the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$  south, are stronger and more constant than their antœcian fellows of the north, we may consider it as an established fact that the general system of atmo-

spherical circulation is more active in the southern than it is in the northern hemisphere. And, seeing that it blows with more strength and regularity from the west in the extra-tropical regions of the southern than it does in the extra-tropical regions of the northern hemisphere, we should deduce, by way of corollary, that the counter-trades of the south are not so easily arrested in their course, or turned back in their circuits, as are those of the north. Consequently, moreover, we should not, either in the trades or the counter-trades of the southern hemisphere, look for as many calms as in those of the northern systems.

CHAPTER  
XX.

The general system of atmospheric circulation is more active in the southern than in the northern hemisphere.

Therefore, holding to this corollary, we may consider the following as established facts in meteorology:—

§ 1009

That the south-east trade-winds are stronger than the north-east; that the north-west passage-winds—the counter-trades of the south—are stronger and less liable to interruption in their circuits than the south-west, the counter-trades of the north; that the atmospheric circulation is more regular and brisk in the southern than it is in the northern hemisphere; and, to repeat, since the wind moves in its circuits more briskly through the southern than it does through the northern hemisphere, it consequently has less time to tarry or dally by the way in the south than in the north; hence the corollary just stated. But observations also, as well as mathematically drawn inferences, show that calms are much less prevalent in the southern hemisphere. For this observations are ample; they are grouped together by thousands and tens of thousands, both on the Pilot and the Storm and Rain Charts. These charts have not been completed

New facts in meteorology.

CHAPTER

XX.

for all parts of the ocean, but as far as they have been constructed, the facts they utter are in perfect agreement with the terms of this corollary.

§ 1010

Inference  
to be  
drawn  
from the  
preceding  
facts.

These premises being admitted, we may ascend another round on this ladder, and argue that, since the atmosphere moves more briskly and in more constant streams through its general channels of circulation in the southern than it does through them in the northern hemisphere; and that, since it is not arrested in its courses by calms as often in the former as it is in the latter, neither should it be turned back by the way, so as to blow in gales from the direction opposite to that in which the general circulation carries it.

The atmosphere, in its movements along its regular channels of circulation, may be likened, that in the southern hemisphere to a fast railway train; that of the northern to a slow. The slow train may, when "steam is up," run as fast as the fast train, but it is not obliged to get through so quick; therefore, it may dally by the way, stop, run back, and still be through in time. Not so the fast; it has not time to stop often or to run back far; neither have the counter-trades of the south time to blow backward; consequently, such being the conditions, we should also expect to find in the extra-tropical south a gale with easting in it much more seldom than in the extra-tropical north.

We shall appeal to observations for the correctness of this conjecture, and claim for it, also, as presently will appear, the dignity of an established truth.

*Average Number of Gales to the 1000 Observations, with Easting and with Westing in them, between corresponding Parallels in the North and South Atlantic, as shown by the Storm and Rain Charts.*

Average number of gales in the North and South Atlantic.

	North.	South.
Between 40° and 45°	Number of observations... ..	17,274
	Gales in 1000, with easting ... ..	23
	" " westing... ..	66
Between 45° and 50°	Number of observations... ..	11,425
	Gales in 1000, with easting ... ..	24
	" " westing... ..	106
Between 50° and 55°	Number of observations... ..	4816
	Gales in 1000, with easting ... ..	24
	" " westing... ..	144

Thus the Storm and Rain Charts show that between the parallels of 40° and 55° there were in the northern hemisphere 33,515 observations, and that for every 1000 observations there were 24 gales with easting, and 105 with westing. In the southern there were 19,473 observations, and for every 1000 of these there were 5 gales with easting, and 80 with westing in them.

Those for the southern hemisphere are only for that part of the ocean through which vessels pass on their way to and fro around Cape Horn. That part of this route which lies between 40° and 55° south, is under the lee of South America; and Patagonia, that lies east of the Andes, is almost a rainless region; consequently, we might expect to find more unsteady winds and fewer rains in that part of the ocean where the observations for the southern part of the tables were made than we should expect to meet with well out to sea, as at the distance of two or three thousand miles to the eastward of Patagonia. So that the contrast presented by the above statement would probably be much greater did our observations extend entirely across the South, as they do across the North, Atlantic. But, as it is, the contrast is very striking. In

Sphere of observation in the southern hemisphere.

CHAPTER XX. some aspects, the meteorological agents of the two hemispheres, especially those forces which control the winds and the weather, differ very much. The difference is so wide as to suggest greater regularity and rapidity of circulation on one side of the Equator than on the other.

Average number of calms. *Average Number of Calms to the 1000 Observations, between the Parallels of 30° and 55°, in the North and South Atlantic, and between the Parallels of 30° and 60° in the North and South Pacific Oceans, as shown by the Pilot Charts.*

BETWEEN THE PARALLELS OF	ATLANTIC.		PACIFIC.	
	North.	South.	North.	South.
30° and 35°, No. of observations ... ..	12,935	15,842	22,730	44,886
Calms to the 1000 do. ... ..	46	26	34	35
35° and 40°, No. of observations ... ..	22,136	23,439	13,939	66,275
Calms to the 1000 do. ... ..	37	24	31	23
40° and 55°, No. of observations ... ..	16,363	8,203	12,400	31,889
Calms to the 1000 do. ... ..	45	27	53	23
45° and 50°, No. of observations ... ..	8,097	4,183	15,897	4,940
Calms to the 1000 do. ... ..	38	25	35	21
50° and 55°, No. of observations ... ..	3,519	3,660	32,804	9,728
Calms to the 1000 do. ... ..	40	16	32	17
55° and 60°, No. of observations ... ..			15,470	9,111
Calms to the 1000 do. ... ..			43	21
Total No. of observations ... ..	63,050	55,327	113,240	166,829
Average calms to the 1000 do. ...	41	24	39	25

Periods of the foregoing observations. Each one of these observations embraces a period of eight hours; the grand total, if arranged consecutively, with the observations drawn cut, each to occupy its period separately, would be equal to 373 years. They exhibit several curious and suggestive facts concerning the difference of the atmospherical stability in the two hemispheres.

§ 1011 Causes of the difference of force in the winds. If we would discover the seat of those forces which produce this difference in the dynamical status of the two great aerial oceans that envelop our planet, we should search for them in the unequal distribution of land and



water over the two hemispheres. In one the wind is interrupted in its circuits by the continental masses, with their wooded plains, their snowy mantles in winter, their sandy deserts in summer, and their mountain ranges always. In the other there is but little land and less snow. On the polar side of 40° south especially, if we except the small remnant of this continent that protrudes beyond that parallel in the direction of Cape Horn, there is scarcely an island. All is sea. There the air is never dry; it is always in contact with a vapour-giving surface; consequently, the winds there are loaded with moisture, which, with every change of temperature, is either increased by further evaporation or diminished by temporary condensation. *The propelling power of the winds in the southern hemisphere resides chiefly in the latent heat of the vapour which they suck up from the engirdling sea on the polar side of Capricorn.*

CHAPTER  
XX.  
—

Reason of the greater propelling power of the winds of the southern hemisphere.

The Storm and Rain Charts show that within the trade-wind regions of both hemispheres the calm and rain curves are symmetrical; that in the extra-tropical regions the symmetry is between the calm and fog curves; and also, especially in the southern hemisphere, between the gale and rain curves.

Lieutenant Van Gogh, of the Dutch navy, in an interesting paper on the connection between storms near the Cape of Good Hope and the temperature of the sea,<sup>1</sup> presents a storm and rain chart for that region. It is founded on 17,810 observations, made by 500 ships, upon wind and weather, between 14° and 32° east and 33° and 37° south.

Connection between storms and the temperature of the sea.

---

<sup>1</sup> De Störmen nabij de Kaap de Goede Hoop in verband beschouwd met de Temperatuur der Zee.

By that chart the gale and rain curves are so symmetrical that the phenomena of rains and gales in the extra-tropical seas present themselves suggestively as cause and effect. The general storm and rain charts of the Atlantic Ocean, prepared at the National Observatory, hold out the same idea. Let us examine, expand, and explain this fact.

§ 1012  
Cause of  
the coun-  
ter trade-  
winds of  
the south-  
ern hemi-  
sphere.

We ascribe the trade-winds to the latent heat which is set free from the condensation of aqueous vapour in the equatorial calm-belt. But to what shall we ascribe the counter-trades, particularly of the southern hemisphere, which blow with as much regularity toward the Pole as the north-east trades of the Atlantic do toward the Equator? Shall we say that those winds are drawn toward the South Pole by *heat*, which causes them to expand and ascend in the Antarctic regions? It sounds somewhat paradoxical to say that heat causes the winds to blow toward the Poles as well as toward the Equator; but, after a little explanation, and the passing in review of a few facts and circumstances, perhaps the paradox may disappear.

Average  
amount of  
precipita-  
tion.

It is held as an established fact by meteorologists that the average amount of precipitation is greater in the northern than in the southern hemisphere; but this, I imagine, applies rather to the land than the sea. On the polar side of 40°, it is mostly water in the southern, mostly land in the northern hemisphere. It is only now and then, and on rare occasions, that ships carry rain-gauges to sea. We can determine by quantitative measurements the difference in amount of precipitation on the *land* of the two hemispheres; and it is the result of this determination, I imagine, that has given rise to the

general remark that the rain-fall is greater for the northern than it is for the southern hemisphere. But we have few hyetographic measurements for quantity at sea; there the determinations are mostly numerical. Our observers report the "times" of precipitation, which, whether it be in the form of rain, hail, or snow, is called by the charts, and in this discussion, *rain*. Among such a large corps of observers, rain is sometimes, no doubt, omitted in the log; so that in all probability the charts do not show as many "times" with rain as there are "times" actually with rain at sea. This omission, however, is as likely to occur in one hemisphere as in the other. Still, we may safely assume that it rains oftener in all parts of the sea than our observations or the rain charts that are founded on them indicate.

With the view of comparing the rains at sea between the parallels of 55° and 60°, both in the North and South Atlantic, we have taken from the charts the following figures:—

§ 1013  
Compari-  
son of  
rains at  
sea.

South—Observations,	8410 ;	gales,	1223 ;	rains,	1105.	
North—	„	526 ;	„	135 ;	„	64.
Gales to the 1000 observations.....	S. 146 ;		N. 256.			
Rains	„	„	..... S. 131 ;		N. 121.	

That is, for every 10 gales, there are in the southern hemisphere 9 rains, and in the northern 4.7. In which hemisphere does most water fall on the average during a rain at sea? Observations do not tell; but there seems to be a philosophical reason why it should rain not only oftener but more copiously at sea, especially in the extra-tropical regions, in the southern hemisphere, than in those of the northern. On the polar side of 40° north, for example, the land is stretched out in continental masses,

Reason  
why more  
rain  
should fall  
in the  
southern  
than in  
the north-  
ern hemi-  
sphere.

CHAPTER XX.  
 Difference of dew-point between the two hemispheres.

upon the thirsty bosom of which, when the air drops down its load of moisture, only a portion of it can be taken up again; the rest is absorbed by the earth to feed the springs. On the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$  south we have a water instead of a land surface, and as fast as precipitation takes place there, the ocean replenishes the air with moisture again. It may, consequently, be assumed that a high dew-point, at least one as high as the ocean can maintain in contact with winds blowing over it and going from warmer to cooler latitudes all the time, is the normal condition of the air on the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$  south, whereas on the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$  north a low dew-point prevails. The rivers to the north of  $40^{\circ}$  could not, if they were all converted into steam, supply vapour enough to make up this average difference of dew-point between the two hemispheres.

Inference from the symmetry of the rain and storm-curves.

The symmetry of the rain and storm curves on the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$  south suggests that it is the condensation of this vapour which, with the liberation of its latent heat, gives such activity and regularity to the circulation of the atmosphere in the other hemisphere.

§ 1014 On the polar side of  $40^{\circ}$  south, near Cape Horn, the gauge of Captains King and Fitzroy showed a rain-fall of 153.75 inches in 41 days.

There is no other place except Cherraponjie where the precipitation approaches this in amount. Cherraponjie is a mountain station in India, 4500 feet high, which, in latitude  $25^{\circ}$  north, acts as a condenser for the monsoons fresh from the sea. But on the polar side of latitude  $45^{\circ}$  in the northern hemisphere it is, except along the American shores of the North Pacific, a physical impossibility that there should be a region of such precipitation

as King and Fitzroy found on the western slopes of Patagonia—a physical impossibility, because the peculiar combination of conditions required to produce a Patagonian rain-fall is wanting on the polar side of 45° north.

CHAPTER  
XX.

There is not in the North Atlantic water surface enough to afford vapour for such an amount of precipitation. In the North Pacific the water surface may be broad and ample enough to afford the vapour, but in neither of these two northern sheets of water are the winds continuous enough from the westward to bring in the requisite quantities of vapour from the sea. Moreover, if the westerly winds of the extra-tropical north were as steady and as strong as are those of the south, there is lacking in the north that continental relief—mountain ranges rising abruptly out of the sea, or separated from it only by lowlands—that seems to be necessary to bring down the rain in such floods.

Causes  
why more  
rain falls  
in the  
south than  
in the  
north.

Colonel Sykes<sup>1</sup> quotes the rain-fall of Cherraponjie at 605.25 inches for the 214 days from April to October, the season of the south-west monsoons. Computing the Cape Horn rains according to the ratio given by King and Fitzroy for their 41 days of observation, we should have a rain-fall in Patagonia of 825 inches in 214 days, or a yearly amount of 1368.7 inches. Neither the Cape Horn rains nor the rains anywhere at sea on the polar side of 45° south are periodical. They are continuous; more copious perhaps at some seasons than at others, but abundant at all.

Compari-  
son be-  
tween the  
rain-fall at  
Cherra-  
ponjie  
and in Pa-  
tagonia.

Now, considering the extent of water-surface on the § 1015

---

<sup>1</sup> "Report of the British Association for 1852," p. 256.

CHAPTER  
XX.

polar side of the south-east trade-wind belt, we see no reason why, on these parallels, the engirdling air of that great watery zone of the south should not, entirely around the earth, be as heavily charged with vapour as was that which dropped this flood upon the Patagonian hills.

Effect of  
the moun-  
tains on  
the rain-  
fall.

If those mountains had not been there, the condensation and the consequent precipitation would probably not have been as great, because the *conditions at sea* are less apt to produce rain; but the quantity of vapour in the air would have been none the less, which vapour was being borne in the channels of circulation toward the Antarctic regions for condensation and the liberation of its latent heat; and we make, as we shall proceed to show, no violent supposition if, in attempting to explain this activity of circulation south of the Equator, we suppose a cloud region, a combination of conditions in the Antarctic Circle peculiarly favourable to heavy and almost incessant precipitation.

Effect of  
precipita-  
tion on  
the winds.

But before describing these conditions, let us turn aside to inquire how far precipitation in the supposed cloud region of the south may assist in giving force and regularity to the winds of the southern hemisphere.

§ 1016 If we take a measure, as a cubic foot, of ice at zero, and apply heat to it by means of a steady flame that will give off heat at a uniform rate, and in such quantities that just enough heat may be imparted to the ice to raise its temperature  $1^{\circ}$  a minute, we shall find that at the end of 32 minutes the ice will be at  $32^{\circ}$ . The ice will now begin to melt, but it and its water will remain at  $32^{\circ}$  for 140 minutes, when all the ice will have become



water at  $32^{\circ}$ .<sup>1</sup> This  $140^{\circ}$  of heat, which is enough to raise the temperature of 140 cubic feet of ice one degree from any point below  $32^{\circ}$ , has been rendered latent in the process of liquefaction. Freeze this water again, and this latent heat will become sensible heat; for heat no more than ponderable matter cannot be annihilated.

But if, after the cubic foot of ice has been converted into water at  $32^{\circ}$ , we continue the uniform supply of heat as before, and at the same rate, the water will, at the expiration of 180 minutes more, reach the temperature of  $212^{\circ}$ —the boiling-point; and at this temperature it will remain for 1030 minutes, notwithstanding the continuous supply of heat during the interval. At the expiration of this 1030 minutes of boiling heat, the last drop of water will have been converted into steam; but the temperature of the steam will be that only of the boiling water: thus, in the evaporation of every measure of water, heat enough is rendered latent during the process to raise the temperature of 1030 such measures one degree. If this vapour be now condensed, this latent heat will be set free, and become sensible heat again.

Hence we perceive that every rain-drop that falls from the sky had in its process of condensation evolved heat enough to raise one degree the temperature of 1030 rain-drops. But if, instead of the liquid state, as rain, it come down in the solid state, as hail or snow, then the heat of fluidity, amounting to enough to raise the temperature of 140 additional drops one degree, is also set free.

Heat evolved by every rain drop in its precipitation, whether as rain or snow.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Espy's "Philosophy of Storms."

## CHAPTER

## XX.

Cause of the violent wind which usually accompanies hail-storms.

We have in this fact a clue to the violent wind which usually accompanies hail-storms. In the hail-storm, congelation takes place immediately after condensation, and so quickly, that the heat evolved during the two processes may be considered as of one evolution. Consequently, the upper air has its temperature raised much higher than could be done by the condensing only.

But this is digressive; therefore let us take up the broken thread, and suppose, merely for illustration, such a rain-fall as King and Fitzroy encountered in Patagonia to have taken place under the supposed cloud region of the Antarctic Circle, and to have been hail or snow, instead of rain; then the total amount of caloric set free among the clouds, in those 41 days of such a flood, would be enough to raise from freezing to boiling  $6\frac{1}{2}$  times as much water as fell. But if the supposed Antarctic precipitation come down in the shape of rain, then the heat set free would be sufficient only to raise from freezing to boiling about  $5\frac{3}{4}$  as much water as the flood brought down.

## § 1017

Amount of heat set free in the condensation and congelation of vapour.

We shall have perhaps a better idea of the amount of heat that would be set free, in the condensation and congelation in the Antarctic regions of as much vapour as it took to make the Patagonian rain-fall, if we vary the illustration by supposing this rain-fall of 153.75 inches to extend over an area of 1000 square miles, and that it fell as snow or hail. The latent heat set free among the clouds during these 41 days would have been sufficient to raise from the freezing to the boiling point all the water in a lake 1000 square miles in area and  $83\frac{1}{4}$  feet in depth. We now see how the cold of the Poles, by facilitating precipitation, is made to

react and develop heat, to expand the air and give force to the winds. CHAPTER  
XX.

Thus we obtain another point of view from which we may contemplate in a new aspect the icebergs which the antarctic region sends forth in such masses and numbers. § 1018

They are a part of the meteorological machinery of our planet. The offices which they perform as such are most important, and oh, how exquisite! While they are in the process of congelation, the heat of fluidity is set free, which, whether it be liberated by the freezing of water at the surface of the earth, or of the rain-drop in the sky, helps in either case to give activity and energy to the southern system of circulation, by warming and expanding the air at its place of ascent. Offices  
performed  
by ice-  
bergs.

Thus the water, which, by parting with its heat of liquefaction, has expended its meteorological energy in giving dynamical force to the air, is like the exhausted steam of the engine; it has exerted its power, and become inert. It is, therefore, to be got out of the way. In the grand meteorological engine which drives the wind through his circuits, and tempers it to beast, bird, and plant, this waste water is collected into antarctic icebergs, and borne away by the currents to more genial climes, where the latent heat of fluidity which they dispense to the air in the frigid zone is restored, and where they are again resolved into water, which, approaching the torrid zone in cooling streams, again joins in the work, and helps to cool the air of the trade-winds, to mitigate climate, and moderate the gale. For if the water of southern seas were warmer, evaporation would be greater; then the south-east trade-winds would de- Use of ice-  
bergs in  
conveying  
water from  
north to  
south.

CHAPTER  
XX.

liver vapour more abundantly to the equatorial calm belts. This would make precipitation there more copious, and the additional quantity of heat set free would give additional velocity to the in-rushing trade-winds. Thus it is, as has already been stated, that, parallel for parallel, trans-equatorial seas are cooler than cis-equatorial; thus it is that icebergs are employed to push forward the winds in the polar regions, to hold them back in the equatorial; and thus it is that, in contemplating the machinery of the air, we perceive how icebergs are "coupled on," and made to perform the work of a regulator, with adjustments the most beautiful, and compensations the most exquisite, in the grand machinery of the atmosphere.

Effect of  
icebergs  
on winds.

§ 1019  
Dynamical  
force  
which the  
winds de-  
rive from  
vapour.

With this illustration concerning the dynamical force which the winds derive from the vapour taken up in one climate and transported to another, we may proceed to sketch those physical features, which, being found in the antarctic circle, would be most favourable to heavy and constant precipitation, and, consequently, to the development of a system of aerial circulation peculiarly active, vigorous, and regular for the aqueous hemisphere, as the southern, in contrast with the northern one, may be called.

The coun-  
ter-trade  
winds of  
the south-  
ern hemi-  
sphere are  
vapour-  
bearing  
winds.

These vapour-bearing winds, which brought the rains to Patagonia are—I wish to keep this fact in the reader's mind—the counter-trades of the southern hemisphere. As such they have to perform their round in the grand system of aerial circulation; and as in every system of circulation there must be some point or place at which motion ceases to be direct, and commences to be retrograde, so there must be a place somewhere on the surface of our planet where these winds cease to go

forward, stop, and commence their return to the north; *and that place is, in all probability, within the antarctic regions.* Its precise locality has not been determined, but I suppose it to be a band or disk within the polar circle, which, could it be explored, would be found, like the equatorial calm belts, a place of light airs and calms, of ascending columns of air, a region of clouds and of constant precipitation.

CHAPTER  
XX.  
Stopping  
place of  
the winds

But, be that as it may, the air which these vapour-bearing winds—vapour-bearing, because they blow over such an immense tract of ocean—pour into this stopping-place has to ascend and flow off as an upper current, to make room for that which is continually flowing in below. In ascending it expands and grows cool, and, as it grows cool, condensation of its vapour commences. With this vast quantities of latent heat, which converted the water out at sea into vapour for these winds, are set free in the upper air. There it reacts by warming the ascending columns, causing them still further to expand, and so to rise higher and higher.

This reasoning is suggested not only by the facts and circumstances already stated as well known, but it derives additional plausibility for correctness by the low barometer of these regions.

In the equatorial calm belts the mean barometric pressure is about 0.2 inch less than it is in the trade-winds, and this diminution of pressure is enough to create a perpetual influx of the air from either side, and to produce the trade-winds. Off Cape Horn the mean barometric pressure<sup>1</sup> is 0.75 inch less than in the trade-

Difference  
of barome-  
tric pres-  
sure in the  
calm belts  
and in the  
trade-  
winds.

<sup>1</sup> "Maury's Sailing Directions," 6th ed., 1854, p. 692; ditto, 8th ed., 1859, vol. ii. p. 450.

wind regions. This is for the parallel say of  $57^{\circ}$ — $8^{\circ}$  south. According to the mean of 2472 barometric observations made along that part only of the route to Australia which lies between the meridians of the Cape of Good Hope and Melbourne, the mean barometric pressure on the polar side of  $42^{\circ}$  south has been shown by Lieutenant Van Gogh, of the Dutch navy, to be 0.33 inch less than it is in the trade-winds. The mean pressure in this part of the South Indian Ocean is, under winds with easting in them, 29.8 inches; ditto, under winds with westing, 29.6 inches. This gives a supposed mean pressure in the polar calms of 29.7 inches.

Diminution of atmospheric pressure in high south latitudes.

To what, if not to the effects of the condensation of vapour borne by those surcharged winds, and to the immense precipitation in the Austral regions, shall we ascribe this diminution of the atmospherical pressure in high south latitudes? It is not so in high north latitudes, except about the Aleutian Islands of the Pacific, where the sea to windward is also wide, and where precipitation is frequent, but not so heavy. The steady flow of "brave" winds toward the south would seem to call for a combination of physical conditions about their stopping-place exceedingly favourable to rapid and heavy and constant precipitation. The rain-fall at Cherraponjie, and on the slopes of the Patagonian Andes, reminds us what those conditions are. There mountain masses seem to perform, in the chambers of the upper air, the office which the jet of cold water does for the exhausted steam in the condenser of the engine. The presence of land, not water, about this south polar stopping-place is, therefore, suggested; for the sea is not so favourable as the mountains are for aqueous condensation.



By the terms in which our proposition has been stated, and by the manner in which the demonstration has been conducted, the presence of land in large masses there is called for; and, if we imagine it to be relieved by high mountains and lofty peaks, we shall have in the antarctic continent a most active and powerful condenser.

If, again, we tax imagination a little further, we may, without transcending the limits of legitimate speculation, invest that unexplored land with numerous and active volcanoes. If we suppose this also to be the case, then we certainly shall be at no loss for sources of dynamical force sufficient to give that freshness and vigour to the atmospherical circulation which observations have abundantly shown to be peculiar to the southern hemisphere. Neither under such physical aspects need it be any longer considered paradoxical to ascribe the polar tendency of the "brave west winds" to rarefaction by heat in the Antarctic Circle. This heat is relative, and though it be imparted to air far below the freezing-point, raising its temperature only a few degrees, its expansive power for that change is as great when those few degrees are low down as it is when they are high up on the scale.

Cause of the polar tendency of the "brave west winds."

If such condensation of vapour do take place, then liberation of heat and expansion of air must follow, and consequently the oblateness of the atmospherical covering of our planet will be altered; the flattening about the Poles will be relieved by the intumescence of the expanded and ascending air, which, protruding above the general level of the aerial ocean, will receive an impulse equatorially, as well from the mere derangement of equilibrium as from the centrifugal forces of the revolving

Alteration of the oblateness of the atmospherical covering of our planet.

CHAPTER  
XX.  
—

globe. And so this air, having parted with its moisture, and having received the expansive force of all the latent heat evolved in the process of vaporous condensation, will commence its return toward the Equator as an upper current of dry air.

§ 1021. Arrived at this point of the investigation, we may contemplate the whole system of these "brave west winds" in the light of an everlasting cyclone on a gigantic scale. The antarctic continent is in its vortex, about which the wind, in the great atmospherical ocean all around the world, from the Pole to the edge of the calm belt of Capricorn, is revolving in spiral curves, continually going with the hands of a watch, and twisting from left to right.

The purposes which God designs to accomplish seen in his arrangements.

In studying the workings of the various parts of the physical machinery that surrounds our planet, it is always refreshing and profitable to detect, even by glimmerings never so faint, the slightest tracings of the purpose which the omnipotent Architect of the universe designed to accomplish by any particular arrangement among its various parts. Thus it is in this instance. Whether the train of reasoning which we have been endeavouring to follow up, or whether the arguments which we have been adducing to sustain it be entirely correct or not, we may from all the facts and circumstances that we have passed in review, find reasons sufficient for regarding in an instructive, if not in a new light, that vast waste of waters which surrounds the unexplored regions of the Antarctic Circle.

It is a reservoir of dynamical force for the winds, a regulator in the grand meteorological machinery of the earth.

The heat which is transported by the vapours with which that sea loads its superincumbent air is the chief source of the motive power which gives to the winds of the southern hemisphere, as they move through their channels of circulation, their high speed, great regularity, and consistency of volume. And this insight into the workings of the wonderful machinery of sea and air we obtain from comparing together the relative speed of vessels as they sail to and fro upon inter-tropical seas.

Such is the picture which, after no little labour, much research, and some thought, the winds have enabled us to draw of certain unexplored portions of our planet. As we have drawn the picture, so, from the workings of the meteorological machinery of the southern hemisphere, we judge it to be. The evidence which has been introduced is meteorological in its nature, circumstantial in its character, we admit; but it shows the idea of land in the antarctic regions—of much land, and high land—to be plausible at least. Not only so: it suggests that a group of active volcanoes there would be by no means inconsistent with the meteorological phenomena which we have been investigating. True, volcanoes in such a place may not be a meteorological necessity. We cannot say that they are; yet the force and regularity of the winds remind us that their presence there would not be inconsistent with known laws. According to these laws, we may as well imagine the Antarctic Circle to encompass land as to encompass water. We know ocularly but little more of its topographical features than we do of those of one of the planets; but, if they be continental, we surely may, without any unwarrantable stretch of the imagination, relieve the face of nature there with snow-

CHAPTER  
XX.§ 1022  
Heat the  
chief  
source of  
the motive  
power of  
the winds  
of the  
south.

§ 1023

Evidence  
of the ex-  
istence of  
high land  
and volca-  
noes in the  
antarctic  
regions.

CHAPTER XX.  
 clad mountains, and diversify the landscape with flaming volcanoes.

None of these features are inconsistent with the phenomena displayed by the winds. Let us apply to other departments of physics, and seek testimony from other sources of information. None of the evidence to be gathered there will appear contradictory, it is rather in corroboration. Southern explorers, as far as they have penetrated within the Antarctic Circle, tell us of high lands and mountains of ice; and Ross, who went furthest of all, saw volcanoes burning in the distance.

Testimony  
 of ex-  
 plorers.

§ 1024 The unexplored area around the South Pole is about twice as large as Europe. This untravelled region is circular in shape, the circumference of which does not measure less than 7000 miles. Its edges have been penetrated here and there, and land, wherever seen, has been high and rugged.

Extent of  
 the unex-  
 plored  
 area of the  
 south pole.

Navigators on the voyage from the Cape of Good Hope to Melbourne, and from Melbourne to Cape Horn, scarcely ever venture, except while passing Cape Horn, to go on the polar side of  $55^{\circ}$  south. The fear of icebergs deters them. These may be seen there drifting up towards the Equator in large numbers and large masses all the year round. I have encountered them myself as high up as the parallel of  $37^{\circ}$  south.

Icebergs  
 in the  
 southern  
 seas.

The belt of ocean that encircles this globe on the polar side of  $55^{\circ}$  south is never free from icebergs. They are found in all parts of it the year round. Many of them are miles in extent, and hundreds of feet thick. The area on the polar side of the 55th parallel of south latitude comprehends a space of 17,784,600 square miles. The nursery for the bergs, to fill such a field, must be an

immense one ; such a nursery cannot be on the sea, for icebergs require to be fastened firmly to the shore until they attain full size. They, therefore, in their mute way, are loud with evidence in favour of antarctic shore lines of great extent, of deep bays where they may be formed, and of lofty cliffs whence they may be launched.

There is another physical circumstance which obtains generally with regard to the distribution of land and water over the surface of the earth, and which, as far as it goes, seems to favour the hypothesis of much land about the South Pole ; and that circumstance is this : It seems to be a physical necessity that land should not be antipodal to land. Except a small portion of South America and Asia, land is always opposite to water. The belief is, that on the polar side of  $70^{\circ}$  north we have mostly water, not land. This law of distribution, so far as it applies, is in favour of land in the opposite zone. Finally, geographers are agreed that, irrespective of the particular facts and phenomena which we have been considering, the probabilities are in favour of an antarctic continent rather than of an antarctic ocean.

“There is now no doubt,” says Dr. Jilek, in his “Lehrbuch der Oceanographie,” “that around the South Pole there is extended a great continent mainly within the polar circle, since, although we do not know it in its whole extent, yet the portions with which we have become acquainted, and the investigations made, furnish sufficient evidences to infer the existence of such with certainty. This southern or antarctic continent advances furthest northward in a peninsula south-south-east of the southern end of America, reaching in Trinity Land almost to  $62^{\circ}$  south latitude. Outwardly these lands exhibit a

CHAPTER XX- naked, rocky, partly volcanic desert, with high rocks destitute of vegetation, always covered with ice and snow, and so surrounded with ice that it is difficult or impossible to examine the coasts very closely. . . .

Discover-  
ies of land  
near the  
south pole.

“The principal discoveries of these coasts are (Wilkes), Dumont d’Urville, and Ross (the younger), of whom the latter in 1842 followed a coast over 100 miles between 72° and 79° south latitude, and 160° and 170° east longitude, to which he gave the name Victoria Land, and on which he discovered a volcano (Erebus) 10,200 feet high, in 167° east longitude, and 77° south latitude, as well as another extinct one (Terror) 10,200 feet high, and then discovered the magnetic South Pole.”<sup>1</sup>—*Observatory, Washington, April, 1859.*

---

<sup>1</sup> “Text-book of Oceanography for the Use of the Imperial Naval Academy,” by Dr. August Jilek, Vienna, 1857.



## CHAPTER XXI.

## THE SUBMARINE TELEGRAPH OF THE ATLANTIC.

Its History, § 1025.—Attempt to be renewed, 1026.—Causes of Failure, 1027.  
—The Probabilities of Success, 1028.—The real Question, 1029.

THE Atlantic Telegraph quietly rests on its plateau, after having performed its office as a channel of communication only for a short time. The laying of it was celebrated with a pomp and circumstance in New York seldom, if ever, witnessed. Though short-lived it was a grand achievement. It demonstrated the possibility of uniting, by a telegraph across the Atlantic, the New World with the Old. Everything that contributed toward the accomplishment of this achievement is possessed of that peculiar interest which attaches to the history of great events.

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
§ 1025  
The Atlan-  
tic Tele-  
graph.

It is in some sort a result arising from these researches concerning the physics of the sea, and a short account of it may be given here without prejudice to the specialties of this work.

On the 1st of September, before an immense assembly of people in the Crystal Palace of New York, the history of this telegraphic enterprise was given, in a speech of much beauty and eloquence, by David Dudley Field, for and in behalf of the Company—he being one of the original projectors.

In 1854, he and his associates had under consideration a line from our own shores to Newfoundland, when the idea of extending it across the Atlantic was suggested;

First sug-  
gestion of  
the plan.

CHAPTER  
XXI.

The projectors ask Lieutenant Maury's opinion, which is favourable.

but before they decided upon anything they wrote, said the orator, "to Lieutenant Maury, to inquire about the practicability of submerging a cable, and consulted Professor Morse about the possibility of telegraphing through it. Their answers were favourable. On receiving them it was decided to 'go ahead.'"

It thus appears that this new department of science, embodied in the term "Physical Geography of the Sea," has already contributed to the advancement of one of the grandest and most interesting practical problems which this age of mind and intelligence has been called on to demonstrate.

Steamers appointed to lay the cable.

In the summer of 1857, the United States steamer "Niagara" and H. B. M. steamer "Agamemnon" were assigned by their respective governments to the duty of receiving on board and laying the Submarine Atlantic Cable. Other vessels were sent with them as pilots, consorts, and tenders. The plan was, for the "Niagara" to begin at Queenstown, Ireland, pay out her cable as far as it would reach, then pass the end in mid-ocean to the "Agamemnon," when it would be spliced, and when that ship would proceed with it to Newfoundland. After reaching deep water, the "Niagara" having paid out about 344 miles of cable, it parted August 11th, 1857. This failure postponed further trial till the summer of 1858.

First failure.

Second attempt.

In the summer of 1858, the same two ships, having the cable again on board, proceeded together to mid-ocean, where the two ends were joined, and they then commenced to "pay and go," each toward her own land. The "Niagara" had 1488 miles of cable on board, the "Agamemnon" 1477. Total, 2965 miles.

After three unsuccessful attempts to lay the cable, and

after the loss of about 400 miles of it, the fleet returned to Ireland. It put to sea again for a last trial, July 17, with about 1274 miles of cable on board each of the paying-out vessels.

They met in mid-ocean, joined cables, and set out,—the “Niagara” for her terminus in Trinity Bay, and the “Agamemnon” for hers in Valentia Harbour,—at 1 P.M., July 29th, and successfully landed each vessel her end of the cable on the 5th of August. One week after that messages of congratulation were passed through the cable between the Queen of England and the President of the United States.

The part which the Observatory has played in the history of submarine telegraphy, and of this line between the Old World and the New, is a quiet and an humble part; nevertheless, it now appears to have been an important and useful part. But, whatever it may have been, it has grown out of that beautiful system of research concerning the physics of the sea, which, having its commencement here in 1842, has expanded and blossomed, and fruited, giving among its fruits for man’s benefit charts of the winds and currents of the sea, and secrets snatched from its depths. The present, therefore, seems to be a proper time for placing on record a statement showing the connection of the Observatory with this enterprise, and the part borne in it by each one who has helped this institution to render good service in such a field.

In 1849 the labours of the Observatory in the hydrographical department of its duties appear to have attracted the favourable consideration of Congress; for in March of that year a law was passed directing the secretary of

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
—Success at  
last.First mes-  
sages.The con-  
nection of  
the Obser-  
vatory  
with the  
great en-  
terprise.

## CHAPTER

## XXI.

Law passed by Congress to aid the investigations of the Observatory.

The schooner "Taney" sent out to make soundings.

Longing excited for further information.

the navy "to detail three suitable vessels of the navy in testing new routes and perfecting the discoveries made by Lieutenant Maury in the course of his investigations of the winds and currents of the ocean ; and to cause the vessels of the navy to co-operate in procuring materials for such investigations, in so far as said co-operation may not be incompatible with the public interest."

Under this law the United States schooner "Taney," Lieutenant J. C. Walsh commanding, was sent to sea in 1849. She was directed, among other things, to make a series of deep-sea soundings. She was provided, therefore, with fourteen thousand fathoms of steel wire, and a self-registering deep-sea sounding apparatus, made by Mr. Baur, of New York, from drawings and according to a plan designed in this office. She got a cast with 5700 fathoms of line out, when it parted, losing the apparatus. She then proved unseaworthy, was condemned, and sent back under escort.

This reported sounding served to stimulate that longing which is implanted in the human breast touching the mysteries and the wonders of the great deep ; for up to this time no systematic attempt had ever been made to fathom the deep sea. Sporadic casts of the lead had been made here and there in "blue water," but though the reported depths had been great, yet, as with that of the "Taney," there always remained a doubt as to whether bottom had been reached or not, and at what depth. Up to this time we were as ignorant as to the real depths of the ocean, and the true character of that portion of the solid crust of our planet which constitutes its bed, as we are at this moment of the interior of one of the satellites of Jupiter. Using astronomical elements, the mean depth

of the ocean had been calculated to be, according to theory, about 23 miles.

CHAPTER  
XXI.

My excellent friend, the late Commodore Warrington, who was then the chief of the Bureau of Ordnance and Hydrography, of which the Observatory is a branch, took, as was his wont, liberal and enlightened views touching the plan of deep-sea soundings now proposed. The secretary of the navy regarded it with a lively interest; he was ready to afford every facility that the law required, and the law itself was liberal enough. Under such auspices, it was decided to inaugurate a regular plan of deep-sea sounding for the American navy. Accordingly, formulæ were arranged, methods prescribed, and our men-of-war were furnished with the requisite twine, &c., and commanded to use every suitable and convenient opportunity while at sea to try the depths of its deep waters. Each vessel was allowed a number of reels of this twine, according to her cruising ground, each reel containing ten thousand fathoms, weighing about one hundred pounds.

A regular  
plan of  
deep-sea  
sounding.

Under this order, Lieutenant William Rogers Taylor, the 1st of the "Albany," Captain Platt, commenced a series of soundings in and about the gulf of Mexico; Captain Barron, of the "John Adams," ran a line across the Atlantic; and Captain Walker, of the "Saratoga," got a cast in the South Atlantic.

A series of  
soundings  
com-  
menced.

All these soundings required verification; and in 1851 the "Dolphin," Lieutenant-commanding S. P. Lee, was fitted out, under the act of 1849, especially to assist me with observations and experiments. After many trials, and as many failures, she at last succeeded in getting good casts, which, being reliable, enabled me to establish a law

CHAPTER of descent for the plummet, and so prove the soundings  
 XXI. of other vessels.

Success of  
 Lieutenant  
 Lee.

Lieutenant Lee, having thus "made the egg stand on its end," returned home, bringing with him the best series of deep-sea soundings that up to that time had ever been made; and they have not been surpassed by any up to this day.

The "Dolphin" was then placed under the command of Lieutenant O. H. Berryman, to continue this service. With Lee's plans and experience to guide him, he put to sea from New York, October 1852, sounding as he went as far as the meridian of 40° west, where he was overtaken by a gale, damaged, and forced into the Tagus for repairs. Here he remained till December 19th, and then returned home by the southern route, sounding and looking for "vigias" as he came.

An oro-  
 graphic  
 map con-  
 structed of  
 the bed of  
 the North  
 Atlantic  
 Ocean.

With Lee's soundings in the "Dolphin," together with those already obtained from the regular cruisers in the navy, I was enabled, with the assistance of Professor Flye, to construct, in the fall of 1852, an orographic map of the bed of the North Atlantic Ocean, and to give a profile representing a vertical section of its bottom between this country and Europe near the parallel of 39° north.

The mate-  
 rials used  
 for the  
 map.

The materials used for this map<sup>1</sup> and profile were the deep-sea soundings already mentioned as made by Walsh, Taylor, Lee, and Barron, together with others which had been received from the "Congress," Commodore M'Keever; the "Portsmouth," Captain Dornin; the "Cyane," Captain Paine; the "St. Louis," Captain Ingraham; the "Plymouth,"

---

<sup>1</sup> See Plates XIV. and XV., "Maury's Sailing Directions," 5th edition.



Captain Kelly; the "Germantown," Captain Knight; the "Susquehanna," Captain Inman; and Lieutenant Warley, of the "Jamestown," Captain Downing. These were the first maps of the kind ever attempted for "blue water." Their object was to show the depressions of the solid crust of our planet *below*, as geographers seek to represent its elevations *above* the sea-level.<sup>1</sup> The "telegraphic plateau" is there delineated on Plate XIV., very much as the subsequent deep-sea soundings have shown it to be. This attempt to map out the bottom of the deep sea was regarded with exceeding interest by the learned. Humboldt gave it high praise; it opened the freshest and most interesting field that remained to him for contemplation in the domains of science.

CHAPTER  
XXI.

Humboldt's interest in the subject.

Up to this time, however, nothing had ever been brought up from the deep sea. The plummet was a cannon-ball, and the sounding-line a bit of small twine which was broken off when the cannon-ball reached the bottom, so that ball and twine remained behind; consequently, every cast of the deep-sea plummet involved the loss of a shot and of as much twine as it took to reach the bottom. It was desirable to bring up soundings, not only that we might learn what the bottom and bed of the ocean were made of, but that we might know of a verity and have the proof that the bottom had been reached.

Under these circumstances, the attention of Lieutenant J. M. Brooke, who was at the time stationed at the Observatory, was called to the subject, when he made, *for bringing up specimens from the bottom of the ocean*, the beautiful and

<sup>1</sup> See p. 239, 240, 5th ed. "Maury's Sailing Directions," printed by C. Alexander, Washington, and published in February 1853.

CHAPTER  
XXI.

simple contrivance known as "Brooke's deep-sea sounding apparatus."

The "Dol-  
phin" or-  
dered to  
sea to ob-  
tain speci-  
mens.

When the "Dolphin" returned from the Tagus, which she did in March 1853, arriving at Norfolk on the 7th of that month, she was ordered to sea again under Berryman, to assist still further "in perfecting the discoveries made by Lieutenant Maury in the course of his investigation of the winds and currents of the ocean." And that I might procure specimens of the bottom, this apparatus of Brooke was put on board the "Dolphin;" and this was the first time that it was put on board any vessel. The first time it was used was at 1.20 P.M., July 7, 1853, in latitude  $54^{\circ} 17'$  north, longitude  $20^{\circ} 33'$  west, by J. G. Mitchell, then a midshipman on board that brig. This sounding, as were all since Lee's time, was made from a boat; it occupied six hours. The depth was 2000 fathoms, and the rod came up, its arming loaded with precious trophies. This promising young officer made every deep-sea sounding that was made in the "Dolphin" during that cruise, save one only, and to him belongs the honour of bringing up the first specimen that was ever obtained from the bottom of the deep sea. Subsequently, during this cruise, several other specimens were obtained; but the first was described by Mitchell as "a fine chalky clay."

The first  
specimen  
obtained.

The "Dolphin" returned in November 1853. Her soundings during these two cruises with Brooke's apparatus were first published in the sixth edition of "Sailing Directions," March 1854. The specimens from the bottom were forwarded to the Observatory, and by me sent to that charming man of science, the late Professor Bailey, of West Point, for examination under his micro-

scope. He examined them, and found those specimens from the bottom of the great deep not to have "*a particle of sand or gravel mixed with them,*" but to be mites of sea-shells, perfect in form, and as unworn and untriturated as they were when alive.

CHAPTER  
XXI.

The specimens from the bed of the ocean examined by the microscope.

This discovery of the microscope at once suggested the idea that there is no running water, no abrading forces at play upon the bottom and bed of the deep sea; and consequently that, if an electric cord were ever lodged upon the telegraphic plateau, there it would lie in cold obstruction, without anything to fret, chafe, or wear, save alone the tooth of time.

Accordingly, when, in February 1854, the projectors of the Atlantic Telegraph inquired of me "about the practicability of submerging the cable," I was enabled to reply as follows:—

"From Newfoundland to Ireland the distance between the nearest points is about sixteen hundred miles, and the bottom of the sea between the two places is a plateau, which seems to have been placed there especially for the purpose of holding the wires of a submarine telegraph and of keeping them out of harm's way. It is neither too deep nor too shallow; yet it is so deep that the wires being once landed, will remain for ever beyond the reach of vessels' anchors, icebergs, and drift of any kind, and so shallow that the wires may be readily lodged upon the bottom.

Lieutenant Maury's opinion about the practicability of submerging the Atlantic Cable.

"The depth of this plateau is quite regular, gradually increasing from the shores of Newfoundland to the depth of from fifteen hundred to two thousand fathoms as you approach the other side.

"Whether it be better to lead the wires from New-

foundland or Labrador is not now the question ; nor do I pretend to consider the question as to the possibility of finding a time calm enough, the sea smooth enough, a wire long enough, and a ship big enough to carry and lay a coil of wire 1600 miles in length. I simply address myself at this time to the question in so far as the bottom of the sea is concerned ; and as for that, the greatest practical difficulty will, I apprehend, be found after reaching soundings at either end of the line, and not in the deep sea.

“A wire laid across from either of the above-named places on this side would pass to the north of the Grand Banks and rest on that beautiful plateau to which I have alluded, and where the water of the sea appears to be as quiet and as completely at rest as it is at the bottom of a mill-pond.

“Therefore, so far as the bottom of the deep sea between Newfoundland or the mouth of the St. Lawrence and Ireland is concerned, the practicability of a submarine telegraph across the Atlantic is proved.”

The letter from which these extracts are taken is dated at the Observatory, 23d February 1854, and was addressed to Professor Morse.

The  
American  
system of  
deep sea  
soundings  
adopted  
by other  
navies.

The system of deep-sea soundings thus inaugurated has been adopted by the English, Dutch, Austrian, and all other navies that have since entered with us in this new field. From this simple beginning and in this short time, more knowledge has been gained for man concerning the depths and bottom of the ocean than he had acquired in all previous time. The English and French by their deep-sea soundings have given us materials for orographic maps of the basins which hold the Mediterranean and the Red Sea ; and, by order of the Admiralty, Lieutenant

Dayman, of H.B.M. ship "Cyclops," ran last year a beautiful line of deep-sea soundings along the telegraphic plateau. By that excellent work Lieutenant Dayman confirmed what, in February 1854, I had told Professor Morse concerning this plateau.<sup>1</sup>

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
Lieutenant Dayman's deep-sea soundings

When the deep-sea soundings came to be studied under the microscope, it was discovered that many of these little mites of shells still retained in them the fleshy parts of their inhabitants!

This circumstance of shells with fleshy matter in them from the bottom of the deep sea is one of the most beautiful and suggestive facts that this new system of deep-sea soundings has revealed.

We roam with it through the realms of conjecture, go a step further in this direction, and fancy that the sea embalms its dead—that all the corpses which, with weights attached, have been committed to the deep in blue water, are now standing on the bottom, their lineaments and features as perfect as they were the day their comrades were called to "bury the dead."<sup>2</sup>

The sea embalms its dead.

The projectors of the Atlantic Telegraph, having acted upon the information derived from these researches concerning the bottom and bed of the ocean, formed their company, and ordered their cable, sought other information from the Observatory. I received, in March 1857,

The Atlantic Telegraph Company formed.

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* Plate XI., now (1859) corrected accordingly.

<sup>2</sup> When a person dies on board of a man-of-war, and is to be buried at sea, his body is sewed up in his hammock, with one or two cannon-balls secured to his feet. When it is ready for the burial, it is placed on a plank at the gangway, and all hands are mustered on deck by the boatswain's call to "bury the dead." After reading the burial service, the plank is tilted, and the body slides off, feet foremost, into the sea. In this position the body sinks, in this position it reaches the bottom, and in this position it may remain, beyond the reach of decay, a perfect human form for ages.

CHAPTER  
XXI.Best route  
and time  
for laying  
the cable.

a letter from Cyrus W. Field, asking, in behalf of the company, for the best route and time for laying the cable. Considering the practical difficulties of actually steering along an arc of such a great circle as that which passes through the ends of the Atlantic cable, Professor Hubbard was requested to compute the perimeter of a polygon, described in such a manner that every side between Valentia and Trinity Bay should be trisected by the arc of the great circle between the two ends of the cable, and that a ship in steering along this perimeter should, to pass from one side to the next, have to change her course but the quarter of a point. Thus a polygonal route was given by which each ship, by increasing her great circle distance only three hundred and fifty fathoms, and changing her course only six times after joining cables, would be enabled to reach her port by steering straight courses. Lieutenant Aulick projected in duplicate the sides of this polygon on charts, which were sent to the company for the paying-out vessels to steer by.

Laborious  
investiga-  
tions.

Lieutenant Bennett was called on to assist in the investigations necessary to enable me to answer the question as to the best time for laying the cable. For this the results of 260,000 days of observation at sea were consulted, and, after a laborious investigation, the company was informed of the result, which was, that the "most propitious time for their undertaking was the last of July and the first of August," and that "the steamer with the western end of the telegraph cord on board would be less liable than the other to encounter a gale." This proved true; for the "Agamemnon" came near losing her end of the cable, owing to the violence of wind and waves, while the "Niagara" was sailing with the western end in smooth

The re-  
sult.



water and a tranquil sea; and it also turned out that "between the 20th of July and 10th of August" was the time which proved the best.

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
—

The attempt again to span the Atlantic Ocean with an electrical cord will probably be made in the summer of 1860. Let us consider the true nature of the Neptunian difficulties in the way; for it appears to me that the obstacles which the sea opposed to the attempt of 1857-8 are not rightly appreciated.

§ 1026  
Probable  
time of  
the next  
attempt  
to lay the  
cable.

I leave out of view, at present, all questions relating to the electrical conditions of the problem, and address myself exclusively to the Neptunian difficulties with which the projectors of any line of telegraph across the Atlantic Ocean will have to contend; for, had the true nature and extent of these difficulties been properly considered by the London Company, I have no doubt but that the Atlantic Telegraph would have, at this day, been in successful operation.

§ 1027  
Neptunian  
difficulties  
in the  
way.

The facts which our system of deep-sea soundings has brought to light concerning the status of the deep sea are such that, when properly considered by the hydro-telegraphic engineer, will render lines of submarine telegraphs as cheap, if not cheaper, than our overland lines are. A full account has been given of these discoveries in this work, and in Vol. I., 8th edition, "Maury's Sailing Directions."

In repeating these facts here, and the results derived therefrom, let us, in the first place, confine our attention to "blue water." It is an established fact that there is no running water at the bottom of the *deep* sea. The agents which disturb the equilibrium of the sea, giving violence to its waves and force to its currents, all reside

No run-  
ning water  
at the bot-  
tom of the  
deep sea

CHAPTER XXI. near or above its surface ; none of them have their home in its depths. These agents are its inhabitants, the moon, the winds, evaporation and precipitation, with changes of temperature—such as heating here, and cooling there.

No change of temperature in the depths of the ocean. The rays of the sun cannot penetrate into the depths of the ocean, and radiation cannot take place thence ; consequently, the change of the temperature in the depths of the sea, from summer to winter, and from winter to summer, must be almost, if not entirely, unappreciable. This is a generally admitted fact.

Disturbance by the winds only at the surface. The winds take up water from the surface, and not from the depth, and in so doing they disturb the equilibrium of the water at the top, not the equilibrium of the water at the bottom ; by evaporation, the water on top becomes salter and heavier than it was before ; the vapour thus taken up is condensed into rain and precipitated on other parts of the sea, thus both raising the sea-level, and making the surface water lighter and less salt than it was before. Thus we have the genesis of horizontal circulation, or an interchange of water called currents. If, by the process of evaporation, the surface water becomes so salt as to be heavier than the water at the bottom, the water at the bottom and the water at the top will change places. This may give rise to a vertical circulation, but one so feeble that it cannot be felt by even the tiny little shells which strew the bed of the ocean, and which lie there as lightly as gossamer under the dew of the morning ; practically, therefore, the water at the bottom is still.

Stillness at the bottom.

It is also generally admitted that the waves, even in their most angry moods, are incapable of reaching far

down in the sea, or of disturbing the quiet and repose which reign in its depths. CHAPTER  
XXI.

In short, there is reason to believe that the bottom of the *deep* sea is everywhere protected from the violence of its waves, the abrading action of its currents, and the rage of the forces which are ever at play on its surface by a cushion of still water. The waves  
cannot dis-  
turb its re-  
pose.

The grounds for this belief are contained in these pages ; but, to recapitulate briefly, they are afforded by these circumstances: everywhere, whencesoever specimens of bottom have been obtained by the deep-sea plummet, they have been found to consist of the untritured remains of the microscopic organisms of the sea. Some of these have the flesh of the little creature still in them. Now these feculences of the sea, as the remains of its microscopic inhabitants may be called, are relatively as light in the water as motes in the air ; and, if the bottom of the sea were scoured by its currents, those *sea motes* would be swept away into drifts like snow, or into dunes like sand ; they would be scratched, their sharp corners and the edges would be broken off and rounded. Moreover, were they drifted about, then sand and other scourings of the ocean would be found mixed with them. But not so ; the specimens brought up from the deep sea show no such mixture, and the infusoria thence bear no marks of abrasion upon even their most delicate parts. Indeed, some of them are so fresh, still having the meat of the animal in them, that Professor Ehrenberg, of Berlin, with others of the *Biotic* school, maintains that these shells live at the bottom of the deep sea, whence the sounding-rod recovered them. The *anti-Biotics*, on the contrary, maintain that they live and die at or near the Grounds  
for this  
belief.

The micro-  
scopic in-  
habitants  
of the deep  
sea lie  
quiet and  
uninjured.

The Biotic  
and anti-  
Biotic  
schools.

CHAPTER surface, and are buried on the bottom and bed of the  
 XXI. ocean; that the antiseptic properties of sea-water tend to  
 — prevent decay in the first instance, and as the dead  
 animalculæ continue to sink, the pressure of the superin-  
 cumbent water prevents chemical decomposition; and,  
 consequently, they of this school hold, and rightly hold,  
 I think, that so far from admitting that any of the  
 abrading forces of water, which are so familiar to us, are  
 harboured in the depths of the ocean, or that they can  
 find room for play there, the hand of decay itself becomes,  
 when stretched forth in the chambers of the deep, so  
 palsied as scarcely to be able to make itself felt, even  
 upon the most perishable things, when once lodged on the  
 bottom of the deep sea.

The hand  
 of decay  
 palsied at  
 the bottom  
 of the sea.

Amount of  
 pressure  
 on the te-  
 legraphic  
 plateau.

The pressure on the telegraphic plateau varies from  
 200 to 300 atmospheres; that is, from 430,000 to  
 650,000 lbs. the square foot. Chemical forces may be  
 measured, and consequently overcome by pressure, for the  
 gases generated by chemical decomposition are themselves  
 capable, so the chemists tell us, of exerting in the process  
 of that decomposition only so much pressure; hence, if  
 we subject them to a greater pressure, they cannot  
 separate, and decomposition cannot take place.

Ehren-  
 berg's re-  
 cent dis-  
 covery.

In proof of this, I refer to a recent discovery of Ehren-  
 berg. In the specimens obtained at a great depth from  
 the Mediterranean, that celebrated microscopist has dis-  
 tinctly recognised fresh-water cells with meat in them.  
 From this beautiful little fact we may infer that the very  
 volatile gases which enter into composition for the for-  
 mation of the fleshy parts of marine animalculæ are sub-  
 jected to such a pressure upon the deep bed of the ocean  
 that they cannot separate. If this inference be correct,

and it doubtless is, may we not proceed a step further, and conclude with reason, that with the pressure of the deep sea upon it, the gutta-percha used for insulating submarine wires becomes impervious to decay? CHAPTER  
XXI.  
—

With a due appreciation of these facts and circumstances, we are now prepared for the question which involves most of the *Neptunian* difficulties with which the Atlantic Telegraph Company has been contending with their cable; and the question, such being the facts, may be thus stated:—Is not any cable that is heavy enough to sink, strong enough to lie on the bottom of the deep sea? If yea, then, it may be asked, why have any Atlantic “*cable*” at all?—why serve gutta-percha cords for the deep sea with iron wire at all? I am not speaking of the shore ends, where the water is shallow, where abrading forces do work, and where the iron service is required; but, as I said, my remarks relate to the *deep* sea, and I speak of the cable for *that*. Question  
as to the  
strength of  
the cable.

Of what use to the cable, it may be again asked, was that iron coat of mail in which the insulated conductor was incased? Was it to make the cable sink? Why the Company found the cable so heavy when they began to pay it out into the deep sea that they were constrained to postpone the undertaking from 1857 to 1858, that they might tax the ingenuity of the world for brakes and paying-out machinery that would prevent the cable from parting by its own weight when running out in deep water. Without the iron coating it was heavy enough to sink, and if it were not so, a little larger conducting wire would have made it so, without any *injury*, I apprehend, to the electrical capacity of the cord. What was  
the use of  
the iron  
coat of  
mail to  
the cable?

## CHAPTER

XXI.

A substitute for buoys proposed.

Many have proposed buoys for the cable.

What a simple substitute for buoys would it be to leave off the coating of iron wire? Had that been left off the cable, there would have been no need of brakes, and of much other machinery rendered necessary by the cumbrous coat of mail.

Bearing in mind the quiet which reigns at the bottom of the deep sea; that the bed of the ocean is protected from the abrading action of its currents by a cushion of still water; that there is no running water down there; and that the pressure is such as to obstruct, if not for ever to prevent, the decomposition of all animal and vegetable matter when once lodged there, let us inquire a little more minutely as to the use of that iron wrapping for the deep-sea cable.

Inquiries as to the use of the iron wrapping for the cable.

It was not to protect the cable from abrasion after it was lodged on the bottom, for we have discovered that there are no abrading forces there to fret it.

It could not have been to keep the cable down, for we have seen that the slightest dregs that float in the water are, when allowed to settle on the bottom of the deep sea, heavy enough and stout enough to remain there.

It could not have been on the score of economy, for the cost of the cable must have been nearly, if not quite doubled on account of the iron wrapping.

The wrapping of iron wire without does not, I imagine, tend to improve the conducting powers of the copper wire within; and—besides the cost and the difficulty of manipulation, owing to increase of both size and weight which this iron wrapping gives the cable—that increased size and weight had something to do with the electrical



difficulties of the cable. What the real nature of these difficulties is must be matter of conjecture, but the conjecture which seems to be most plausible is one of this sort: the conducting wire is a strand of seven copper threads twisted together; this strand is then coated with gutta-percha, making a straight cord about the size of a lady's finger; this cord is then served with eighteen strands of iron wire, consisting of seven threads each, wrapped spirally about it. Now, in the process of paying out in the deep sea, and in holding back, the strain of the two or three thousand pounds which was brought to bear upon the cable, in order to prevent it from running out too fast, was first borne principally by the straight cord, consisting of gutta-percha and the conducting wires, rather than by the spirally-laid iron wires.

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
Formation  
of the  
cable.

To illustrate this proposition, namely, that the strain was brought to bear upon the straight centre-piece or heart, as the conducting wire and its coating of gutta-percha may be called, rather than the spirally-served iron wire, it is only necessary to refer to rigging on board ship that is laid up with a heart-piece or centre strand. The strands of the rope, like those of the iron wire, are laid spirally about the *heart*, and when the rope has been subjected to a strain, "Jack," to use his own language, always finds "the life gone out of the heart." Certainly a spirally-laid rope will stretch more than the straight centre-piece about which it is so laid. Such was the strain brought by the brakes upon the cable on board the "Niagara," says an eye-witness, that "large quantities of tar are pressed out of the cable as it enters and leaves the machine, and falls into tubs which are left near the machine for its reception. Of this stuff a couple of ordinary-sized

The strain  
was borne  
principally  
by the  
straight  
centre-  
piece or  
cord.

CHAPTER  
XXI.

barrelfuls are collected each day and thrown over-board."<sup>1</sup>

The conducting powers required by stretching or breaking the conducting wires.

Here was force enough to impair insulation by stretching the gutta-percha, or to injure conducting powers by stretching or breaking the threads of the conducting wire; for, as I said, when the "Niagara" and "Agamemnon" were paying out this cable last summer in the deep sea, and when the brakes were holding back with a strain of 2000 or 3000 lbs. on the cable, the heart suffered first. The gutta-percha would outstretch the copper, and then the seven small copper threads composing the conducting wire were attacked in detail, and thus the strength of the conducting wire was often tried without any *perceptible* giving way. It was impossible to have the strain to come upon all the threads of the conductor exactly alike; probably, therefore, first one parted and then another, so that in the whole distance each one of the seven may have parted many times; sometimes one alone, and sometimes several, perhaps all, or all but one or two at the same place; for the parting of any one facilitated the parting of the rest, and all in the same place. One conducting wire would have been better, both in an economical, electrical, mechanical, and Neptunian point of view.

One conducting wire better than many.

At first the fractured surfaces, with their crystalline points, were, it may be supposed, bright, and the galvanic current could leap the little chasms with comparative facility; but use tarnished them, and the leaps became more and more deficient. Hence the passage of intelligible messages at first, and their gradual cessation, and

<sup>1</sup> Mullaly's 'Telegraph Cable,' page 264.

the subsequent failure of the cable to give any signs of life.

This, however, is, as I said, mere matter of conjecture; but it is the most plausible answer that I have heard to the question, "Why has the cable stopped working?"

The first step, therefore, toward success in the establishment of submarine lines of telegraph across oceans is to get rid of the idea of iron ropes and great cables for the deep sea—limit these to shallow water; to divert ingenuity from brakes and buoys, and to direct it to cords that will require neither.

But some will say that the heat in a ship's hold is often such as to melt the gutta-percha, and therefore an iron wrapping, to hold it together, and so preserve the insulation, is necessary.

The Rogers cord is a complete answer to this objection. After insulation, he braids the conducting wire whip-cord fashion with bobbin or twine, and then protects the whole with a pigment, gum or cement, which shields the gutta-percha, securing it against chafes, bruises, melting, &c., and still leaves the cord so small and *manipulable* that one ship may carry the whole of it, and "pay and go" with it across the Atlantic as though she were making an ordinary passage.

The specific gravity of this Rogers cord is such as to carry it down at the rate of only a mile or two an hour. Now, it is evident that pieces of such a cord, if cut into lengths of ten miles long, for instance, and thrown into the sea, would find their way to the bottom as readily as pieces of one mile or of a few fathoms in length would; and since, at the greatest speed of the paying-out vessel not more than about ten miles of this cord will, at any

CHAPTER  
XXI.

Conjecture about the cause why the cable stopped working.

§ 1028

The first step to success, to get rid of iron ropes.

The Rogers cord, how formed.

Its specific gravity.

CHAPTER XXI. one time, be between the stern of the vessel and the bottom of the sea, the feat of laying it in lengths of ten miles may be practically accomplished by an artifice, and that artifice consists in paying out the cord with slack enough in every ten miles of it to feed the currents and to spare.

Manner in which the Rogers cord may be laid. The common operation of "heaving the log" may be referred to in illustration of the manner in which the Rogers cord may be laid. In heaving the log, a certain quantity of what is called "stray line," or slack, is always paid out. This new cord is not larger than a common log line; and the line between Varna and Balaklava, which worked so well in the Black Sea, was, I have understood, paid out by hand. It was simply a copper wire insulated by gutta-percha, and without any other covering. If such a wire could be laid in the Black Sea, one could be laid in the deep sea as well, for there is reason to believe that the currents of the ocean do not extend beyond a few hundred fathoms in its depths.

Amount of slack cable required to feed the currents. There seems to be a sort of general impression that the amount of slack cable required to feed the currents of the sea is very considerable. A little reflection will show that this is not the case, especially along the telegraphic plateau.

The current which requires the greatest proportion of slack is one which sweeps across the cable at right angles; whereas the great circle along which the Atlantic Cable was laid crosses the Gulf-Stream so obliquely that a vessel running along from Newfoundland to Ireland may be considered as running with that stream for much of the way.

The current along the telegraphic plateau seldom exceeds two knots an hour; it rarely amounts to that. But, to present the strongest case against the view I am advocating, let us suppose that the current runs all the way across at the rate of two knots, and at right angles to the cable, and that a vessel with the proper length of the Rogers cord on board were to set off, to "pay and go" with it from Newfoundland to Ireland. The cord, being paid over with 10 per cent. of slack, is heavy enough to sink at the rate of two miles an hour; the current, let it be supposed, descends to the maximum depth of half a mile; any given part of the cord, therefore, as it goes out and sinks at the rate of two miles an hour, occupies fifteen minutes in sinking the first half mile. During these fifteen minutes only it is exposed to the current, by which it is swept half a mile to the right or left of the track of the ship; then reaching the still water below, it settles down through it until it reaches bottom.

CHAPTER

XXI.

Speed of the current along the telegraphic plateau.

Time taken by the cord in sinking

Thus, in the case supposed, the cord would not lie in a zigzag, but more in a straight line all the way across, and only half a mile to the right or left of the path actually made by the keel of the ship. The difference in distance by such a path and such a line would be practically inappreciable, and yet the case supposed is an exaggeration of the case that is actually presented. For a part, if not for the whole distance, there is an under current which would bring the cable back toward the wake of the ship, thus tending to counteract the effect of the upper current in sweeping it off.

In confirmation of these views as to the existence of a cushion of still water at the bottom, I bring in for further

CHAPTER

XXI.

A cushion  
of still  
water at  
the bot-  
tom of the  
ocean.

evidence the testimony afforded by Commander Dayman, R.N., while running his line of deep-sea soundings along the telegraphic plateau, in H. B. M. S. Cyclops. On one occasion he hauled up from the bottom a coil of two hundred fathoms of deep-sea line. It had been laid at the bottom round and round in a coil with as much regularity as it could have been coiled on deck by hand, thus showing either that there was no current there at all, or that the upper and the under currents so nearly counteracted each other that the line passed perpendicularly through the still water.

The tiny nautilus rides out the hurricane, and weathers storms in which the stoutest men-of-war have foundered; and, in order to make progress in submarine telegraphy, we must proceed upon the principle that *a slack line in the sea will hold longer than a taut cable*, for the forces of its waves and its currents are not to be overcome by such powers of resistance as human fabrics have the strength to offer.

No doubt  
of the ulti-  
mate suc-  
cess of the  
Atlantic  
Telegraph.

I have no doubt whatever as to the ultimate success of a telegraph across the Atlantic. Indeed, the only limit to our power to establish at pleasure lines of submarine telegraph is the limit, if any, which Nature herself may have imposed upon the galvanic current. The sea offers no obstructions on account of its depths or its currents to lines of any length.

A line with an unbroken conducting wire across the Atlantic or Pacific is as practicable as one across the Alps or the Andes. In the long run, and mile for mile, I do not think there would be much, if any, difference as to cost between the transmontane and the submarine line.



*The real question for future projectors of lines of submarine telegraph is not how deep, or how boisterous, or how wide the sea is, but what are the electrical limits to the length of submarine lines.*<sup>1</sup>

CHAPTER  
XXI.

§ 1029

The real question for projectors of lines of submarine telegraphs.

---

<sup>1</sup> See 'Journal of the Royal Dublin Society,' Nos. XII and XIII.: "Letter to John Locke, Esq., on the Atlantic Telegraph Cable: Causes of Failure and Probabilities of ultimate Success, by M. F. Maury." Read Friday evening, January 23, 1859.

*Observatory, May 1859.*







PLATE I



DIAGRAM OF THE WINDS.





PLATE II

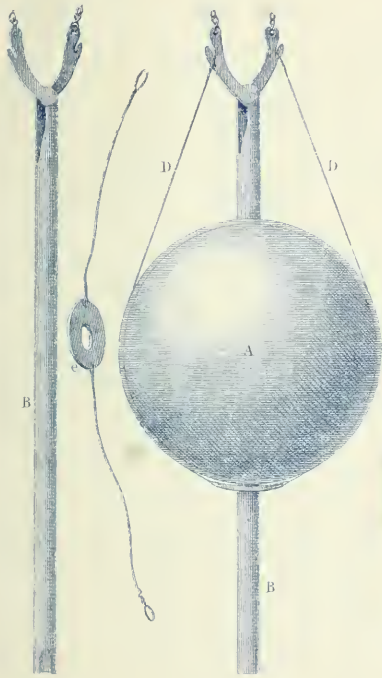
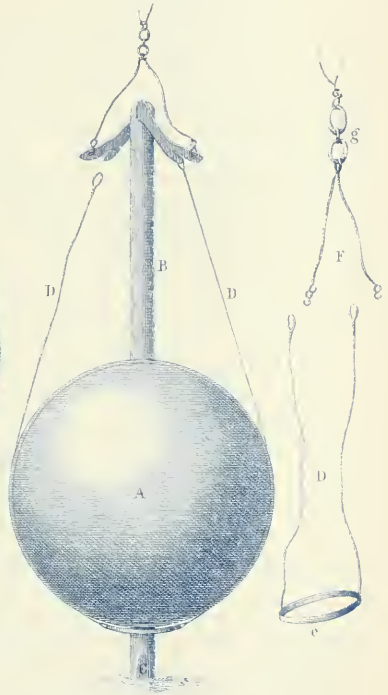


PLATE III



BROOKE'S DEEP-SEA SOUNDING APPARATUS



# ISOTHERMAL CHART OF THE ATLANTIC OCEAN

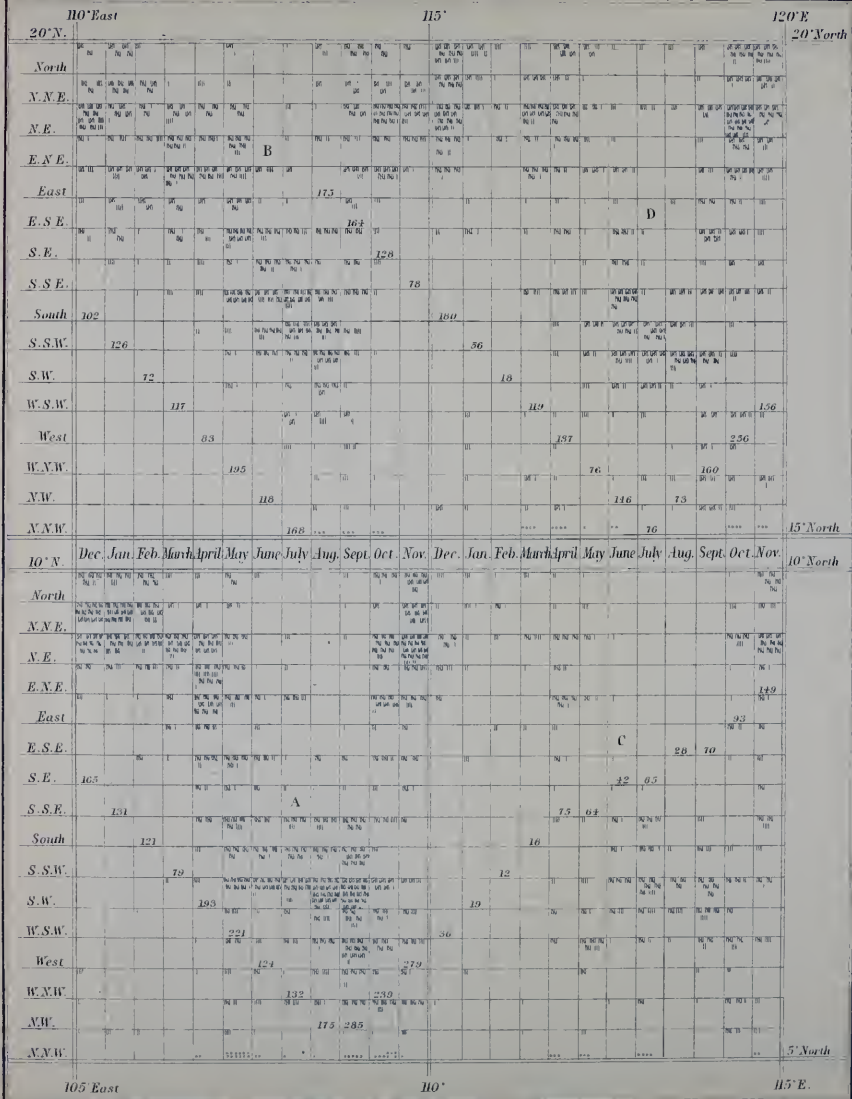
for March and September.

PLATE IV



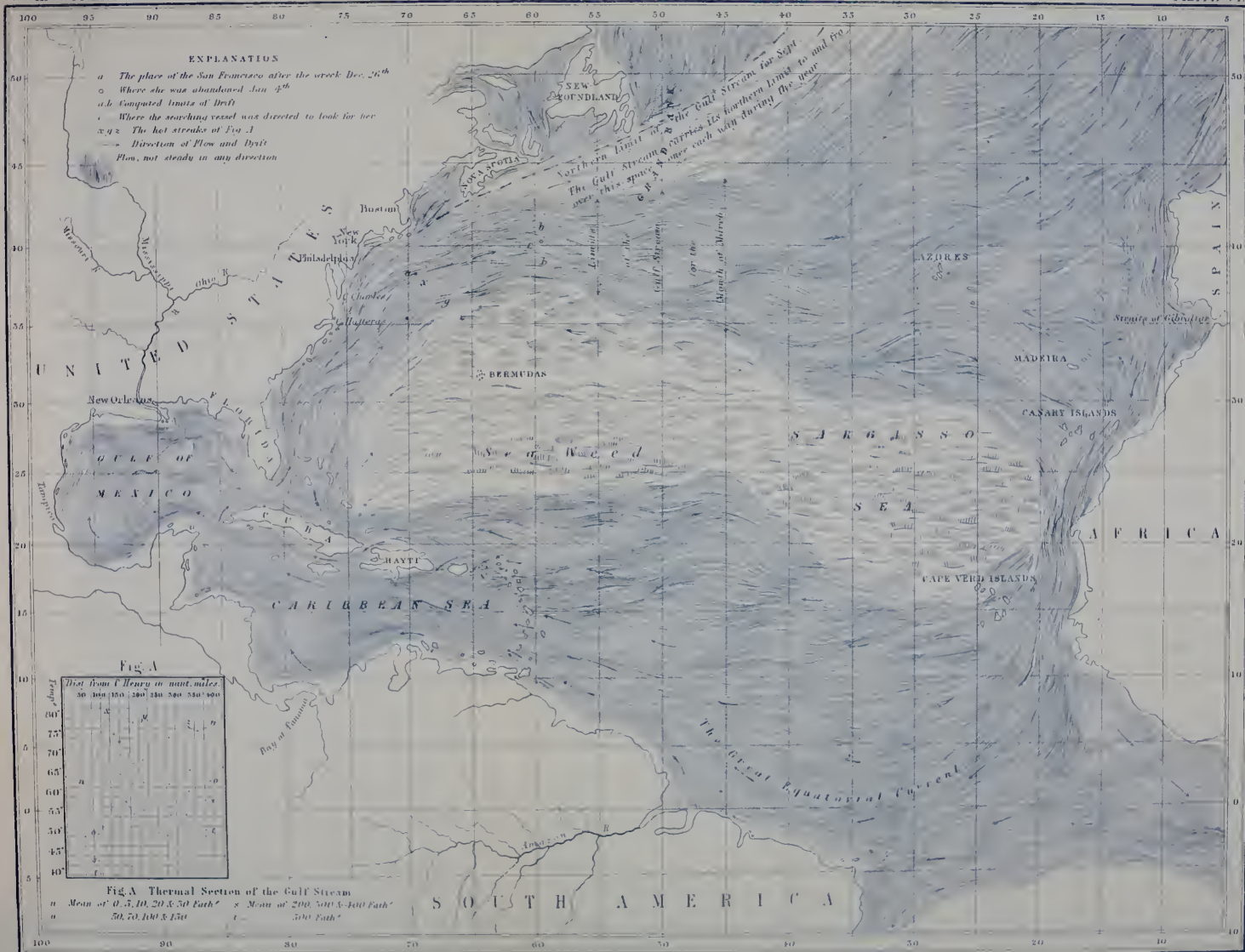
March ——— September















Explanation

The shading B shows where the vapour that feeds the Mississippi with rains, is supposed to be taken up. The bands pointing to the direction to which it is willed. The light shading A shows where it is supposed to pass as an upper current, and the shading C where it is precipitated. The Arrows in the North Pacific show where the vapour that supplies Southern Chili and Western Patagonia with rains, is supposed to be taken up, and the Arrows in the South Pacific show the direction of the surface winds which wail this vapour after it has crossed the shading B, as an upper current.

Note.






The Wind, represented by the Arrows in the Southern Hemisphere as Monsoons and Trades, is supposed, when it meets the NE trades, to rise up and flow to the Northward and Eastward as an upper current, until it passes the NE trade wind region. It then appears on the surface as the prevailing SW wind of the extra-tropical regions of the Northern Hemisphere, as per the Arrows to the North of the Tropic of Cancer in Europe and Asia.

The feathered Arrows in the North extra tropical region represent the supposed route of the air - SW Passate Winds in that region, which has passed over South America as the SE trade winds and the monsoons, and the unfeathered Arrows in the same region are intended to represent the route of the SE trades and monsoons of Africa, as indicated by similar Arrows.








EXPLANATION

-  North East Trades
-  South East Trades
-  North East & South West Monsoon
-  North East & South West Monsoon
-  Prevailing West-south-west Winds



-  Routes and average passages in days
-  Fair Winds
-  Bad Winds

Place of Indium, &c.  
Desert  
Inland Basin

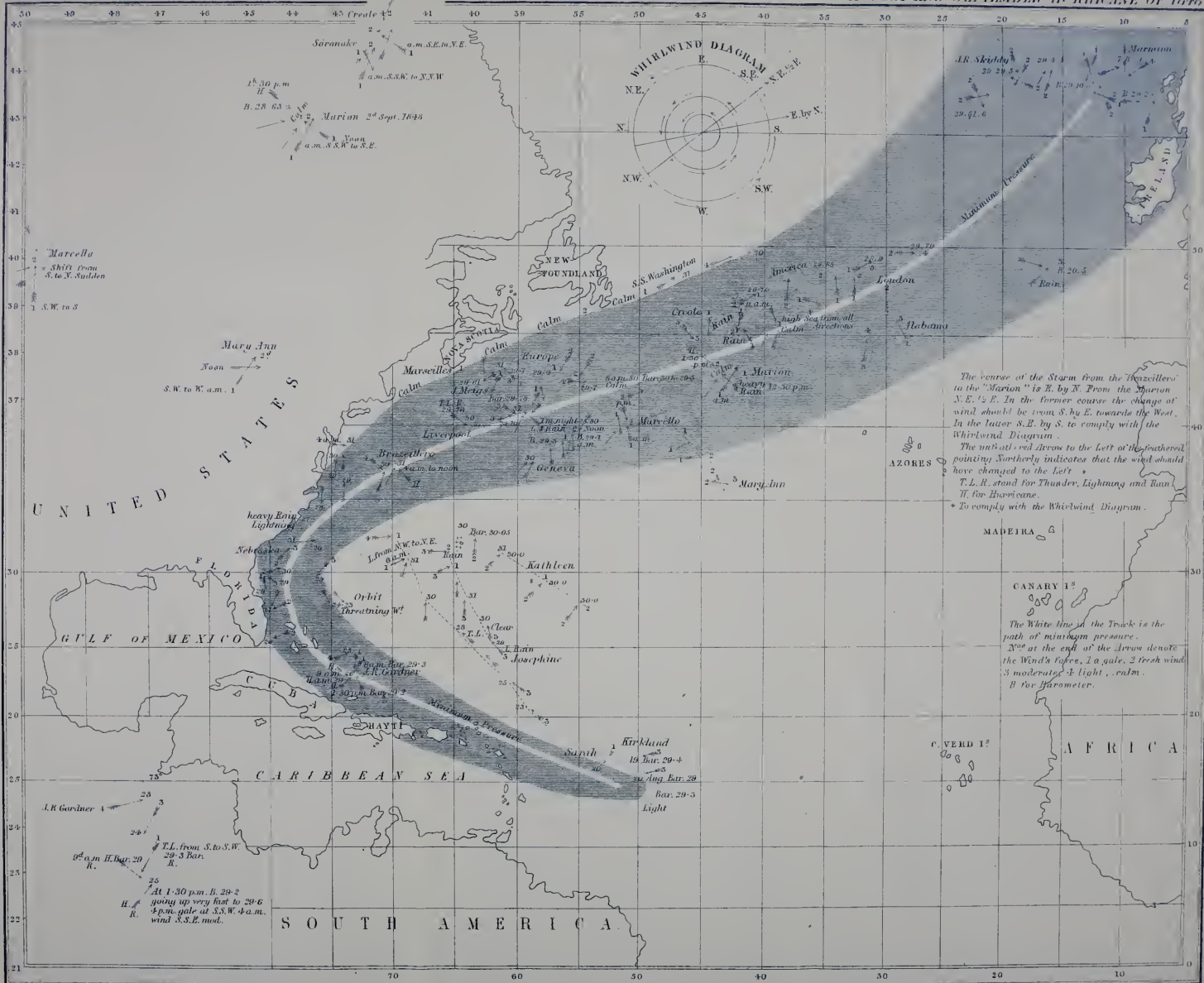
Place of Indium, &c.  
Desert  
Inland Basin











The course of the Storm from the Azores to the "Marian" is E. by N. From the "Marian" N.E. 1/2 E. In the former course the change of wind should be from S. by E. towards the West. In the latter S.E. by S. to comply with the Whirlwind Diagram.

The white red Arrow to the left of the path, pointing Northerly indicates that the wind should have changed to the left.

T.L.R. stand for Thunder, Lightning and Rain.  
H. for Hurricane.  
\* To comply with the Whirlwind Diagram.

The White line of the Track is the path of minimum pressure.  
N<sup>o</sup> at the end of the Arrow denote the Wind's force, 1 a gale, 2 fresh wind, 3 moderate, 4 light, calm.  
B for Barometer.

15.30 p.m. H. 28.63  
1/8 S. 2. Marian 2<sup>d</sup> Sept. 1843  
1 a.m. S.S.W. to S.E.

Mary Ann 2<sup>d</sup>  
1 S.W. to S.

heavy Rain  
Lightning

1. H. Gardner 1  
8<sup>th</sup> a.m. H. Bar. 29  
R.  
T.L. from S. to S.W.  
29-3 Bar.  
R.  
At 1-30 p.m. B. 29-2  
going up very fast to 29-6  
4 p.m. gale at S.S.W. 4 a.m.  
wind S.S.E. mod.

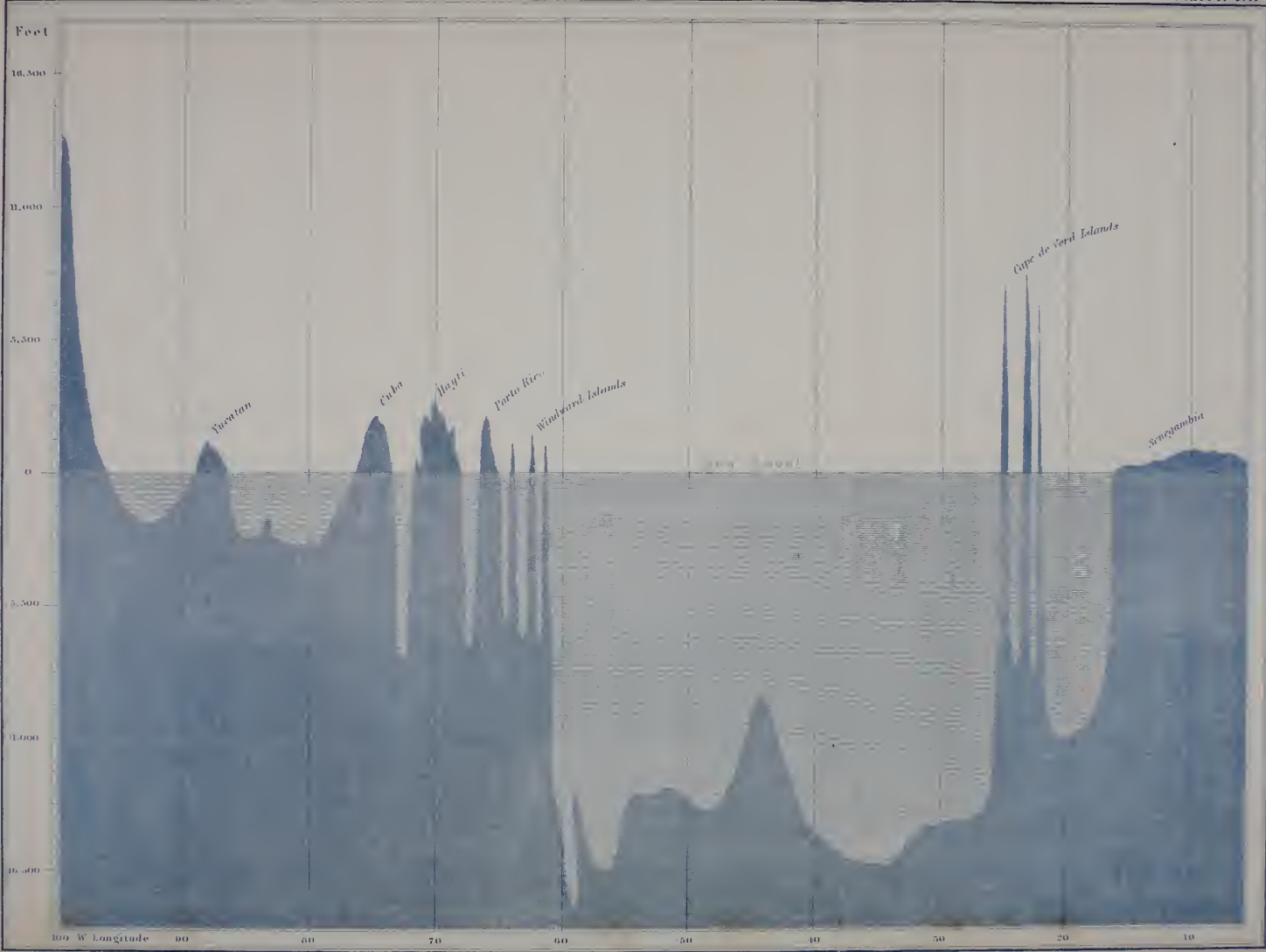






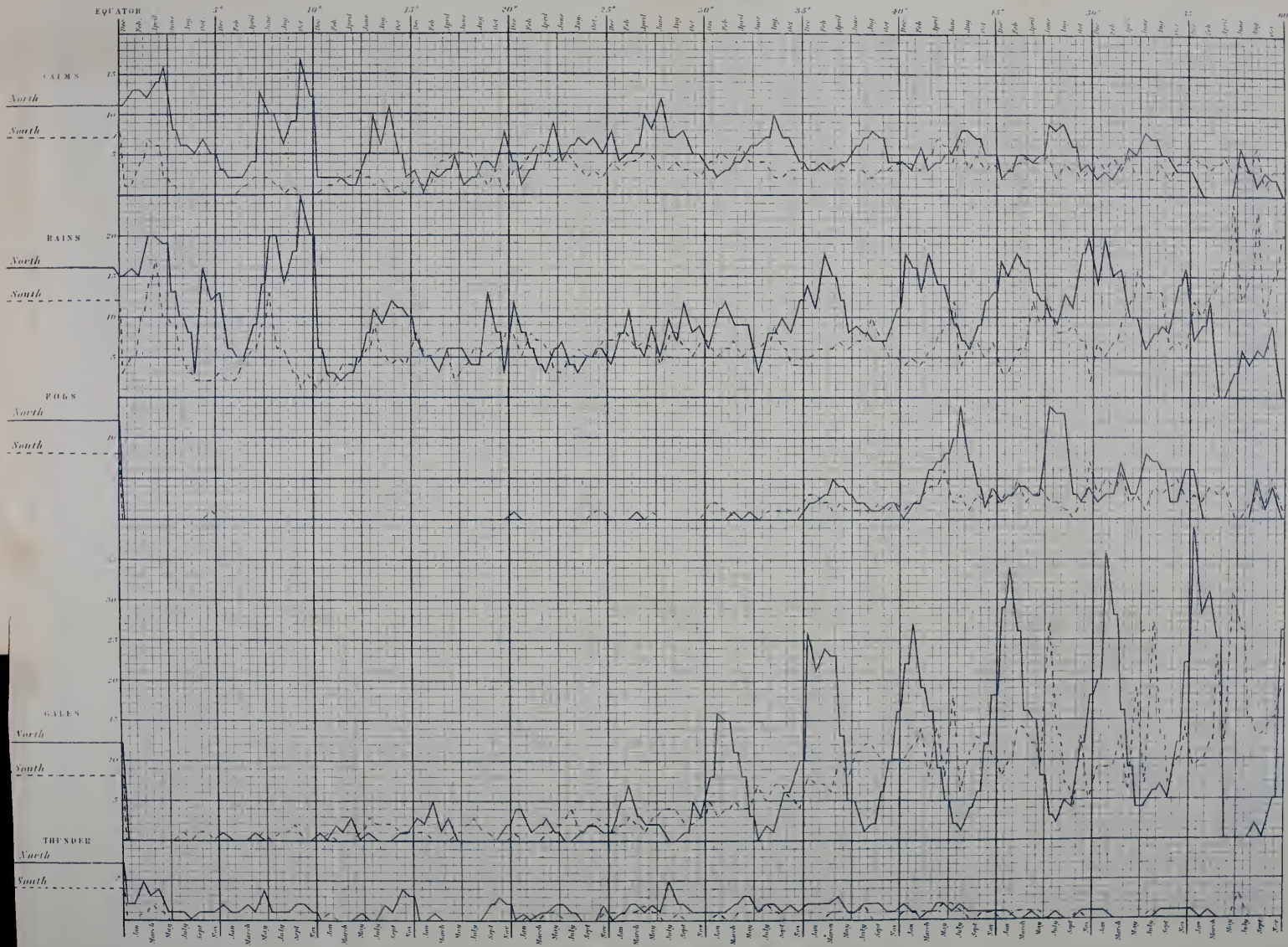






STORMS AND RAINS IN NORTH AND SOUTH ATLANTIC

West India not included







PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---



UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C  
39 11 08 02 09 009 4